

UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549

SCHEDULE 14A

Proxy Statement Pursuant to Section 14(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934  
(Amendment No. )

Filed by the Registrant

Filed by a Party other than the Registrant

Check the appropriate box:

- Preliminary Proxy Statement
- Confidential, for Use of the Commission Only (as permitted by Rule 14a-6(e)(2))**
- Definitive Proxy Statement
- Definitive Additional Materials
- Soliciting Material Under Rule 14a-12

VRINGO, INC.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Registrant as Specified In Its Charter)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Person(s) Filing Proxy Statement, if other than the Registrant)

Payment of Filing Fee (Check the appropriate box):

- No fee required.
- Fee computed on table below per Exchange Act Rules 14a-6(i)(1) and 0-11.

- 1) Title of each class of securities to which transaction applies:  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2) Aggregate number of securities to which transaction applies:  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3) Per unit price or other underlying value of transaction computed pursuant to Exchange Act Rule 0-11 (set forth the amount on which the filing fee is calculated and state how it was determined):  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4) Proposed maximum aggregate value of transaction:  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5) Total fee paid:  
\_\_\_\_\_

- Fee paid previously with preliminary materials.
- Check box if any part of the fee is offset as provided by Exchange Act Rule 0-11(a)(2) and identify the filing for which the offsetting fee was paid previously. Identify the previous filing by registration statement number, or the Form or Schedule and the date of its filing:

- 1) Amount previously paid:  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 2) Form, Schedule or Registration Statement No:  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 3) Filing party:  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - 4) Date Filed:  
\_\_\_\_\_
-



**VRINGO, INC.**  
**780 Third Avenue, 12<sup>th</sup> Floor**  
**New York, New York 10017**

[DATE]

To Our Stockholders:

You are cordially invited to attend the 2015 annual meeting of stockholders of Vringo, Inc. to be held at 11:00 a.m., Eastern time, on [DAY], [DATE], at the offices of Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C., the Chrysler Center, 666 Third Avenue, New York, New York 10017.

Details regarding the meeting, the business to be conducted at the meeting, and information about Vringo, Inc. that you should consider when you vote your shares are described in this proxy statement.

At the annual meeting, six (6) persons will be elected to our Board of Directors. In addition, we will ask stockholders to consider the following proposals:

- (i) To approve an amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to effect a reverse stock split of our issued and outstanding shares common stock, at a ratio within the range of one-for-two to one-for-ten, such ratio to be determined by our Board of Directors;
- (ii) To authorize, for purposes of complying with NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d), the issuance of shares of our common stock underlying convertible notes and warrants issued by us pursuant to the terms of that certain Securities Purchase Agreement, dated May 4, 2015, by and among Vringo, Inc. and the investors named therein, in an amount equal to or in excess of 20% of our common stock outstanding before the issuance of such convertible notes and warrants;
- (iii) To approve an amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to increase the number of our authorized shares of common stock by 100,000,000, from 150,000,000 to 250,000,000 shares;
- (iv) To approve a proposed amendment to Vringo, Inc. 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan, or the Plan, to increase the number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance under the Plan to up to a maximum of 21,000,000 shares (on a pre-split basis);
- (v) To ratify the selection of CohnReznik LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2015;
- (vi) To approve, by an advisory vote, the compensation of our named executive officers, as disclosed in this proxy statement, and
- (vii) To approve an adjournment of our annual meeting of stockholders, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of the proposals referred to in clauses (i) through (iv).

**The Board of Directors recommends the approval of each of these proposals.** Such other business will be transacted as may properly come before the annual meeting.

---

Under Securities and Exchange Commission rules that allow companies to furnish proxy materials to stockholders over the Internet, we have elected to deliver our proxy materials to the majority of our stockholders over the Internet. This delivery process allows us to provide stockholders with the information they need, while at the same time conserving natural resources and lowering the cost of delivery. On \_\_\_\_\_, 2015, we mailed to our stockholders a Notice of Internet Availability of Proxy Materials (the "Notice") containing instructions on how to access our proxy statement for our 2015 annual meeting of stockholders and our 2014 annual report to stockholders. The Notice also provides instructions on how to vote online or by telephone and includes instructions on how to receive a paper copy of the proxy materials by mail.

We hope you will be able to attend the annual meeting. Whether you plan to attend the annual meeting or not, it is important that you cast your vote either in person or by proxy. You may vote over the Internet as well as by telephone or by mail. When you have finished reading the proxy statement, you are urged to vote in accordance with the instructions set forth in this proxy statement. We encourage you to vote by proxy so that your shares will be represented and voted at the meeting, whether or not you can attend.

Thank you for your continued support of Vringo, Inc. We look forward to seeing you at the annual meeting.

Sincerely,



Andrew D. Perlman  
Chief Executive Officer  
Vringo, Inc.

---



VRINGO, INC.  
780 Third Avenue, 12<sup>th</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10017

[DATE]

NOTICE OF 2015 ANNUAL MEETING OF STOCKHOLDERS

TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

PLACE: \_\_\_\_\_

PURPOSES:

1. To elect six (6) directors, each to serve a one-year term expiring in 2016 or until such director's successor is elected and qualified or until such director's earlier death, resignation or removal;
  2. To approve a proposed amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to effect a reverse stock split of our issued and outstanding shares common stock, at a ratio within the range of one-for-two to one-for-ten, such ratio to be determined by our Board of Directors;
  3. To authorize, for purposes of complying with NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d), the issuance of shares of our common stock underlying convertible notes and warrants issued by us pursuant to the terms of that certain Securities Purchase Agreement, dated May 4, 2015, by and among Vringo, Inc. and the investors named therein, in an amount equal to or in excess of 20% of our common stock outstanding before the issuance of such convertible notes and warrants;
  4. To approve a proposed amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to increase the number of our authorized shares of common stock by 100,000,000, from 150,000,000 to 250,000,000 shares;
  5. To approve a proposed amendment to Vringo, Inc. 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan, or the Plan, to increase the number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance under the Plan to up to a maximum of 21,000,000 shares (on a pre-split basis);
  6. To ratify the selection of CohnReznik LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2015;
  7. To approve, by an advisory vote, the compensation of our named executive officers, as disclosed in this proxy statement;
  8. To approve an adjournment of our annual meeting of stockholders, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of the proposals referred to in clauses (2) through (5); and
  9. To transact such other business that is properly presented at the annual meeting and any adjournments or postponements thereof.
-

WHO MAY VOTE:

You may vote if you were the record owner of our common stock at the close of business on **[RECORD DATE]**. A list of stockholders of record will be available at the annual meeting and, during the 10 days prior to the annual meeting, at our principal executive offices located at 780 Third Avenue, 12<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10017.

All stockholders are cordially invited to attend the annual meeting. **Whether you plan to attend the annual meeting or not, we urge you to vote by following the instructions in the Notice of Internet Availability of Proxy Materials that you previously received and submit your proxy by the Internet, telephone or mail in order to ensure the presence of a quorum.** You may change or revoke your proxy at any time before it is voted at the meeting.

BY ORDER OF THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS

Sincerely,



Andrew D. Perlman  
Chief Executive Officer  
**[DATE]**

---

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<b><u>PAGE</u></b>
<a href="#">Important Information About the Annual Meeting and Voting</a>	3
<a href="#">Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management</a>	10
<a href="#">Management and Corporate Governance</a>	12
<a href="#">Compensation Discussion and Analysis</a>	18
<a href="#">Compensation Committee Report</a>	21
<a href="#">Executive Officer and Director Compensation</a>	22
<a href="#">Report of Audit Committee</a>	31
<a href="#">Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance</a>	32
<a href="#">Certain Relationships and Related Person Transactions</a>	32
<a href="#">Proposal 1: Election of Directors</a>	33
<a href="#">Proposal 2: Reverse Stock Split</a>	34
<a href="#">Proposal 3: Issuance of Shares of Common Stock in Financing Transaction</a>	41
<a href="#">Proposal 4: Increase of the Authorized Number of Shares of Common Stock</a>	46
<a href="#">Proposal 5: Amendment to our 2012 Stock Incentive Plan</a>	47
<a href="#">Proposal 6: Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</a>	52
<a href="#">Proposal 7: Advisory Vote on Executive Compensation</a>	54
<a href="#">Proposal 8: Approval of the Adjournment of the Annual Meeting</a>	56
<a href="#">Code of Conduct and Ethics</a>	57
<a href="#">Other Matters</a>	57
<a href="#">Stockholder Proposals and Nominations for Director</a>	57

**Appendix**

Appendix A — Form of Certificate of Amendment to Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation to Effect Reverse Stock Split
Appendix B — Form of Certificate of Amendment to Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation to Effect an Increase in Authorized Shares
Appendix C — Vringo, Inc. 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan, as amended
Appendix D — Form of Proxy Card
Annex I — Securities Purchase Agreement, dated May 4, 2015, between Vringo, Inc. and the Investors named therein
Annex II — Form of Notes
Annex III — Form of Base Indenture
Annex IV — Form of First Supplemental Indenture
Annex V — Form of Warrants

PRELIMINARY COPIES FILED PURSUANT TO RULE 14a-6(a)

VRINGO, INC.  
780 Third Avenue, 12<sup>th</sup> Floor  
New York, New York 10017

PROXY STATEMENT FOR THE VRINGO, INC.  
2015 ANNUAL MEETING OF STOCKHOLDERS TO BE HELD ON [DATE]

This proxy statement, along with the accompanying notice of 2015 annual meeting of stockholders, contains information about the 2015 annual meeting of stockholders of Vringo, Inc., including any adjournments or postponements of the annual meeting. We are holding the annual meeting at 11:00 a.m., Eastern time, on [DAY], [DATE], at the offices of Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C., the Chrysler Center, 666 Third Avenue, New York, New York 10017.

In this proxy statement, we refer to Vringo, Inc. as “Vringo,” “the Company,” “we” and “us.”

This proxy statement relates to the solicitation of proxies by our Board of Directors for use at the annual meeting.

**On or about [\_\_\_\_], 2015, we began sending the Important Notice Regarding the Availability of Proxy Materials to all stockholders entitled to vote at the annual meeting.**

---

**IMPORTANT NOTICE REGARDING THE AVAILABILITY OF PROXY MATERIALS FOR THE  
STOCKHOLDER MEETING TO BE HELD ON [DATE]**

This proxy statement and our 2014 annual report to stockholders are available for viewing, printing and downloading at [INSERT WEBSITE ADDRESS]. To view these materials please have your 12-digit control number(s) available that appears on your Notice or proxy card. On this website, you can also elect to receive future distributions of our proxy statements and annual reports to stockholders by electronic delivery.

Additionally, you can find a copy of our Annual Report on Form 10-K, as amended, which includes our financial statements for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014, on the website of the Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov), or in the "SEC Filings" section of the "Investors" section of our website at [www.vringoip.com](http://www.vringoip.com). You may also obtain a printed copy of our Annual Report on Form 10-K, including our financial statements, free of charge, from us by sending a written request to: Vringo, Inc., 780 Third Avenue, 12<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10017, Attention: Clifford Weinstein, Executive Vice President. Exhibits will be provided upon written request and payment of an appropriate processing fee.



## IMPORTANT INFORMATION ABOUT THE ANNUAL MEETING AND VOTING

### Why is the Company Soliciting My Proxy?

The Board of Directors of Vringo, Inc. is soliciting your proxy to vote at the 2015 annual meeting of stockholders to be held at the offices of Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C., the Chrysler Center, 666 Third Avenue, New York, New York 10017 on [DAY], [DATE], at 11:00 a.m., Eastern time, and any adjournments or postponements of the meeting, which we refer to as the annual meeting. The proxy statement along with the accompanying Notice of Annual Meeting of Stockholders summarizes the purposes of the meeting and the information you need to know to vote at the annual meeting.

We have made available to you on the Internet or have sent you this proxy statement, the Notice of Annual Meeting of Stockholders, the proxy card and a copy of our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014 because you owned shares of our common stock on the record date. We intend to commence distribution of the Important Notice Regarding the Availability of Proxy Materials, which we refer to throughout this proxy statement as the Notice, and, if applicable, the proxy materials to stockholders on or about [DATE].

### Why Did I Receive a Notice in the Mail Regarding the Internet Availability of Proxy Materials Instead of a Full Set of Proxy Materials?

As permitted by the rules of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, or the SEC, we may furnish our proxy materials to our stockholders by providing access to such documents on the Internet, rather than mailing printed copies of these materials to each stockholder. Most stockholders will not receive printed copies of the proxy materials unless they request them. We believe that this process should expedite stockholders' receipt of proxy materials, lower the costs of the annual meeting and help to conserve natural resources. If you received a Notice by mail or electronically, you will not receive a printed or email copy of the proxy materials, unless you request one by following the instructions included in the Notice. Instead, the Notice instructs you as to how you may access and review all of the proxy materials and submit your proxy on the Internet. If you requested a paper copy of the proxy materials, you may authorize the voting of your shares by following the instructions on the proxy card, in addition to the other methods of voting described in this proxy statement.

### Why is the Company seeking approval for the reverse stock split?

On December 18, 2014, we received a notification letter from NASDAQ informing us that for the last 30 consecutive business days, the bid price of our securities had closed below \$1.00 per share as required by NASDAQ Listing Rule 5550(a)(2). This notice has no immediate effect on our NASDAQ listing and we had 180 calendar days, or until June 16, 2015, to regain compliance. We did not regain compliance during such period since the closing bid price of our securities was not at least \$1.00 per share for a minimum of ten consecutive business days. On June 17, 2015, we received a letter from NASDAQ notifying us that we had been granted an additional 180-day period, or until December 14, 2015, to regain compliance with the minimum \$1.00 bid price per share requirement for continued listing on The NASDAQ Capital Market, as set forth in NASDAQ Listing Rule 5810(c)(3)(A)(ii). To cure the deficiency during this extended period by implementing the reverse stock split of our common stock for which we are seeking stockholder approval in Proposal 2 of this proxy statement. On August 18, 2015, the closing price of our common stock as reported on NASDAQ was \$0.61 per share.

The Board of Directors has approved the reverse stock split as a means of increasing the share price of our common stock. Our Board of Directors believes that maintaining our listing on The NASDAQ Capital Market may provide a broader market for our common stock and facilitate the use of our common stock in financing and other transactions. We expect the reverse stock split to facilitate the continuation of such listing. We cannot assure you, however, that the reverse stock split will result in an increase in the per share price of our common stock, or if it does, how long the increase would be sustained, if at all. Although the reverse stock split is designed to raise the stock price, there is no guarantee that the share price will rise proportionately to the reverse stock split, so the end result could be a loss of value.

For more information, see "Proposal 2: Reverse Stock Split" contained elsewhere in this proxy statement.

## Why is the Company seeking approval for the increase in authorized shares?

On May 4, 2015, we entered into the Securities Purchase Agreement. Pursuant to the terms of the transaction, we agreed we will solicit the stockholders vote for an increase in the number of shares of common stock that we are authorized to issue to 250,000,000. In the event we implement the reverse stock split and determine the increase in the authorized shares is not in the best interest of our stockholders, we reserve the right not to adopt the increase in the authorized shares.

## Who Can Vote?

Only stockholders who owned our common stock at the close of business on **[RECORD DATE]** are entitled to vote at the annual meeting. On this record date, there were \_\_\_\_\_ shares of our common stock outstanding and entitled to vote. Our common stock is our only class of voting stock.

You do not need to attend the annual meeting to vote your shares. Shares represented by valid proxies, received in time for the annual meeting and not revoked prior to the annual meeting, will be voted at the annual meeting. For instructions on how to change or revoke your proxy, see “May I Change or Revoke My Proxy?” below.

## How Many Votes Do I Have?

Each share of our common stock that you own entitles you to one vote.

## How Do I Vote?

Whether you plan to attend the annual meeting or not, we urge you to vote by proxy. All shares represented by valid proxies that we receive through this solicitation, and that are not revoked, will be voted in accordance with your instructions on the proxy card or as instructed via Internet or telephone. You may specify whether your shares should be voted for or withheld for each nominee for director and whether your shares should be voted for, against or abstain with respect to each of the other proposals. If you properly submit a proxy without giving specific voting instructions, your shares will be voted in accordance with the Board’s recommendations as noted below. Voting by proxy will not affect your right to attend the annual meeting. If your shares are registered directly in your name through our stock transfer agent, American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC, or you have stock certificates registered in your name, you may vote:

- **By Internet or by telephone.** Follow the instructions included in the Notice or, if you received printed materials, in the proxy card to vote by Internet or telephone.
- **By mail.** If you received a proxy card by mail, you can vote by mail by completing, signing, dating and returning the proxy card as instructed on the card. If you sign the proxy card but do not specify how you want your shares voted, they will be voted in accordance with the Board of Directors’s recommendations as noted below.
- **In person at the meeting.** If you attend the meeting, you may deliver a completed proxy card in person or you may vote by completing a ballot, which will be available at the meeting.

**Telephone and Internet voting facilities for stockholders of record will be available 24 hours a day and will close at 11:59 p.m., Eastern time, on [DATE], 2015.**

If your shares are held in “street name” (held in the name of a bank, broker or other holder of record), you will receive instructions from the holder of record. You must follow the instructions of the holder of record in order for your shares to be voted. Telephone and Internet voting also will be offered to stockholders owning shares through certain banks and brokers. If your shares are not registered in your own name and you plan to vote your shares in person at the annual meeting, you should contact your broker or agent to obtain a legal proxy or broker’s proxy card and bring it to the annual meeting in order to vote.

## How Does the Board of Directors Recommend That I Vote on the Proposals?

The Board of Directors recommends that you vote as follows:

- “FOR” the election of the nominees for director;
- “FOR” the amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to effect a reverse stock split of our common stock, par value \$0.01 per share, at a ratio in the range of one-for-two to one-for-ten;
- “FOR” the approval, for purposes of complying with NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d), the issuance of shares of our common stock underlying convertible notes and warrants issued by us pursuant to the terms of that certain Securities Purchase Agreement, dated May 4, 2015, by and among Vringo, Inc. and the investors named therein, in an amount equal to or in excess of 20% of our common stock outstanding before the issuance of such convertible notes and warrants;
- “FOR” the amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to increase the number of shares of our authorized shares of common stock by 100,000,000 from 150,000,000 to 250,000,000 shares;
- “FOR” the amendment to the Vringo, Inc. 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan, or the Plan, to increase the number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance under the Plan to up to a maximum of 21,000,000 shares (on a pre-split basis);
- “FOR” the ratification of the selection of CohnReznik LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for our fiscal year ending December 31, 2015;
- “FOR” the compensation of our named executive officers, as disclosed in this proxy statement; and
- “FOR” adjournment of our annual meeting of stockholders, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of the proposals referred to in bullet points (ii) through (v).

If any other matter is presented at the annual meeting, your proxy provides that your shares will be voted by the proxy holder listed in the proxy in accordance with his best judgment. At the time this proxy statement was first made available, we knew of no matters that needed to be acted on at the annual meeting, other than those discussed in this proxy statement.

## May I Change or Revoke My Proxy?

If you give us your proxy, you may change or revoke it at any time before the annual meeting. You may change or revoke your proxy in any one of the following ways:

- if you received a proxy card, by signing a new proxy card with a date later than your previously delivered proxy and submitting it as instructed above;
- by re-voting by Internet or by telephone as instructed above;
- by notifying our Secretary in writing before the annual meeting that you have revoked your proxy; or

by attending the annual meeting in person and voting in person. Attending the annual meeting in person will not in and of itself revoke a previously submitted proxy. You must specifically request at the annual meeting that it be revoked.

Your most current vote, whether by telephone, Internet or proxy card is the one that will be counted.

#### **What if I Receive More Than One Notice or Proxy Card?**

You may receive more than one Notice or proxy card if you hold shares of our common stock in more than one account, which may be in registered form or held in street name. Please vote in the manner described above under “How Do I Vote?” for each account to ensure that all of your shares are voted.

#### **Will My Shares be Voted if I Do Not Vote?**

If your shares are registered in your name or if you have stock certificates, they will not be counted if you do not vote as described above under “How Do I Vote?” If your shares are held in street name and you do not provide voting instructions to the bank, broker or other nominee that holds your shares as described above, the bank, broker or other nominee that holds your shares has the authority to vote your unvoted shares only on the reverse stock split (Proposal 2 of this proxy statement) and ratification of the appointment of our independent registered public accounting firm (Proposal 6 of this proxy statement) without receiving instructions from you. Therefore, we encourage you to provide voting instructions to your bank, broker or other nominee. This ensures your shares will be voted at the annual meeting and in the manner you desire. A “broker non-vote” will occur if your broker cannot vote your shares on a particular matter because it has not received instructions from you and does not have discretionary voting authority on that matter or because your broker chooses not to vote on a matter for which it does have discretionary voting authority.

**Your bank, broker or other nominee does not have the ability to vote your uninstructed shares in the election of directors. Therefore, if you hold your shares in street name it is critical that you cast your vote if you want your vote to be counted for the election of directors (Proposal 1 of this proxy statement). In the past, if you held your shares in street name and you did not indicate how you wanted your shares to be voted in the election of directors, your bank, broker or other nominee was allowed to vote your shares on your behalf in the election of directors as it deemed appropriate. In addition, your bank, broker or other nominee is prohibited from voting your uninstructed shares on any matters related to issuance of securities related to the financing transaction, increase of authorized shares, equity plan and executive compensation. Thus, if you hold your shares in street name and you do not instruct your bank, broker or other nominee how to vote in the election of directors (Proposal 1) or on matters related to the issuance of securities related to the financing transaction (Proposal 3), increase of authorized shares (Proposal 4), equity plan (Proposal 5) and executive compensation (Proposal 7), no votes will be cast on these proposals on your behalf. We believe that Proposal 2 (reverse stock split) and Proposal 6 (ratification of selection of independent registered public accounting firm) are considered routine matters and, thus, we do not expect to receive any broker non-votes on these proposals.**

#### **What Vote is Required to Approve Each Proposal and How are Votes Counted?**

##### **Proposal 1: Elect Directors**

The nominees for director who receive the most votes (also known as a “plurality” of the votes cast) will be elected. You may vote either FOR all of the nominees, WITHHOLD your vote from all of the nominees or WITHHOLD your vote from any one or more of the nominees. Votes that are withheld will not be included in the vote tally for the election of the directors. Brokerage firms do not have authority to vote customers’ unvoted shares held by the firms in street name for the election of the directors. As a result, any shares not voted by a customer will be treated as a broker non-vote. Such broker non-votes will have no effect on the results of this vote.

**Proposal 2: Reverse Stock Split**

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of our common stock entitled to vote on the matter either in person or by proxy at the annual meeting is required to approve the amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to effect a reverse stock split of our common stock. Abstentions will be treated as votes against this proposal. Brokerage firms have authority to vote customers' unvoted shares held by the firms in street name on this proposal. If a broker does not exercise this authority, such broker non-votes will be treated as votes against this proposal.

**Proposal 3: Issuance of Securities in the Financing**

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock present and entitled to vote on the matter either in person or by proxy at the annual meeting is required to approve, in accordance with NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d), the issuance, under the terms of that certain Securities Purchase Agreement dated May 4, 2015, by and among Vringo, Inc. and the investors thereto, and related documents, of shares of our common stock underlying convertible notes and warrants issued by us in an amount equal to or in excess of 20% of our common stock outstanding before the issuance of such convertible notes and warrants. Abstentions will be treated as votes against this proposal. Brokerage firms do not have authority to vote customers' unvoted shares held by the firms in street name on this proposal. As a result, any shares not voted by a customer will be treated as a broker non-vote. Such broker non-votes will have no effect on the results of this vote.

**Proposal 4: Increase the Number of Authorized Shares**

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of our common stock entitled to vote on the matter either in person or by proxy at the annual meeting is required to approve the amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to increase the number of our authorized shares of common stock. Abstentions will be treated as votes against this proposal. Brokerage firms do not have authority to vote customers' unvoted shares held by the firms in street name on this proposal. As a result, any shares not voted by a customer will be treated as a broker non-vote. Such broker non-votes will be treated as votes against this proposal.

**Proposal 5: Approve Amendment to Increase the Shares Available under our Plan**

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock present and entitled to vote on the matter either in person or by proxy at the annual meeting is required to approve the amendment to the Plan. Abstentions will be treated as votes against this proposal. Brokerage firms do not have authority to vote customers' unvoted shares held by the firms in street name on this proposal. As a result, any shares not voted by a customer will be treated as a broker non-vote. Such broker non-votes will have no effect on the results of this vote.

**Proposal 6: Ratify Selection of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock present and entitled to vote on the matter either in person or by proxy at the annual meeting is required to approve to ratify the selection of our independent registered public accounting firm. Abstentions will be treated as votes against this proposal. Brokerage firms have authority to vote customers' unvoted shares held by the firms in street name on this proposal. If a broker does not exercise this authority, such broker non-votes will have no effect on the results of this vote. We are not required to obtain the approval of our stockholders to select our independent registered public accounting firm. However, if our stockholders do not ratify the selection of CohnReznik LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for 2015, our Audit Committee of our Board of Directors will reconsider its selection.

**Proposal 7: Approve an Advisory Vote on the Compensation of our Named Executive Officers**

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock present and entitled to vote on the matter either in person or by proxy at the annual meeting is required to approve, on an advisory basis, the compensation of our named executive officers, as described in this proxy statement. Abstentions will be treated as votes against this proposal. Brokerage firms do not have authority to vote customers' unvoted shares held by the firms in street name on this proposal. As a result, any shares not voted by a customer will be treated as a broker non-vote. Such broker non-votes will have no effect on the results of this vote. Although the advisory vote is non-binding, the Compensation Committee and the Board of Directors will review the voting results and take them into consideration when making future decisions regarding executive compensation.

**Is Voting Confidential?**

We will keep all the proxies, ballots and voting tabulations private. We only let our Inspectors of Election, American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC, examine these documents. Management will not know how you voted on a specific proposal unless it is necessary to meet legal requirements. We will, however, forward to management any written comments you make, on the proxy card or otherwise provide.

**Where Can I Find the Voting Results of the Annual Meeting?**

The preliminary voting results will be announced at the annual meeting, and we will publish preliminary, or final results if available, in a Current Report on Form 8-K within four business days of the annual meeting. If final results are unavailable at the time we file the Form 8-K, then we will file an amended report on Form 8-K to disclose the final voting results within four business days after the final voting results are known.

**What Are the Costs of Soliciting these Proxies?**

We will pay all of the costs of soliciting these proxies. Our directors and employees may solicit proxies in person or by telephone, fax or email. We will pay these employees and directors no additional compensation for these services. We will ask banks, brokers and other institutions, nominees and fiduciaries to forward these proxy materials to their principals and to obtain authority to execute proxies. We will then reimburse them for their expenses.

We have engaged \_\_\_\_\_, to act as our proxy solicitor in connection with the proposals to be acted upon at our annual meeting. Pursuant to our agreement with \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ will, among other things, provide advice regarding proxy solicitation issues and solicit proxies from our stockholders on our behalf in connection with the annual meeting. For these services, we will pay a fee of approximately \$\_\_\_\_\_ plus expenses.

**What Constitutes a Quorum for the Annual Meeting?**

The presence, in person or by proxy, of the holders of a majority of the voting power of all outstanding shares of our common stock entitled to vote at the annual meeting is necessary to constitute a quorum at the annual meeting. Votes of stockholders of record who are present at the annual meeting in person or by proxy, abstentions, and broker non-votes are counted for purposes of determining whether a quorum exists.

## Attending the Annual Meeting

The annual meeting will be held at 11:00 a.m., Eastern time, on **[DAY, DATE]** at the offices of Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C., the Chrysler Center, 666 Third Avenue, New York, New York 10017. When you arrive at the offices of Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C., signs will direct you to the appropriate meeting rooms. You need not attend the annual meeting in order to vote.

## Householding of Annual Disclosure Documents

SEC rules concerning the delivery of annual disclosure documents allow us or your broker to send a single Notice or, if applicable, a single set of our proxy materials to any household at which two or more of our stockholders reside, if we or your broker believe that the stockholders are members of the same family. This practice, referred to as “householding,” benefits both you and us. It reduces the volume of duplicate information received at your household and helps to reduce our expenses. The rule applies to our Notices, annual reports, proxy statements and information statements. Once you receive notice from your broker or from us that communications to your address will be “householded,” the practice will continue until you are otherwise notified or until you revoke your consent to the practice. Stockholders who participate in householding will continue to have access to and utilize separate proxy voting instructions.

If your household received a single Notice or, if applicable, a single set of proxy materials this year, but you would prefer to receive your own copy, please contact Clifford Weinstein, Executive Vice President, via email at [cweinstein@vringoinc.com](mailto:cweinstein@vringoinc.com) or by calling 1-646-532-6777.

If you do not wish to participate in “householding” and would like to receive your own Notice or, if applicable, set of our proxy materials in future years, follow the instructions described below. Conversely, if you share an address with another of our stockholder and together both of you would like to receive only a single Notice or, if applicable, set of proxy materials, follow these instructions:

- If your shares are registered in your own name, please contact American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC. and inform them of your request by calling them at 718-921-8200.
- If a broker or other nominee holds your shares, please contact the broker or other nominee directly and inform them of your request. Be sure to include your name, the name of your brokerage firm and your account number.

## Electronic Delivery of Company Stockholder Communications

Most stockholders can elect to view or receive copies of future proxy materials over the Internet instead of receiving paper copies in the mail.

You can choose this option and save the Company the cost of producing and mailing these documents by:

- following the instructions provided on your Notice or proxy card;
- following the instructions provided when you vote over the Internet; or
- going to **[INSERT INTERNET CITE]** and following the instructions provided.

## SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT

The following table sets forth certain information with respect to the beneficial ownership of our common stock as of August 18, 2015 for (a) the executive officers named in the Summary Compensation Table on page 22 of this proxy statement, (b) each of our directors and director nominees, (c) all of our current directors and executive officers as a group and (d) each stockholder known by us to own beneficially more than 5% of our common stock. Beneficial ownership is determined in accordance with the rules of the SEC and includes voting or investment power with respect to the securities. We deem shares of common stock that may be acquired by an individual or group within 60 days of August 18, 2015 pursuant to the exercise of options or warrants or the vesting of restricted stock units to be outstanding for the purpose of computing the percentage ownership of such individual or group, but are not deemed to be outstanding for the purpose of computing the percentage ownership of any other person shown in the table. Except as indicated in footnotes to this table, we believe that the stockholders named in this table have sole voting and investment power with respect to all shares of common stock shown to be beneficially owned by them based on information provided to us by these stockholders. Percentage of ownership is based on 101,502,805 shares of common stock outstanding on August 18, 2015.

Name and Address of Beneficial Owner <sup>(1)</sup>	Amount and Nature of Beneficial Ownership	Percent of Class
<i>Five percent or more beneficial owners:</i>		
Iroquois Capital Management L.L.C. <sup>(2)</sup> 780 Third Avenue, 12th Floor New York, NY 10017	16,243,573	9.99%
<i>Directors and named executive officers:</i>		
Andrew Kennedy Lang <sup>(3)</sup>	7,443,039	7.2%
Andrew D. Perlman <sup>(4)</sup>	2,774,749	2.7%
Donald E. Stout <sup>(5)</sup>	1,627,196	1.6%
David L. Cohen, Esq. <sup>(6)</sup>	860,000	*
John Engelman <sup>(7)</sup>	814,076	*
H. Van Sinclair <sup>(8)</sup>	724,163	*
Anastasia Nyrkovskaya <sup>(9)</sup>	441,000	*
Noel J. Spiegel <sup>(10)</sup>	330,000	*
Ashley C. Keller <sup>(11)</sup>	280,500	*
Alexander R. Berger <sup>(12)</sup>	1,900,369	1.9%
All current directors and officers as a group (8 individuals) <sup>(13)</sup> :	7,851,684	7.3%

\* Less than 1%.

(1) Unless otherwise indicated, the business address of the individuals is c/o Vringo Inc., 780 Third Avenue, 12<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, NY 10017.

(2) Based on a Schedule 13G filed by Iroquois Capital Management L.L.C. ("Iroquois") on May 12, 2015. As of such date, Iroquois may be deemed to beneficially own (i) \$12,500,000 principal amount of Senior Secured Convertible Notes (the "Convertible Notes") convertible into 12,500,000 shares of our common stock, and (ii) warrants (the "Warrants") to purchase an aggregate of 2,219,803 shares of our common stock. Of such shares, 10,000,000 shares of common stock are issuable upon Convertible Notes held by Iroquois Master Fund Ltd. (the "Fund"), and 2,500,000 shares of common stock are issuable upon Convertible Notes held by Iroquois Capital Investment Group LLC ("ICIG"). The Convertible Notes may not be converted, and the Warrants are not exercisable, to the extent that the holder or any of its affiliates would own more than a maximum of 9.99% of the outstanding common stock of the Issuer after such conversion or exercise. Based on our records, as of August 18, 2015, \$9,319,778 of Convertible Notes and 5,375,000 shares of common stock issuable upon the warrants that become exercisable starting November 5, 2015 were outstanding. In addition, based on our records, the holders held 1,548,795 shares of our common stock. Mr. Abbe and Mr. Silverman are the members of Iroquois who have the authority and responsibility for the investments made on behalf of the Fund and ICIG. As such, Mr. Abbe and Mr. Silverman may be deemed to be the beneficial owner of all shares of common stock held by the Fund and ICIG.



- (3) Includes options to purchase 326,389 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase 2,052,419 shares of our common stock exercisable within the next 60 days. 2,344,509 shares and 965,039 shares issuable upon exercise of warrants are held by Innovation Spring LLC. Innovation Spring Trust is the sole member and the 100% owner of Innovation Spring LLC. Andrew C. Lang, the father of Mr. Andrew Kennedy Lang, has the sole power to vote or direct the vote over the shares held by Innovation Spring LLC. Mr. Andrew Kennedy Lang does not have power to vote or direct the vote over the 3,309,548 shares held by Innovation Spring LLC.
- (4) Includes options to purchase 2,356,084 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase 40,000 shares of our common stock exercisable within the next 60 days.
- (5) Includes options to purchase 441,178 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase 302,203 shares of our common stock exercisable within the next 60 days. 733,815 shares of common stock and 302,203 shares issuable upon exercise of warrants are held by the Donald E. and Mary Stout Trust.
- (6) Includes options to purchase 818,333 shares of our common stock exercisable within the next 60 days.
- (7) Includes options to purchase 627,500 shares of our common stock exercisable within the next 60 days.
- (8) Includes options to purchase 400,000 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase 49,709 shares of our common stock exercisable within the next 60 days.
- (9) Includes options to purchase 425,000 shares of our common stock exercisable within the next 60 days.
- (10) Includes options to purchase 255,000 shares of our common stock exercisable within the next 60 days.
- (11) Includes options to purchase 270,500 shares of our common stock exercisable within the next 60 days.
- (12) Based on Amendment No. 1 to Schedule 13D/A filed by Mr. Berger with the SEC on March 16, 2015. Includes an aggregate of Series 1 Warrants to purchase 172,805 shares of our common stock and Series 2 Warrants to purchase 372,816 shares of our common stock. Mr. Berger has the sole power to vote or to direct the vote and sole power to dispose or direct the disposition of 1,900,369 shares of common stock beneficially owned by him; 405,856 shares of our common stock, Series 1 Warrants to purchase 172,805 shares of our common stock and Series 2 Warrants to purchase 372,816 shares of our common stock are held by Alexander Ross Berger Revocable Trust, of which Mr. Berger is trustee; and 750,000 shares of our common stock are held by ARB Family Trust, of which Mr. Berger is trustee.
- (13) See footnotes (4)-(11).

## MANAGEMENT AND CORPORATE GOVERNANCE

### The Board of Directors

Our Board of Directors currently consists of six (6) members. Prior to each annual meeting of stockholders, the Board of Directors considers the recommendations of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee and votes to nominate individuals for election or re-election for a term of one year or until their successors are duly elected and qualify or until their earlier death, resignation, or removal. Election takes place at our annual meeting of stockholders.

Set forth below are the names of our directors and executive officers, their ages (as of the filing date of this proxy statement), their position(s) with us, if any, their principal occupations or employment for at least the past five years, the length of their tenure as directors and the names of other public companies in which such persons hold or have held directorships during the past five years. Our executive officers are appointed by, and serve at the discretion of, our Board of Directors. There are no family relationships among any of the directors or executive officers. Additionally, information about the specific experience, qualifications, attributes or skills that led to our Board of Directors' conclusion that each person listed below should serve as a director is set forth below:

Name	Age	Position with the Company
Andrew D. Perlman	37	Chief Executive Officer and Director
H. Van Sinclair* (2)(3)	62	Lead Independent Director
John Engelman* (1)	59	Director
Ashley C. Keller* (2)(3)(4)	36	Director
Noel J. Spiegel* (1)(2)	67	Director
Donald E. Stout* (1)(5)	68	Director

\* Independent director.

(1) Current member of Compensation Committee.

(2) Current member of Audit Committee.

(3) Current member of Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee.

(4) Mr. Keller served as a member of the Compensation Committee through January 15, 2015.

(5) Mr. Stout joined the Compensation Committee on January 15, 2015.

Our Board of Directors has reviewed the materiality of any relationship that each of our directors has with us, either directly or indirectly. Based on this review, our Board of Directors has determined that the following members of the Board of Directors are "independent directors" as defined by The NASDAQ Stock Market: H. Van Sinclair, John Engelman, Ashley C. Keller, Noel J. Spiegel and Donald E. Stout.

**Andrew D. Perlman** has served as our Chief Executive Officer ("CEO") since March 2012, as our President from April 2010 to July 2012 and as a member of our Board of Directors since September 2009. From February 2009 to March 2010, Mr. Perlman served as Vice President of Global Digital Business Development at EMI Music Group ("EMI"), where he was responsible for leading distribution deals with digital partners for EMI's music and video content. From May 2007 to February 2009, Mr. Perlman was the General Manager of our operations in the United States and also served as our Senior Vice President Content & Community, in which he led our content and social community partnerships. From June 2005 to May 2007, Mr. Perlman was Senior Vice President of Digital Media at Classic Media, Inc. ("Classic Media"), a global media company with a portfolio of kids, family and pop-culture entertainment brands. In his position with Classic Media, Mr. Perlman led the company's partnerships across video gaming, online and mobile distribution. From June 2001 to May 2005, Mr. Perlman served as General Manager for the Rights Group, LLC and its predecessors, a mobile content, marketing and mobile fan club company, where he oversaw mobile marketing campaigns for major international brands such as Visa and Pepsi, and such artists as Britney Spears and Justin Timberlake. Mr. Perlman holds a Bachelor of Arts ("B.A.") in Business Administration from the School of Business and Public Management at The George Washington University.

We believe Mr. Perlman's prior experience in licensing intellectual property and deal structuring qualifies him to serve on our Board of Directors. His additional experience and insights gained over the past five years at Vringo are a significant contribution to the Company and the Board of Directors.

**H. Van Sinclair** has been a director at Vringo since July 19, 2012 and was a director of Innovate/Protect from November 7, 2011 through the consummation of the merger with Vringo. Since 2003, Mr. Sinclair has served as President, CEO and General Counsel of The RLJ Companies (“RLJ”), the investment company organized by Robert L. Johnson, the founder of Black Entertainment Television. RLJ owns or holds interests in diverse businesses, including private equity, financial services, asset management, insurance services, automobile dealerships, film production, sports and entertainment and video lottery terminal gaming. Mr. Sinclair currently serves as a director of RLJ Entertainment, Inc. a publicly traded company in the media rights business, and formerly served as President and a director of RLJ Acquisition, Inc., a publicly traded special purpose acquisition company that is now a subsidiary through merger of RLJ Entertainment, Inc. Mr. Sinclair also sits on additional boards RLJ’s portfolio investment companies. Mr. Sinclair has also served as Vice President of Legal and Business Affairs for RLJ Urban Lodging Funds, a private equity fund which concentrated on limited and focused service hotels; for RLJ Development, RLJ’s hotel and hospitality company; and as Acting President of the Charlotte Bobcats (now the Charlotte Hornets), the NBA franchise located in Charlotte, North Carolina. Mr. Sinclair has also served as a director of Urban Trust Bank, a federal thrift headquartered in Orlando, Florida, where he chaired the Audit Committee. Prior to joining RLJ, Mr. Sinclair specialized in complex commercial disputes and litigation for 28 years with the Washington, D.C. based law firm Arent Fox, PLLC (“Arent Fox”). In the late 1990’s, Mr. Sinclair became the partner in charge of litigation at Arent Fox, and today remains of counsel to the firm. Mr. Sinclair holds a Bachelor’s degree in Mathematics and a Master’s degree in business administration from the University of Rochester, and a J.D. from The George Washington University.

We believe Mr. Sinclair’s experiences in commercial disputes, litigation, and board service on other public companies qualify him to serve on our Board of Directors.

**John Engelman** has been our director since December 2010. Mr. Engelman also serves as an independent director of Hemisphere Media Group, Inc., a publically traded Hispanic media company that owns and operates television stations and cable networks in the United States, Puerto Rico and Latin America. Mr. Engelman was a co-founder of Classic Media, Inc. (“Classic Media”), a global media company specializing in family and children’s entertainment where he served as co-chief executive officer until 2012. During that time, he launched television and consumer products driven brands based on iconic entertainment properties such as Lassie, Casper the Friendly Ghost, Frosty the Snowman and Bullwinkle and Rocky. Mr. Engelman developed monetization strategies and oversaw the roll up of intellectual property assets from diverse rights holders. In August 2012, Classic Media was acquired by DreamWorks Animation SKG where Mr. Engelman currently co-heads the DreamWorks Classics division. From 2007 to 2009, Mr. Engelman was co-chief executive officer of Boomerang Media, Inc. (“Boomerang Media”), an acquisition company controlled by GTCR Golder Rauner. From 1997 to 2001, he was an operating partner with Pegasus Capital Advisors and a managing director of Brener International Group, LLC. From 1991 to 1996, Mr. Engelman was President of Broadway Video, Inc., a producer of live television and motion pictures. He began his career as a partner at the Los Angeles law firm of Irell & Manella. Mr. Engelman has a J.D. from Harvard Law School and a B.A. in Government from Harvard College.

We believe Mr. Engelman’s experience in the media and entertainment industries qualifies him to serve on our Board of Directors. His experience gained both as an executive at Classic Media and Boomerang Media are contributions to us and the Board of Directors.

**Ashley C. Keller** has been our director since December 31, 2012. Ashley Keller is co-founder and Chief Investment Officer of Gerchen Keller Capital, LLC, a private investment firm formed to invest in complex commercial legal claims. Prior to co-founding Gerchen Keller Capital, LLC, Mr. Keller was a special situations Analyst at Ayeska Investment Group (“Ayeska”), a hedge fund based in Chicago. In that position, he focused on investments in companies facing complex regulatory, legal, and other matters. Prior to joining Ayeska, Mr. Keller was an attorney with an array of experience in complex and high-stakes commercial litigation. He was a Partner at Bartlit Beck Herman Palenchar & Scott LLP, where he handled various trial and appellate matters involving securities and patent cases, contractual disputes, and mass-tort class actions. Before practicing law, Mr. Keller clerked for Judge Richard Posner at the United States Court of Appeals for the Seventh Circuit and Justice Anthony Kennedy at the Supreme Court of the United States. Mr. Keller graduated magna cum laude from Harvard University with a degree in Government. He received an MBA with high honors from the University Of Chicago Booth School Of Business, where he graduated in the top 5% of his class. He earned his J.D. with highest honors from the University of Chicago Law School, where he graduated first in his class.

We believe Mr. Keller's experience in commercial litigation matters and involvement in securities and patent cases qualifies him to serve on our Board of Directors.

**Noel J. Spiegel** has been our director since May 6, 2013. Mr. Spiegel is currently a director of American Eagle Outfitters, Inc., where he serves as chairman of the Audit Committee and a member of the Compensation Committee, a director of Radian Group, Inc., where he serves as a member of the Audit Committee as well as a director of vTv Therapeutics LLC, where he serves as the chairman of the Audit Committee. Mr. Spiegel was a partner at Deloitte & Touche LLP ("Deloitte"), where he practiced from September 1969 until his retirement in May 2010. In his over forty year career at Deloitte, he served in numerous management positions, including Deputy Managing Partner, member of the Executive Committee and Partner-in-Charge of Audit Operations in Deloitte's New York Office. Mr. Spiegel also served as Managing Partner of Deloitte's Transaction Assurance practice, Global Offerings and International Financial Reporting Standards practice, and Technology, Media and Telecommunications practice for the Northeast Region. Mr. Spiegel holds a B.S. from Long Island University, and attended the Advanced Management Program at Harvard Business School.

We believe that Mr. Spiegel's tenure of over forty years at Deloitte, coupled with his experience on public company boards of directors, qualifies him to serve on our Board of Directors.

**Donald E. Stout** has been a director at Vringo since July 19, 2012 and was a director of Innovate/Protect from November 7, 2011 through the consummation of the merger with Vringo. In a career spanning over forty years, Mr. Stout has been involved in virtually all facets of intellectual property law. Mr. Stout is a partner at a law firm Fitch, Even, Tabin & Flannery LLP since 2015 and he had been a senior partner at the law firm of Antonelli, Terry, Stout & Kraus, LLP from 1982 to 2015. As an attorney in private practice, Mr. Stout has focused on litigation, licensing and representation of clients before the United States Patent and Trademark Office ("USPTO") in diverse technological areas. From 1971 to 1972, Mr. Stout worked as a law clerk for two members of the USPTO Board of Appeals and, from 1968 to 1972, Mr. Stout was an assistant examiner at the USPTO, where he focused on patent applications covering radio and television technologies. Mr. Stout has written and prosecuted hundreds of patent applications in diverse technologies, rendered opinions on patent infringement and validity, and has testified as an expert witness regarding obtaining and prosecuting patents. Mr. Stout is also the co-founder of NTP Inc., which licensed Research in Motion (RIM), the maker of the Blackberry handheld devices, for \$612.5 million to settle a patent infringement action. Mr. Stout also serves on the Board of Directors of Tessera Technologies, Inc. (TSRA). Mr. Stout is a member of the bars of the District of Columbia and Virginia, and is admitted to practice before the Supreme Court of the United States, the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit and the USPTO. Mr. Stout holds a Bachelor's degree in Electrical Engineering, with distinction, from Pennsylvania State University, and a J.D., with honors, from The George Washington University.

We believe Mr. Stout's experience in intellectual property law qualifies him to serve on our Board of Directors.

#### **Committees of the Board of Directors and Meetings**

**Meeting Attendance.** During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014 there were 24 meetings of our Board of Directors, and the various committees of the Board of Directors met a total of 10 times. No director attended fewer than 75% of the total number of meetings of the Board of Directors and of committees of the Board of Directors on which he served during fiscal 2014. The Board of Directors has adopted a policy under which each member of the Board of Directors is strongly encouraged but not required to attend each annual meeting of our stockholders.

**Audit Committee.** Our Audit Committee met six times during fiscal 2014. This committee currently has three (3) members, Noel J. Spiegel (Chairman), H. Van Sinclair and Ashley C. Keller. Our Audit Committee's role and responsibilities are set forth in the Audit Committee's written charter and include the authority to retain and terminate the services of our independent registered public accounting firm. In addition, the Audit Committee reviews our annual and quarterly financial statements, considers matters relating to accounting policy and internal controls and reviews the scope of annual audits. All members of the Audit Committee satisfy the current independence standards promulgated by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") and The NASDAQ Stock Market ("NASDAQ"), as such standards apply specifically to members of audit committees. The Board of Directors has determined that both Messrs. Spiegel and Sinclair are "audit committee financial experts," as defined by the SEC in Item 407 of Regulation S-K.

A copy of the Audit Committee's written charter is publicly available through the "Investors — Corporate Governance" section of our website at [www.vringoip.com](http://www.vringoip.com).

**Compensation Committee.** Our Compensation Committee met three times during fiscal 2014. This committee currently has three (3) members, John Engelman (Chairman), Donald E. Stout and Noel J. Spiegel. Ashley C. Keller served as a member of the Compensation Committee through January 15, 2015. Mr. Stout joined the Compensation Committee on January 15, 2015.

Our Compensation Committee's role and responsibilities are set forth in the Compensation Committee's written charter and includes reviewing, approving and making recommendations regarding our compensation policies, practices and procedures to ensure that legal and fiduciary responsibilities of the Board of Directors are carried out and that such policies, practices and procedures contribute to our success. Our Compensation Committee also administers our 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan (the "2012 Plan") and our 2006 Stock Option Plan (the "2006 Plan"). The Compensation Committee is responsible for the determination of the compensation of our CEO, and shall conduct its decision making process with respect to that issue without the CEO present, and establishment and reviewing general compensation policies with the objective of attracting and retaining superior talent, rewarding individual performance and achieving our financial goals. The Compensation Committee has the authority to directly retain the services of independent consultants and other experts to assist in fulfilling its responsibilities. During fiscal year 2014, based on the recommendation of management, the Compensation Committee did not engage third party compensation consultants.

All members of the Compensation Committee qualify as independent under the definition promulgated by NASDAQ. A copy of the Compensation Committee's written charter is publicly available through the "Investors — Corporate Governance" section of our website at [www.vringoip.com](http://www.vringoip.com).

**Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee.** Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee met once during fiscal year 2014 and currently has two (2) members, H. Van Sinclair (Chairman) and Ashley C. Keller. The Nominating Committee's role and responsibilities are set forth in the Nominating Committee's written charter and is authorized to:

- identify and nominate members of the Board of Directors;
- oversee the evaluation of the Board of Directors and management;
- develop and recommend corporate governance guidelines to the Board of Directors;
- evaluate the performance of the members of the Board of Directors; and
- make recommendations to the Board of Directors as to the structure, composition and functioning of the Board of Directors and its committees.

We have no formal policy regarding board diversity. Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee and Board of Directors may therefore consider a broad range of factors relating to the qualifications and background of nominees, which may include diversity, which is not only limited to race, gender or national origin. Our Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee's and Board of Directors' priority in selecting board members is identification of persons who will further the interests of our stockholders through his or her established record of professional accomplishment, the ability to contribute positively to the collaborative culture among board members and professional and personal experiences and expertise relevant to our growth strategy.

All members of the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee qualify as independent under the definition promulgated by NASDAQ. In addition, under our current corporate governance policies, the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee may consider candidates recommended by stockholders as well as from other sources such as other directors or officers, third party search firms or other appropriate sources. For all potential candidates, the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee may consider all factors it deems relevant, such as a candidate's personal integrity and sound judgment, business and professional skills and experience, independence, knowledge of the industry in which we operate, possible conflicts of interest, diversity, the extent to which the candidate would fill a present need on the Board of Directors, and concern for the long-term interests of the stockholders. In general, persons recommended by stockholders will be considered on the same basis as candidates from other sources.

A copy of the Nominating and Governance Committee’s written charter is publicly available through the “Investors — Corporate Governance” section of our website at [www.vringoip.com](http://www.vringoip.com).

### **Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation.**

During the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014, Messrs. Engelman, Keller and Spiegel served as members of our Compensation Committee. In 2014, none of our executive officers served on the Board of Directors or compensation committee of any entity that had one or more executive officers serving as a member of our Board of Directors or Compensation Committee. There are no family relationships between or among the members of our Board of Directors or executive officers.

### **Board Leadership Structure and Role in Risk Oversight**

Mr. Perlman currently serves as our CEO and Mr. Sinclair, a non-management director, serves as our lead independent director. If the Board of Directors convenes for a special meeting, the non-management directors will meet in executive session if circumstances warrant. Mr. Sinclair, as lead independent director, will preside over executive sessions of the Board of Directors.

The Board of Directors oversees our business and considers the risks associated with our business strategy and decisions. The Board of Directors currently implements its risk oversight function as a whole. Upon the formation of each of the board committees, the committees will also provide risk oversight and report any material risks to the Board of Directors.

### **Stockholder Communications to the Board**

Generally, stockholders who have questions or concerns should contact our Investor Relations department at 1-646-532-6777. However, any stockholders who wish to address questions regarding our business directly with the Board of Directors, or any individual director, should direct his or her questions via e-mail at [cweinstein@vringo.com](mailto:cweinstein@vringo.com). Communications will be distributed to the Board of Directors, or to any individual director or directors as appropriate, depending on the facts and circumstances outlined in the communications. Items that are unrelated to the duties and responsibilities of the Board may be excluded, such as:

- junk mail and mass mailings,
- resumes and other forms of job inquiries,
- surveys, or
- solicitations or advertisements.

In addition, any material that is unduly hostile, threatening, or illegal in nature may be excluded, provided that any communication that is filtered out will be made available to any outside director upon request.

### **Executive Officers**

The following table sets forth certain information regarding our executive officers who are not also directors. We have employment agreements with each of our executive officers.

Andrew D. Perlman	37	Chief Executive Officer and Director
Anastasia Nyrkovskaya	38	Chief Financial Officer
David L. Cohen, Esq.	44	Chief Legal and Intellectual Property Officer

**Andrew D. Perlman** our Chief Executive Officer and Director (see biography in the section above titled “The Board of Directors”)

**Anastasia Nyrkovskaya** joined the Company in May 2013 as our Chief Financial Officer. Ms. Nyrkovskaya oversees all aspects of the finance and accounting functions, including: SEC and internal financial reporting, budgeting and forecasting, tax planning and reporting, human resources, and operational matters. Prior to joining the Company, from 2006, Ms. Nyrkovskaya served as Vice President and Assistant Global Controller and Vice President, Corporate Finance and Business Development at NBCUniversal Media, LLC (“NBCUniversal Media”). She was responsible for technical accounting areas, policies and internal controls. She also structured merger and acquisition transactions, partnerships, joint ventures and dispositions as well as debt activities, and restructurings. From 1998 to 2006, Ms. Nyrkovskaya served in the Audit and Assurance practice at KPMG LLP. Ms. Nyrkovskaya is a Certified Public Accountant and received an advanced degree in economics and business administration from Moscow State University of Publishing and Printing Arts.

**David L. Cohen, Esq.** has served as our Secretary since January 15, 2015, Chief Legal and Intellectual Property Officer since May 7, 2013, as our Head of Litigation, Licensing and Intellectual Property from July 19, 2012 to May 7, 2013, and as Innovate/Protect’s Special Counsel from May 20, 2012 to July 19, 2012. Mr. Cohen oversees the Company’s world-wide efforts in intellectual property development and monetization. Prior to joining Vringo, Mr. Cohen was Senior Litigation Counsel at Nokia, where among his other duties, he oversaw many of Nokia’s litigations. Mr. Cohen has also worked in private practice at Lerner David Littenberg Krumholz & Mentlik, LLP from 2004 to 2007 and at Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom LLP from 2000 to 2004. Before practicing law, Mr. Cohen earned a B.A. and a Master of Arts (“M.A.”) from the Johns Hopkins University in the history of science and history; a Master of Philosophy in the history and philosophy of science from Cambridge University, an M.A. (with distinction) in legal and political theory from University College London, and a Juris Doctor (“J.D.”) (cum laude) from Northwestern University School of Law (“Northwestern”), where he was an associate editor of the Law Review. Mr. Cohen received the Sara Norton prize from Cambridge University and the First Prize in Lowden-Wigmore Prizes for Legal Scholarship from Northwestern. Mr. Cohen clerked for The Honorable Chief Judge Gregory W. Carman of the Court of International Trade.

## COMPENSATION DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS

We have prepared the following Compensation Discussion and Analysis (“CD&A”) to provide you with information that we believe is necessary to understand our executive compensation policies and decisions as they relate to the compensation of our named executive officers (“NEOs”).

### **Overview**

Below is a summary of our NEOs as of December 31, 2014:

Andrew D. Perlman	Chief Executive Officer and Director
Andrew Kennedy Lang	Chief Technology Officer, President and Director
Anastasia Nyrkovskaya	Chief Financial Officer
David L. Cohen, Esq.	Chief Legal and Intellectual Property Officer

In addition, Alexander R. Berger served as our Chief Operating Officer and Director through December 19, 2014, at which time he ceased to be an executive officer of the Company.

### **Company Performance, Compensation Determination Process, and Related Compensation Decisions**

During 2014, a variety of decisions occurred with respect to the I/P Engine litigation against AOL Inc., Google Inc. et al. On August 15, 2014, the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit (“Federal Circuit”) reversed a judgment of the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Virginia by holding that the asserted claims of the patents-in-suit in the Company’s wholly-owned subsidiary I/P Engine’s litigation against AOL Inc., Google Inc. et al. are invalid for obviousness. On October 15, 2014, I/P Engine filed a petition for rehearing en banc, in which it argued that the majority’s opinion in this case presents important questions of law and is at odds with a series of Supreme Court and Federal Circuit decisions which do not allow appellate judges to disregard a jury’s detailed findings under these circumstances. I/P Engine argued that review is particularly appropriate here, where the panel majority not only failed to adopt the proper legal standard, but explicitly rejected it. On December 15, 2014, the Federal Circuit denied I/P Engine’s petition for rehearing of the case en banc and consequently, we announced that I/P Engine will seek review by the U.S. Supreme Court of the Federal Circuit’s decision.

During the second half of the year, the Company’s stock price declined and the closing price of the Company’s stock on December 31, 2014 was \$0.55. The decline in stock price resulted in a significantly lower market capitalization and, as a result, influenced the Company’s compensation decisions. In addition, as a result of our 2014 annual meeting of stockholders, the Company received a 65% vote in support of its executive compensation program in the 2014 Say-on-Pay advisory vote (the “Advisory Vote”) and this was taken into account by the Compensation Committee.

In establishing compensation amounts for executives, the Compensation Committee seeks to provide compensation that is competitive in light of current market conditions and industry practices. Accordingly, the Compensation Committee annually reviews market data which is comprised of proxy-disclosed data from peer companies and information from nationally recognized published surveys for general and high-technology industry, adjusted for size. For 2014, these peer companies included VirnetX (NYSE:VHC), Acacia Research Corporation (NASDAQ:ACTG), Interdigital, Inc. (NASDAQ:IDCC), Unwired Planet, Inc. (NASDAQ:UIPIP), Parkervision Inc. (NASDAQ:PRKR), Pendrell Corporation (NASDAQ:PCO), and Document Security Systems, Inc. (NYSE:DSS). The market data helps the Compensation Committee gain perspective on the compensation levels and practices at the peer companies and to assess the relative competitiveness of the compensation paid to the company’s executives. The market data thus guides the Compensation Committee in its efforts to set executive compensation levels and program targets at competitive levels for comparable roles in the marketplace. The Compensation Committee then takes into account other factors, such as the importance of each executive officer’s role to the company, individual expertise, experience, and performance, retention concerns and relevant compensation trends in the marketplace, in making its final compensation determinations.



The Compensation Committee reviews the performance of each NEO annually in light of the above factors and determines whether the NEO should receive any increase in base salary or receive a discretionary equity award based on such evaluation. The CEO also provides input related to the performance and compensation evaluation of each NEO, but does not provide input related to his own performance and compensation evaluation. During fiscal year 2014, the Compensation Committee did not utilize quantitative measures connected to financial results, such as revenues or profitability, with respect to compensation, as the Company did not generate net income during the year.

Our Compensation Committee held six meetings during 2014 to consider appropriate actions with respect to executive compensation including the appropriateness of cash bonuses, salary increases, and granting equity awards for 2014 performance. The Compensation Committee and the Board of Directors concluded that there would be no cash bonuses paid to employees, including the CEO and all other NEOs, for 2014 as the Company did not generate net income during the year. Further, the Compensation Committee and the Board of Directors decided that there would be no annual equity awards granted to the CEO or the other NEOs in early 2015 given our 2014 results and decline in the stock price. The Compensation Committee and the Board of Directors also decided that there would be no salary increases for the CEO or all other executive officers, except for contractual salary increases of \$15,000 to both Mr. Perlman and Mr. Berger, and salary increases of \$15,000 to both Mr. Cohen and Ms. Nyrkovskaya to reflect the increase in cost of living. The results of the Advisory Vote were also taken into consideration by the Compensation Committee in making these decisions and in evaluating the full scale of executive compensation for 2014. The Compensation Committee and the Board of Directors believe that these decisions demonstrate the strong linkage between executive pay and feedback from our investors and our Company's 2014 financial results.

During the first quarter of 2014, we granted Ms. Nyrkovskaya 300,000 options, and Mr. Cohen 100,000 options, both at an exercise price of \$4.10, vesting quarterly over a three year period, related to their individual performance during 2013. The decision to do so was made based on the results of the market data review and other analyses performed by the Compensation Committee, in order to adjust the compensation of these individuals to competitive levels for comparable roles in the marketplace. There were no other equity awards granted to NEOs in 2014.

The Compensation Committee and the Board of Directors believe the 2014 compensation decisions and the overall executive compensation program are tailored to our business strategies, align pay with performance, and take into account feedback received from investors. We will continue our engagement with our stockholders regarding our executive compensation program as well as other governance matters.

### ***Compensation Components and Philosophy***

We currently provide two basic forms of direct compensation to our employees, including the CEO and the other NEOs: base salary and equity awards. Equity awards include stock options to purchase shares of our common stock and restricted stock units ("RSUs"). Equity awards granted to our NEOs typically vest in equal quarterly installments, over a period of three years. On an annual basis, each of these compensation components are reviewed by our Compensation Committee for each of our employees, including our CEO and the other NEOs, to ensure that compensation levels remain appropriate. We have not historically paid annual cash bonuses to our NEOs.

Overall, we and our Compensation Committee, are committed to the principle that executive compensation should be directly tied into value creation for our stockholders.

Historically, the Company has not experienced substantial revenues or positive cash flows, and accordingly, no annual cash bonuses have been paid to our CEO or the other NEOs. In addition, the value of stock options granted to executives are contingent upon performance of our Company's stock, while time-based RSU granted in the past further align our executives with our stockholders by providing executives with meaningful, direct ownership stake in our stock.

Our goal is to attract and retain the best available executive talent to lead our Company. This can be challenging given the competitive environment in which we operate and considering the Company's limited financial resources until we achieve sufficient revenues, if ever. We also strive to align the interests of our executive officers with those of our stockholders. Therefore, a substantial portion of our executives' compensation is structured as long-term equity compensation including stock options and RSUs.

### ***Employment Agreements***

We have entered into employment agreements with our NEOs. Each of these agreements provides for certain payments and other benefits if the executive's employment terminates under certain circumstances other than for "cause," including in connection with a "change in control." See the subsection "Narrative to Summary Compensation Table and Grants of Plan-Based Awards Table" for a description of the agreement terms impacting current compensation and "Potential Payments upon Termination or Change-in-Control" for a description of applicable severance and change in control benefits.

Our Compensation Committee believes that change-in-control and severance arrangements are important parts of the overall compensation program for our NEOs. Severance arrangements are used primarily to attract, retain and motivate individuals with the requisite experience and ability to drive our success. Severance arrangements also serve, in part, as consideration to secure commitments from our executive officers not to compete with us after termination of their employment.

### ***Compensation Policies and Practices Related to Risk Management***

Consistent with SEC disclosure requirements, we have evaluated the potential risks related to our compensation policies, practices and awards and have concluded that there are no risks that are reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on the Company. We do not have any programs where a participant may be able to directly affect variability or timing of payout. Rather, our compensation programs include a combination of fixed base salaries and equity awards that are generally uniform in design and operation throughout the Company.

## COMPENSATION COMMITTEE REPORT

The compensation committee of our Board of Directors has reviewed and discussed the Compensation Discussion and Analysis required by Item 402(b) of Regulation S-K, which appears elsewhere in this proxy statement, with our management. Based on this review and discussion, the compensation committee has recommended to the Board of Directors that the Compensation Discussion and Analysis be included in our proxy statement.

Members of the Compensation Committee

John Engelman, Chairman  
Ashley C. Keller  
Noel J. Spiegel  
Donald E. Stout

## EXECUTIVE OFFICER AND DIRECTOR COMPENSATION

### Summary Compensation Table

The following table shows the total compensation paid or accrued during the fiscal years ended December 31, 2014, 2013 and 2012 to (1) our Chief Executive Officer, (2) our Chief Technology Officer and President, (3) our Chief Financial Officer, and (4) our Chief Legal and Intellectual Property Officer, who are all of our executive officers during and at the end of our fiscal year ended December 31, 2014. The table also includes our Former Chief Operating Officer, who would have been among the three most highly compensated executive officers except for the fact that he was not serving as an executive officer of the Company as of the end of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014.

Name and principal position	Year	Salary (\$)	Stock awards (\$) <sup>(1)</sup>	Option awards (\$) <sup>(1)</sup>	All other compensation (\$)	Total (\$)
Andrew D. Perlman	2014	400,000	—	—	—	400,000
<i>Chief Executive Officer</i>	2013	385,000	556,500	1,425,675	—	2,367,175
	2012	240,289	2,511,100	4,289,556 <sup>(2)</sup>	169,080	7,209,925
Andrew Kennedy Lang	2014	385,000	—	—	—	385,000
<i>Former Chief Technology Officer and President</i>						
Anastasia Nyrkovskaya	2014	312,938	—	695,051	—	1,007,989
<i>Chief Financial Officer</i>						
David L. Cohen, Esq.	2014	312,938	—	231,684	—	544,622
<i>Chief Legal and Intellectual Property Officer</i>	2013	300,000	159,000	456,216	—	915,216
	2012	163,343	186,000	1,781,963	—	2,131,306
Alexander R. Berger	2014	389,487	—	—	—	389,487
<i>Former Chief Operating Officer<sup>(3)</sup></i>	2013	385,000	556,500	1,368,648	—	2,310,148
	2012	102,836	2,511,000	3,419,870	—	6,033,706

(1) Amounts represent the aggregate grant date fair value in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. For the assumptions made in the valuation of our equity awards see Notes 2(k) and 10 to our consolidated financial statements included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.

(2) Amount represents the aggregate grant date fair value of options granted during 2012 with exercise prices of \$3.72, \$1.65, and \$0.96 per option.

(3) Mr. Berger served as our Chief Operating Officer and a member of our Board of Directors until his resignation on December 19, 2014. All of Mr. Berger's outstanding options that were granted in 2013 and 2012 were forfeited for no consideration in connection with his resignation. His remaining unvested RSUs that were granted in 2013 and 2012 were forfeited for no consideration in connection with the termination of his consultant agreement on March 13, 2015.

## Grants of Plan-Based Awards Table

The following table shows information regarding grants of equity awards that were made during the year ended December 31, 2014 to our NEOs. All awards were made under our 2012 Plan. There were no grants of non-equity incentive plan awards to our NEOs during 2014.

<b>Name and principal position</b>	<b>Grant Date</b>	<b>Number of Securities Underlying Options (#)<sup>(1)</sup></b>	<b>Exercise Price of Option Awards (\$ per Share)</b>	<b>Grant Date Fair Value of Option Awards (\$)<sup>(2)</sup></b>
Anastasia Nyrkovskaya <i>Chief Financial Officer</i>	February 20, 2014	300,000	\$ 4.10	\$ 695,051
David L. Cohen, Esq. <i>Chief Litigation and Intellectual Property Officer</i>	February 20, 2014	100,000	\$ 4.10	\$ 231,684
Andrew D. Perlman <i>Chief Executive Officer</i>	—	—	—	—
Andrew Kennedy Lang <i>Former Chief Technology Officer and President</i>	—	—	—	—
Alexander R. Berger <i>Former Chief Operating Officer</i>	—	—	—	—

(1) One-twelfth (1/12) of the number of options granted vest on the last day of each calendar quarter over three (3) years, beginning with the end of the first quarter of 2014.

(2) Amounts represent the aggregate grant date fair value in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. For the assumptions made in the valuation of our equity awards see Notes 2(k) and 10 to our consolidated financial statements included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.

### Narrative Disclosure to Summary Compensation Table and Grants of Plan-Based Awards Table Andrew D. Perlman

On March 18, 2010, we entered into an employment agreement with Andrew D. Perlman which provided for 90 days' notice of termination by the Company other than for cause or by Mr. Perlman in order to resign. During the term of his employment, through March 31, 2012, Mr. Perlman's annual base salary was \$175,000. In addition, he was eligible to receive \$5,000 at the end of each quarter.

In March 2012, Mr. Perlman was appointed as our Chief Executive Officer. In connection with Mr. Perlman's new position, the Board of Directors agreed to the following revised employment terms: base salary of \$250,000 per year and severance equal to one year's base salary to be paid in the event he ceases to be our Chief Executive Officer pursuant to a change of control transaction.

On February 13, 2013, we entered into a new employment agreement with Mr. Perlman. Mr. Perlman's employment agreement has a term of three (3) years. Mr. Perlman and the Company have agreed to commence negotiations to enter into a new employment agreement at least six (6) months prior to the expiration of the three-year term and to conclude those negotiations no later than the date that is three (3) months prior to the expiration of the term of the employment agreement. Under the terms of the new employment agreement, Mr. Perlman received a base salary of \$385,000 effective January 1, 2013 until December 31, 2013. From January 1, 2014 to December 31, 2014, Mr. Perlman received a base salary of \$400,000. From January 1, 2015 through the remainder of the term of the employment agreement, Mr. Perlman will be entitled to receive a base salary of \$415,000. In addition, Mr. Perlman will be eligible to participate in any annual bonus or other incentive compensation program that we may adopt from time to time for our executive officers. In addition, on February 1, 2013, we entered into an indemnification agreement with Mr. Perlman.

In the event the employment agreement is terminated for (i) Good Reason by Mr. Perlman, or (ii) by us without Cause, Mr. Perlman shall be entitled to receive an amount of base salary (at the rate of base salary in effect immediately prior to such termination) equal to the lesser of (x) one times the base salary and (y) two times the base salary payable for the number of full months remaining in the employment period, and COBRA continuation coverage paid in full by us for up to a maximum of twelve months following the date of termination. "Cause" as used Mr. Perlman's employment agreement means: (a) the willful and continued failure of Mr. Perlman to perform substantially his duties and responsibilities for the Company (other than any such failure resulting from his death or disability) after a written demand by the Board of Directors for substantial performance is delivered to Mr. Perlman by the Company, which specifically identifies the manner in which the Board of Directors believes that Mr. Perlman has not substantially performed his duties and responsibilities, which willful and continued failure is not cured by Mr. Perlman within thirty days of his receipt of such written demand, (b) the conviction of, or plea of guilty or *nolo contendere* to a felony, (c) intentional breach of his non-compete obligations, (d) an intentional breach of the non-disclosure and non-solicitation agreement, or (e) a unanimous good faith finding by the Board of Directors that Mr. Perlman has engaged in fraud, dishonesty, gross negligence or misconduct which, if curable, has not been cured within thirty days after his receipt of a written notice from the Board of Directors stating with reasonable specificity the basis of such finding. "Good Reason" as used Mr. Perlman's employment agreement means (a) the assignment, without Mr. Perlman's consent, to Mr. Perlman of duties that result in a substantial diminution of the duties that he assumed; provided, however, the failure of Mr. Perlman to be reelected to the Board of Directors shall not be deemed to be a diminution of duties, (b) the assignment, without Mr. Perlman's consent, of a title that is subordinate to the title Chief Executive Officer, (c) a reduction in Mr. Perlman's base salary, (d) the Company's requirement that Mr. Perlman regularly report to work in a location that is more than fifty miles from the Company's current New York office, without the Mr. Perlman's consent, (e) a change in reporting relationship, provided however, that Good Reason does not include a change in the reporting relationship whereby Mr. Perlman will report to the Board of Directors of an acquiring company after a change of control (as that term is defined in the Company's 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan), or (f) a material breach by the Company of Mr. Perlman's employment agreement.

Mr. Perlman's employment agreement requires Mr. Perlman to assign intellectual property which he conceives or reduces to practice during his employment to us and to maintain our confidential information during employment and thereafter. Mr. Perlman is also subject to a non-competition and a non-solicitation provision for a period of two years following termination of his employment.

#### **Andrew Kennedy Lang**

On June 22, 2011 we entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Lang. On June 22, 2015, we amended the employment agreement, pursuant to which Mr. Lang's role will change from President and Chief Technology Officer of the Company to a new role as the Head of Technology. Mr. Lang assumed the new role for a period commencing on June 22, 2015 and ending on December 31, 2016, for which he will receive an annual base salary of \$200,000, prorated from June 22, 2015 until December 31, 2015, and an adjusted base salary of \$36,000 from January 1, 2016 until December 31, 2016. In addition, we and Mr. Lang will form a new corporation, to be initially owned 51% by the Company and 49% by Mr. Lang, for the purpose of developing and commercializing new technologies in the areas of mobile, security, digital currencies, and trusted computing and communication infrastructure. Mr. Lang's employment period will terminate upon the earliest of: (i) termination by us for any reason, (ii) termination by Mr. Lang for any reason, and (iii) December 31, 2016; provided, that if we terminate Mr. Lang for any reason other than Cause prior to the expiration of the employment period, we will be obligated to continue to pay Mr. Lang his base salary and benefits from the date of termination through December 31, 2016.

"Cause" as defined in Mr. Lang's employment agreement means: (a) the willful and continued failure of Mr. Lang to perform substantially his duties and responsibilities for us (other than any such failure resulting from Mr. Lang's death) after a written demand by the Board of Directors for substantial performance is delivered to Mr. Lang by us, which specifically identifies the manner in which the Board of Directors believes that Mr. Lang has not substantially performed his duties and responsibilities, which willful and continued failure is not cured by Mr. Lang within thirty (30) days of his receipt of such written demand; (b) the conviction of, or plea of guilty or *nolo contendere* to a felony, (c) violation of certain provision of the employment agreement, or (d) fraud, dishonesty or gross misconduct, which is materially and demonstratively injurious to the Company. Termination under clauses (b), (c) or (d) of this definition shall not be subject to cure.

“Good Reason” as used in Mr. Lang’s employment agreement means: (a) the assignment, without Mr. Lang’s consent, to Mr. Lang of duties that are significantly different from, or that result in a substantial diminution of, the duties that he assumed on the effective date of the employment agreement, (b) the assignment, without Mr. Lang’s consent, to Mr. Lang of a title that is different from and subordinate to his current title, (c) a reduction in Mr. Lang’s base salary, (d) the Company’s requirement that Mr. Lang regularly report to work in a location that is more than thirty miles from the Company’s New York office as of the date of the employment agreement, without Mr. Lang’s consent, or (e) a material breach by the Company of the employment agreement.

Mr. Lang’s employment agreement requires Mr. Lang to assign intellectual property which he conceives or reduces to practice during his employment to us and to maintain our confidential information during employment and thereafter. Mr. Lang is also subject to (i) a non-competition and a non-solicitation provision for a period of one year, which we, upon notice, may increase to two years, and (ii) a non-disparagement provision for a period of three years, following termination of his employment.

#### **Anastasia Nyrkovskaya**

On December 19, 2014, we entered into an employment agreement with Ms. Nyrkovskaya for an eighteen month term. Under the terms of her employment agreement, Ms. Nyrkovskaya’s annual base salary is \$315,000. In the event the employment agreement is terminated for (i) Good Reason by Ms. Nyrkovskaya, or (ii) by the Company without Cause, Ms. Nyrkovskaya shall be entitled to receive an amount of base salary at the rate of base salary in effect immediately prior to such termination equal to twelve months of base salary, and COBRA continuation coverage paid in full by the Company for up to a maximum of twelve months following the date of termination.

In case the agreement is terminated by Ms. Nyrkovskaya without Good Reason, she shall provide the Company with a written notice, at least ninety calendar days prior to such termination. “Cause” as used in Ms. Nyrkovskaya’s employment agreement means: (a) the willful and continued failure of Ms. Nyrkovskaya to perform substantially her duties and responsibilities for the Company (other than any such failure resulting from her death or disability) after a written demand by the chief executive officer for substantial performance is delivered to Ms. Nyrkovskaya by the Company, which specifically identifies the manner in which the chief executive officer believes that Ms. Nyrkovskaya has not substantially performed her duties and responsibilities, which willful and continued failure is not cured by Ms. Nyrkovskaya within thirty days of her receipt of such written demand; (b) the conviction of, or plea of guilty or nolo contendere to a felony, (c) breach of her non-compete obligations, (d) breach of the non-disclosure and non-solicitation agreement; or (e) a good faith finding by the chief executive officer that Ms. Nyrkovskaya has engaged in fraud, intentional dishonesty, or gross negligence. “Good Reason” as used Ms. Nyrkovskaya’s employment agreement means (a) the assignment, without Ms. Nyrkovskaya’s consent, to Ms. Nyrkovskaya of duties that result in a substantial diminution of the duties that she assumed; (b) the assignment, without Ms. Nyrkovskaya’s consent, of a title that is subordinate to the title Chief Financial Officer; (c) a reduction in Ms. Nyrkovskaya’s base salary; (d) the Company’s requirement that Ms. Nyrkovskaya regularly report to work in a location that is more than fifty miles from the Company’s current New York office, without Ms. Nyrkovskaya’s consent; (e) a material breach by the Company of the agreement during its term. Ms. Nyrkovskaya’s employment agreement also includes a covenant not to compete with the Company or solicit any material commercial relationships of the Company for a period of one year after Ms. Nyrkovskaya is actually no longer employed by the Company.

#### **David L. Cohen, Esq.**

On July 19, 2012, we assumed all of the duties, obligations and liabilities of Innovate/Protect under the employment agreement with David L. Cohen. Mr. Cohen’s employment was at will, meaning that either the employee or the Company may have terminated the relationship with or without cause, without any prior notice. Under the terms of his agreement, Mr. Cohen was entitled to receive a base salary of \$200,000. Pursuant to the consummation of the merger, on August 10, 2012, Mr. Cohen’s compensation was increased to \$300,000.

On May 7, 2013, we entered into a new employment agreement with Mr. Cohen, for a three-year term, unless sooner terminated, in accordance with the terms set therein. Under the terms of his employment agreement, Mr. Cohen is currently entitled to receive a base salary of \$300,000. In the event the employment agreement is terminated for (i) Good Reason by Mr. Cohen, or (ii) by the Company without Cause, Mr. Cohen shall be entitled to receive an amount of base salary (at the rate of base salary in effect immediately prior to such termination) equal to twelve months of base salary, and COBRA continuation coverage paid in full by the Company for up to a maximum of twelve months following the date of termination.

In case the agreement is terminated by Mr. Cohen without Good Reason, he shall provide the Company with a written notice, at least ninety calendar days prior to such termination. "Cause" as used Mr. Cohen's employment agreement means: (a) the willful and continued failure of Mr. Cohen to perform substantially his duties and responsibilities for the Company (other than any such failure resulting from his death or disability) after a written demand by the Board of Directors for substantial performance is delivered to Mr. Cohen by the Company, which specifically identifies the manner in which the Board of Directors believes that Mr. Cohen has not substantially performed his duties and responsibilities, which willful and continued failure is not cured by Mr. Cohen within thirty days of his receipt of such written demand; (b) the conviction of, or plea of guilty or nolo contendere to a felony, (c) intentional breach of his non-compete obligations, (d) an intentional breach of the non-disclosure and non-solicitation agreement; or (e) a unanimous good faith finding by the Board of Directors or the chief executive officer that Mr. Cohen has engaged in fraud, dishonesty, gross negligence. "Good Reason" as used Mr. Cohen's employment agreement means (a) the assignment, without Mr. Cohen's consent, to Mr. Cohen of duties that result in a substantial diminution of the duties that he assumed; (b) the assignment, without Mr. Cohen's consent, of a title that is subordinate to the title Chief Legal and Intellectual Property Officer; (c) a reduction in Mr. Cohen's base salary; (d) the Company's requirement that Mr. Cohen regularly report to work in a location that is more than fifty miles from the Company's current New York office, without the Mr. Cohen's consent; (e) a material breach by the Company of the agreement during its term. Mr. Cohen's employment agreement also includes a covenant not to compete with the Company or solicit any material commercial relationships of the Company for a period of two years after Mr. Cohen is actually no longer employed by the Company.

### **Alexander R. Berger**

On July 19, 2012, we assumed all of the duties, obligations and liabilities of Innovate/Protect under the employment agreement with Alexander R. Berger. Mr. Berger's employment agreement had an initial term of eighteen months, with an option to either renegotiate the terms of the employment agreement prior to the expiration of the initial term. Under the terms of his agreement, Mr. Berger was entitled to receive a base salary of \$150,000 and, upon the subsequent filing of a Securities and Exchange Commission Registration Statement, and consummation of financing of at least \$7,000,000, his base salary was increased to \$250,000. His agreement required us to provide him with 30 days' notice of termination other than for cause and for him to provide us with 30 days' notice of resignation.

On February 13, 2013, we entered into a new employment agreement with Mr. Berger. Mr. Berger's prior employment agreement with us expired by its terms on February 9, 2013. Mr. Berger's new employment agreement had a term of three years. Under the terms of his employment agreement, Mr. Berger received a base salary of \$385,000 effective January 1, 2013 until December 31, 2013. From January 1, 2014 until his resignation, Mr. Berger received a base salary of \$400,000. In addition, on February 1, 2013, we entered into an indemnification agreement with Mr. Berger. Mr. Berger's employment agreement also included a covenant not to compete with the Company or solicit any material commercial relationships of the Company for a period of two years after Mr. Berger is actually no longer employed by the Company.

On December 19, 2014, Mr. Berger resigned from his positions as Chief Operating Officer, Secretary and a member of the Board of Directors of the Company. In connection with Mr. Berger's resignation from his positions at the Company, he has agreed to transition to the role of an independent consultant pursuant to a consulting agreement with the Company. The consulting agreement terminates and supersedes the employment agreement between Mr. Berger and the Company, with the exception of certain noncompetition, non-disclosure and non-solicitation provisions that are to continue through the term of the consulting agreement.

As a condition of entering into the consulting agreement, Mr. Berger and the Company executed a mutual general release of claims that either party has or in the future may have against the other. Pursuant to the consulting agreement, Mr. Berger received a monthly retainer at a rate of \$10,000 per month; in addition, all restricted stock units granted by the Company to Mr. Berger continued to vest in accordance with their terms until Mr. Berger ceased providing services to the Company, and all stock options outstanding, whether vested or unvested, were forfeited for no consideration.



The consulting agreement with Mr. Berger was terminated on March 13, 2015 and his then unvested restricted stock units were forfeited. Pursuant to the consulting agreement Mr. Berger received fees of \$25,000.

### Outstanding Equity Awards at 2014 Fiscal Year End

The following table sets forth information regarding grants of stock options and unvested stock awards outstanding on the last day of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014, to each of our NEOs.

Name	Options Awards				Stock Awards	
	Number of securities underlying unexercised options (#) exercisable	Number of securities underlying unexercised options (#) un-exercisable	Option exercise price (\$)	Option expiration date	Number of shares or units that have not vested (#)	Market value of shares or units that have not vested (\$)(*)
Andrew D. Perlman	90,000	—	5.50	March 17, 2016	—	—
Andrew D. Perlman	90,000	—	5.50	January 31, 2017	—	—
Andrew D. Perlman <sup>(1)</sup>	—	—	—	—	295,313	162,422
Andrew D. Perlman <sup>(2)</sup>	1,062,500	212,500	3.72	July 26, 2022	—	—
Andrew D. Perlman <sup>(2)</sup>	328,167	—	1.65	March 13, 2018	—	—
Andrew D. Perlman <sup>(2)</sup>	416,667	208,333	3.18	February 11, 2023	—	—
Andrew D. Perlman <sup>(2)</sup>	—	—	—	—	58,333	32,083
Andrew Kennedy Lang <sup>(2)</sup>	208,333	41,667	3.72	July 26, 2022	—	—
Andrew Kennedy Lang <sup>(2)</sup>	55,555	27,778	3.18	February 11, 2023	—	—
Andrew Kennedy Lang <sup>(1)</sup>	—	—	—	—	54,688	30,078
Andrew Kennedy Lang <sup>(2)</sup>	—	—	—	—	10,417	5,729
Anastasia Nyrkovskaya <sup>(2)</sup>	175,000	125,000	2.85	May 6, 2023	—	—
Anastasia Nyrkovskaya <sup>(2)</sup>	100,000	200,000	4.10	February 20, 2024	—	—
David L. Cohen, Esq. <sup>(2)</sup>	66,667	33,333	3.72	July 26, 2022	—	—
David L. Cohen, Esq. <sup>(2)</sup>	351,666	125,000	3.44	August 8, 2022	—	—
David L. Cohen, Esq. <sup>(2)</sup>	133,333	66,667	3.18	February 11, 2023	—	—
David L. Cohen, Esq. <sup>(2)</sup>	33,333	66,667	4.10	February 20, 2024	—	—
David L. Cohen, Esq. <sup>(1)</sup>	—	—	—	—	21,875	12,031
David L. Cohen, Esq. <sup>(2)</sup>	—	—	—	—	16,667	9,167
Alexander R. Berger <sup>(1)(3)</sup>	—	—	—	—	295,313	162,422
Alexander R. Berger <sup>(2)(3)</sup>	—	—	—	—	58,333	32,083

(\*) The market value is determined by multiplying the number of shares by \$0.55, the closing price of our common stock on NASDAQ on December 31, 2014, the last day of our fiscal year.

(1) Vests in equal quarterly increments (6.25% per quarter), subject to the participant's continuous service on the relevant vesting date.

(2) Vests in twelve equal quarterly increments (8.33% per quarter) over the three years, subject to the participant's continuous service on the relevant vesting date.

(3) The consulting agreement with Mr. Berger was terminated on March 13, 2015. As such, these RSUs were forfeited for no consideration.

#### Option Exercises and Stock Vested in 2014

The following table shows information regarding exercises of options to purchase our common stock and vesting of stock awards held by each of our NEOs during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014.

Name (a)	Option Awards		Stock Awards (2)	
	Number of Shares Acquired on Exercise (#) (b)	Value Realized on Exercise (\$) (1) (c)	Number of Shares Acquired on Vesting (#) (d)	Value Realized on Vesting (\$) (2) (e)
Andrew D. Perlman	76,000	253,080	—	—
Andrew D. Perlman	2,167	6,046	—	—
Andrew D. Perlman	121,833	321,639	—	—
Andrew D. Perlman	—	—	58,333	122,354
Andrew D. Perlman	—	—	168,750	353,953
Andrew Kennedy Lang	—	—	31,250	65,547
Andrew Kennedy Lang	—	—	10,417	21,849
David L. Cohen, Esq.	100,000	57,000	—	—
David L. Cohen, Esq.	—	—	12,500	26,219
David L. Cohen, Esq.	—	—	16,667	34,958
Alexander R. Berger	—	—	58,333	122,354
Alexander R. Berger	—	—	168,750	353,953
Anastasia Nyrkovskaya	—	—	—	—

(1) Amounts shown in this column do not necessarily represent actual value realized from the sale of the shares acquired upon exercise of options because in many cases the shares are not sold on exercise but continue to be held by the executive officer exercising the option. The amounts shown represent the difference between the option exercise price and the market price on the date of exercise, which is the amount that would have been realized if the shares had been sold immediately upon exercise.

(2) Shares are related to the vesting of RSU awards which vested evenly on each of March 31, 2014, June 30, 2014, September 30, 2014 and December 31, 2014 and the value realized is calculated by multiplying the number of vested shares by the closing price of our common stock on NASDAQ on the applicable vesting date.

#### Pension Benefits

We do not have any qualified or non-qualified defined benefit plans.

#### Nonqualified Deferred Compensation

We do not have any nonqualified defined contribution plans or other deferred compensation plans.

#### Potential Payments upon Termination or Change-In-Control

The following summarizes the potential payments to each NEO as of December 31, 2014 upon termination or change-in-control. The discussion assumes that such event occurred on December 31, 2014, the last business day of our fiscal year, at which time the closing price of our common stock as listed on NASDAQ was \$0.55 per share. For a further discussion of these provisions see the “Narrative Disclosure to Summary Compensation Table and Grants of Plan-Based Awards Table” above.

**Andrew D. Perlman**

In the event Mr. Perlman's employment was terminated for (i) Good Reason by Mr. Perlman, or (ii) by the Company without Cause on December 31, 2014, Mr. Perlman would have received severance in the amount of one year of base salary and COBRA payments totaling approximately \$40,775. In addition, in the event a change-in-control had occurred on December 31, 2014, Mr. Perlman would have received severance in the amount of one year of base salary, or \$400,000, and 75% acceleration of certain unvested RSUs amounting to \$145,879 as of December 31, 2014. In addition, upon change-in-control, Mr. Perlman would have been entitled to receive 75% acceleration of certain unvested options which were all out-of-the-money as of December 31, 2014.

**Andrew Kennedy Lang**

In the event Mr. Lang's employment agreement was terminated by (i) us without Cause, or (ii) by Mr. Lang with Good Reason on December 31, 2014, Mr. Lang would have received severance in the amount of one year of base salary, or \$385,000, and COBRA payments totaling approximately \$40,775. Upon change-in-control, Mr. Lang would have been entitled to receive 75% acceleration of certain unvested RSUs amounting to \$26,856 as of December 31, 2014. In addition, upon change-in-control, Mr. Lang would have been entitled to receive 75% acceleration of certain unvested options which were all out-of-the-money as of December 31, 2014.

**Anastasia Nyrkovskaya**

In the event Ms. Nyrkovskaya's employment was terminated for (i) Good Reason by Ms. Nyrkovskaya, or (ii) by the Company without Cause on December 31, 2014, Ms. Nyrkovskaya would have received severance in the amount of one year of base salary, or \$315,000, and COBRA payments totaling approximately \$40,775. In addition, upon change-in-control, Ms. Nyrkovskaya would have been entitled to receive 75% acceleration of certain unvested options which were all out-of-the-money as of December 31, 2014.

**David L. Cohen, Esq.**

In the event Mr. Cohen's employment was terminated for (i) Good Reason by Mr. Cohen, or (ii) by the Company without Cause on December 31, 2014, Mr. Cohen would have received severance in the amount of one year of base salary, or \$315,000, and COBRA payments totaling approximately \$40,775. In addition, upon change-in-control, Mr. Cohen would have been entitled to receive 75% acceleration of certain unvested RSUs amounting to \$15,898 as of December 31, 2014 and would have been entitled to receive 75% acceleration of certain unvested options which were all out-of-the-money as of December 31, 2014.

**Alexander R. Berger**

Mr. Berger resigned from the Company on December 19, 2014 and did not receive any payments from the Company in connection with his termination of employment other than the consulting fees in 2015 discussed above. Mr. Berger and the Company also executed a mutual general release of claims that either party has or in the future may have against the other during the period of his employment.

**Director Compensation**

The following table sets forth the compensation of persons who served as non-employee members of our Board of Directors during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014. Directors who are employed by us are not compensated for their service on our Board of Directors.

Name	Fees Earned or Paid in Cash (\$)	Stock Awards (\$) <sup>(1)</sup>	Option Awards (\$) <sup>(1)</sup>	All other compensation (\$)	Total (\$)
Ashley C. Keller <sup>(2)</sup>	35,000	—	255,131	—	290,131
Donald E. Stout <sup>(3)</sup>	35,000	—	255,131	—	290,131
Noel J. Spiegel <sup>(4)</sup>	35,000	—	255,131	—	290,131
John Engelman <sup>(5)</sup>	35,000	—	255,131	—	290,131
H. Van Sinclair <sup>(6)</sup>	35,000	—	255,131	—	290,131

(1) Amounts represent the aggregate grant date fair value in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718. See Notes 2(k) and 10 of the consolidated financial statements disclosed in the Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014, for the assumptions made in the valuation of the equity awards.

(2) As of December 31, 2014, Mr. Keller held 195,500 fully vested options.

(3) As of December 31, 2014, Mr. Stout held 56,250 RSUs and 366,178 options, of which 345,345 options were vested.

(4) As of December 31, 2014, Mr. Spiegel held 180,000 fully vested options.

(5) As of December 31, 2014, Mr. Engelman held 56,250 RSUs and 552,500 options of which 531,667 options were vested.

(6) As of December 31, 2014, Mr. Sinclair held 56,250 RSUs and 325,000 options of which 304,167 options were vested.

We reimburse each member of our Board of Directors for reasonable travel and other out-of-pocket expenses in connection with attending meetings of the Board of Directors.

On February 20, 2014, we granted to each of our non-employee directors 120,000 options at an exercise price of \$4.10 per share, which vested evenly over four quarters, beginning with the quarter ended March 31, 2014, and agreed to pay each director an annual cash retainer of \$35,000 payable quarterly in arrears.

For 2015, we continue to pay our non-employee directors a cash retainer of \$35,000 payable quarterly in arrears. On January 22, 2015, we granted to each of our non-employee directors 100,000 options at the exercise price of \$0.59 per share that vest evenly over four quarters, beginning with the quarter ended March 31, 2015.

#### Equity Compensation Plan Information

The following table provides certain aggregate information, as of December 31, 2014, with respect to all of our equity compensation plans then in effect:

Plan Category	(a) No. of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights	(b) Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants and rights (\$)	(c) No. of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a))
Total equity compensation plans approved by security holders <sup>(1),(2)</sup>	9,207,524	\$ 3.37	5,793,420
Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders <sup>(3)</sup>	41,178	\$ 0.99	—

(1) These plans consist of the 2012 Plan and the 2006 Plan. Under the 2012 Plan, a maximum of 15,600,000 shares of common stock may be awarded. The 2012 Plan was approved by the Company's stockholders on July 19, 2012, following the Merger, replacing Vringo's then existing 2006 Plan. The maximum number of available common shares under the 2012 Plan is made up of the 9,100,000 previously available common shares under the 2006 Plan and 6,500,000 newly available common shares.

(2) The numbers of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding equities are 8,229,357 and 978,167, respectively for the 2012 Plan and the 2006 Plan. The weighted-average exercise prices of outstanding options are \$3.49 and \$2.47, respectively for the 2012 Plan and the 2006 Plan.

(3) This plan consists of Innovate/Protect's 2011 Equity Incentive Plan assumed by the Company in connection with the merger, which provided for incentive stock options, nonqualified stock options, stock appreciation rights, restricted stocks, restricted stock units, stock bonus awards and performance compensation awards to be issued to directors, officers, managers, employees, consultants and advisors of Innovate/Protect and its affiliates, as defined in the plan. As of the merger, no further issuances can be made under this plan and any forfeitures cannot be reused.

## REPORT OF AUDIT COMMITTEE

The Audit Committee of the Board of Directors, which consists entirely of directors who meet the independence and experience requirements of the NASDAQ Capital Market, has furnished the following report:

The Audit Committee assists the Board in overseeing and monitoring the integrity of our financial reporting process, compliance with legal and regulatory requirements and the quality of internal and external audit processes. This committee's role and responsibilities are set forth in our charter adopted by the Board, which is available on our website at [www.vringoip.com](http://www.vringoip.com). This committee reviews and reassesses our charter annually and recommends any changes to the Board for approval. The Audit Committee is responsible for overseeing our overall financial reporting process, and for the appointment, compensation, retention, and oversight of the work of KPMG LLP. In fulfilling its responsibilities for the financial statements for fiscal year ended December 31, 2014, the Audit Committee took the following actions:

- Reviewed and discussed the audited financial statements for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014 with management and KPMG LLP, our independent registered public accounting firm;
- Discussed with KPMG LLP the matters required to be discussed in accordance with Auditing Standard No. 16- *Communications with Audit Committees*; and
- Received written disclosures and the letter from KPMG LLP regarding its independence as required by applicable requirements of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board regarding KPMG LLP communications with the Audit Committee and the Audit Committee further discussed with KPMG LLP their independence. The Audit Committee also considered the status of pending litigation, taxation matters and other areas of oversight relating to the financial reporting and audit process that the committee determined appropriate.

Based on the Audit Committee's review of the audited financial statements and discussions with management and KPMG LLP, the Audit Committee recommended to the Board that the audited financial statements be included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014 for filing with the SEC.

Members of the Vringo, Inc.  
Audit Committee (as of December 31, 2014)

Noel J. Spiegel  
H. Van Sinclair  
Donald E. Stout

## **SECTION 16(a) BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP REPORTING COMPLIANCE**

Section 16(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”), requires our directors, executive officers and beneficial owners of more than 10% of our common stock to file with the SEC initial reports of ownership and reports of changes in the ownership of our common stock and other equity securities. Such persons are required to furnish us copies of all Section 16(a) filings.

Based solely upon a review of the copies of the forms furnished to us, we believe that our officers, directors and beneficial owners of more than 10% of our common stock complied with all applicable filing requirements during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014.

## **CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED PERSON TRANSACTIONS**

### **Related Person Transactions Approval Policy**

All related party transactions must be approved by our audit committee or a majority of our independent directors who do not have an interest in the transaction and who will have access, at our expense, to our independent legal counsel.

### **Transactions with Related Persons**

There were no related party transactions to report during the year ended December 31, 2014.

### **Director Independence and Committee Qualifications**

Our Board of Directors has reviewed the materiality of any relationship that each of our directors has with Vringo, either directly or indirectly. Based upon this review, we believe that Messrs. Sinclair, Engelman, Stout, Keller and Spiegel qualify as independent directors in accordance with the standards set by NASDAQ, as well as Rule 10A-3 promulgated under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”). Accordingly, our Board of Directors is comprised of a majority of independent directors as required by NASDAQ rules. The Board has also determined that each member of the Compensation Committee, the Audit Committee and the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee meets the independence requirements applicable to each such committee member prescribed by NASDAQ and the SEC. The Board has further determined that Messrs. Spiegel and Sinclair are “audit committee financial experts” as defined in the rules of the SEC.

**PROPOSAL NO. 1: ELECTION OF DIRECTORS**

**(Notice Item 1)**

On **[DATE]** the Board of Directors nominated Andrew D. Perlman, John Engelman, Ashley C. Keller, H. Van Sinclair, Noel J. Spiegel and Donald E. Stout for election at the annual meeting. If they are elected, they will serve on our Board of Directors until the 2016 annual meeting of stockholders and until their respective successors have been elected and qualified.

Unless authority to vote for any of these nominees is withheld, the shares represented by the enclosed proxy will be voted **FOR** the election as directors of Andrew D. Perlman, John Engelman, Ashley C. Keller, H. Van Sinclair, Noel J. Spiegel and Donald E. Stout. In the event that either nominee becomes unable or unwilling to serve, the shares represented by the enclosed proxy will be voted for the election of such other person as the Board of Directors may recommend in that nominee's place. We have no reason to believe that any nominee will be unable or unwilling to serve as a director.

**Vote Required and Board of Directors' Recommendation**

A plurality of the shares voted for each nominee at the annual meeting is required to elect each nominee as a director.

**THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS THE ELECTION OF ANDREW D. PERLMAN, JOHN ENGELMAN, ASHLEY C. KELLER, H. VAN SINCLAIR, NOEL J. SPIEGEL AND DONALD E. STOUT AS DIRECTORS, AND PROXIES SOLICITED BY THE BOARD WILL BE VOTED IN FAVOR THEREOF UNLESS A STOCKHOLDER HAS INDICATED OTHERWISE ON THE PROXY.**

## PROPOSAL NO. 2: REVERSE STOCK SPLIT

### (Notice Item 2)

#### General

At our 2015 annual meeting of stockholders, holders of our common stock are being asked to approve the proposal that our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation be amended to effect a reverse stock split of the issued and outstanding shares of common stock (such split to combine a number of outstanding shares of our common stock between two (2) and ten (10), such number consisting of only whole shares, into one (1) share of common stock). The full text of the proposed amendment to our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation is attached to this proxy statement as Appendix A. If approved by the stockholders, the reverse stock split would become effective at a time, and at a ratio, to be designated by the Board of Directors. The Board of Directors may effect only one reverse stock split as a result of this authorization. The Board's decision as to whether and when to effect the reverse stock split will be based on a number of factors, including market conditions, existing and expected trading prices for our common stock and the continued listing requirements of the NASDAQ Capital Market. Even if the stockholders approve the reverse stock split, the Company reserves the right not to effect the reverse stock split if the Board of Directors does not deem it to be in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to effect the reverse stock split. The reverse stock split, if authorized pursuant to this resolution and if deemed by the Board of Directors to be in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders, will be effected, if at all, at a time that is not later than December 14, 2015.

The proposed amendment to our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation to effect the reverse stock split, as more fully described below, will effect the reverse stock split but will not change the number of authorized shares of common stock or preferred stock, or the par value of common stock or preferred stock. As of the date of this proxy statement, we do not have any current arrangements or understandings relating to the issuance of any additional shares of common stock following the reverse stock split, other than as described in Proposal 3 to this proxy statement.

#### Purpose

On \_\_\_\_\_, 2015, the Board of Directors approved the proposal authorizing the reverse stock split for the following reasons:

- the Board of Directors believes that effecting the reverse stock split may be an effective means of regaining compliance with the bid price requirement for continued listing of our common stock on The NASDAQ Capital Market; and
- the Board of Directors believes that a higher stock price may help generate investor interest in the Company, including interest among institutional investors.

If the reverse stock split successfully increases the per share price of our common stock and facilitates the continued listing of our common stock on The NASDAQ Capital Market, as to which no assurance can be given, the Board of Directors believes this increase may facilitate future financings, enhance our ability to transact with our securities and increase the appetite of third parties with whom we may be negotiating for purposes of evaluating potential strategic alternatives.

#### NASDAQ Requirements for Continued Listing

Our common stock is listed on The NASDAQ Capital Market under the symbol "VRNG." One of the requirements for continued listing on The NASDAQ Capital Market is maintenance of a minimum closing bid price of \$1.00. On November 10, 2014, the closing market price per share of our common stock was \$0.98, as reported by the NASDAQ Capital Market, and the price has been below \$1.00 for more than 30 consecutive trading days.



On December 18, 2014, we received a letter from NASDAQ indicating that for the last 30 consecutive business days, the bid price of our common shares closed below the minimum \$1.00 per share requirement pursuant to NASDAQ Listing Rule 5550(a)(2) for continued listing on The NASDAQ Capital Market. In accordance with NASDAQ Listing Rule 5810(c)(3)(A), we had an initial grace period of 180 calendar days, or until June 16, 2015, to regain compliance with the minimum bid price requirement. On June 17, 2015, we received a letter from NASDAQ indicating that we have been granted an additional 180-day period, or until December 14, 2015, to regain compliance with the minimum \$1.00 bid price per share requirement for continued listing on The NASDAQ Capital Market, as set forth in NASDAQ Listing Rule 5810(c)(3)(A)(ii).

Our plan to regain compliance with the NASDAQ Listing Rules, which includes effecting the reverse stock split of our common stock for which we are seeking stockholder approval in this Proposal 2. We cannot assure that our share price will comply with the requirements for continued listing of our common shares on the NASDAQ Capital Market in the future or that we will comply with the other continued listing requirements. If our common shares lose their status on the NASDAQ Capital Market, our common shares would likely trade in the over-the-counter market.

If our shares were to trade on the over-the-counter market, selling our common shares could be more difficult because smaller quantities of shares would likely be bought and sold, and transactions could be delayed. In addition, in the event our common stock is delisted, broker-dealers have certain regulatory burdens imposed upon them, which may discourage broker-dealers from effecting transactions in our common stock, further limiting the liquidity of our common stock. These factors could result in lower prices and larger spreads in the bid and ask prices for our common stock.

Such delisting from The NASDAQ Capital Market and continued or further declines in our share price could also greatly impair our ability to raise additional necessary capital through equity or debt financing, and could significantly increase the ownership dilution to stockholders caused by our issuing equity in financing or other transactions.

In light of the factors mentioned above, our Board of Directors approved the reverse stock split as a potential means of increasing the share price of our common stock to above \$1.00 per share and of maintaining the share price of our common stock above \$1.00 per share in compliance with NASDAQ requirements.

#### **Potential Increased Investor Interest**

In approving the proposal authorizing the reverse stock split, the Board of Directors considered that the Company's common stock may not appeal to brokerage firms that are reluctant to recommend lower priced securities to their clients. Investors may also be dissuaded from purchasing lower priced stocks because the brokerage commissions, as a percentage of the total transaction, tend to be higher for such stocks. Moreover, the analysts at many brokerage firms do not monitor the trading activity or otherwise provide coverage of lower priced stocks.

There are risks associated with the reverse stock split, including that the reverse stock split may not result in a sustained increase in the per share price of our common stock.

We cannot predict whether the reverse stock split will increase the market price for our common stock on a sustained basis. The history of similar stock split combinations for companies in like circumstances is varied. There is no assurance that:

- the market price per share of our common stock after the reverse stock split will rise in proportion to the reduction in the number of shares of our common stock outstanding before the reverse stock split;
- the reverse stock split will result in a per share price that will attract brokers and investors who do not trade in lower priced stocks;
- our ability to conduct future financings will be enhanced; and

- the market price per share will either exceed or remain in excess of the \$1.00 minimum bid price as required by NASDAQ, or that we will otherwise meet the requirements of NASDAQ for continued inclusion for trading on the NASDAQ Capital Market.

The market price of our common stock will also be based on our performance and other factors, some of which are unrelated to the number of shares outstanding. If the reverse stock split is effected and the market price of our common stock declines, the percentage decline as an absolute number and as a percentage of our overall market capitalization may be greater than would occur in the absence of a reverse stock split. Furthermore, the liquidity of our common stock could be adversely affected by the reduced number of shares that would be outstanding after the reverse stock split.

### **Principal Effects of the Reverse Stock Split**

If the stockholders approve the proposal to authorize the Board of Directors to implement the reverse stock split and the Board of Directors implements the reverse stock split, we will amend the existing provision of Article Fourth of our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation by adding the following paragraphs:

“(3) Reverse Stock Split. Effective at 5:00 p.m. (Eastern time), on the date of filing of this Certificate of Amendment of the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Corporation with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware (the “**Effective Time**”), the shares of the Corporation’s Common Stock issued and outstanding prior to the Effective Time and the shares of Common Stock issued and held in treasury of the Corporation immediately prior to the Effective Time shall automatically be reclassified into a smaller number of shares such that each \_\_\_\_ (\_\_\_) shares of the Corporation’s issued and outstanding Common Stock immediately prior to the Effective Time are reclassified into one validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable share of Common Stock, without any further action by the Corporation or the holder thereof. No fractional shares of Corporation common stock will be issued as a result of the reverse stock split. Instead, stockholders of record who otherwise would be entitled to receive fractional shares, will be entitled to rounding up of their fractional share to the nearest whole share.

(4) Each stock certificate that, immediately prior to the Effective Time, represented shares of Common Stock that were issued and outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time shall, from and after the Effective Time, automatically and without the necessity of presenting the same for exchange, represent that the number of whole shares of Common Stock after the Effective Time into which the shares of Common Stock formerly represented by such certificate shall have been reclassified (as well as the right to receive a whole share in lieu of a fractional share of Common Stock), provided, however, that each person of record holding a certificate that represented shares of Common Stock that were issued and outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time shall receive, upon surrender of such certificate, a new certificate evidencing and representing the number of whole shares of Common Stock after the Effective Time into which the shares of Common Stock formerly represented by such certificate shall have been reclassified (including the right to receive a whole share in lieu of a fractional share of Common Stock).”

The reverse stock split will be effected simultaneously for all issued and outstanding shares of common stock and the exchange ratio will be the same for all issued and outstanding shares of common stock. The reverse stock split will affect all of our stockholders uniformly and will not affect any stockholder’s percentage ownership interests in the Company, except to the extent that the reverse stock split results in any of our stockholders owning a fractional share that would be rounded up to the next highest whole share. Common stock issued pursuant to the reverse stock split will remain fully paid and nonassessable. The reverse stock split will not affect the Company continuing to be subject to the periodic reporting requirements of the Exchange Act. Following the reverse stock split, our common stock will continue to be listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market, under the symbol “VRGN,” although it would receive a new CUSIP number.

By approving this amendment, stockholders will approve the combination of any whole number of shares of common stock between and including two (2) and ten (10) into one (1) share. The certificate of amendment to be filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware will include only that number determined by the Board of Directors to be in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders. In accordance with these resolutions, the Board of Directors will not implement any amendment providing for a different split ratio.

## **Procedure for Effecting Reverse Stock Split and Exchange of Stock Certificates**

If the certificate of amendment is approved by the Company's stockholders, and if at such time the Board of Directors still believes that a reverse stock split is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders, the Board of Directors will determine the ratio of the reverse stock split to be implemented. The Company will file the certificate of amendment with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware at such time as the Board of Directors has determined the appropriate effective time for the reverse stock split. The Board of Directors may delay effecting the reverse stock split, if at all, until a time that is not later than December 14, 2015 without re-soliciting stockholder approval. The reverse stock split will become effective on the date of filing of the certificate of amendment with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware. Beginning on the effective date of the split, each certificate representing pre-split shares will be deemed for all corporate purposes to evidence ownership of post-split shares.

### **Book-Entry Shares**

If the reverse stock split is effected, stockholders who hold uncertificated shares (i.e., shares held in book-entry form and not represented by a physical stock certificate), either as direct or beneficial owners, will have their holdings electronically adjusted automatically by our transfer agent (and, for beneficial owners, by their brokers or banks that hold in "street name" for their benefit, as the case may be) to give effect to the reverse stock split. Stockholders who hold uncertificated shares as direct owners will be sent a statement of holding from our transfer agent that indicates the number of post-reverse stock split shares of our common stock owned in book-entry form.

### **Certificated Shares**

As soon as practicable after the effective date of the split, stockholders will be notified that the reverse stock split has been effected. We expect that our transfer agent will act as exchange agent for purposes of implementing the exchange of stock certificates. Holders of pre-split shares will be asked to surrender to the exchange agent certificates representing pre-split shares in exchange for certificates representing post-split shares in accordance with the procedures to be set forth in a letter of transmittal to be sent by us or our exchange agent. No new certificates will be issued to a stockholder until such stockholder has surrendered such stockholder's outstanding certificate(s) together with the properly completed and executed letter of transmittal to the exchange agent. Any pre-split shares submitted for transfer, whether pursuant to a sale or other disposition, or otherwise, will automatically be exchanged for post-split shares. **STOCKHOLDERS SHOULD NOT DESTROY ANY STOCK CERTIFICATE(S) AND SHOULD NOT SUBMIT ANY CERTIFICATE(S) UNTIL REQUESTED TO DO SO.**

### **Fractional Shares**

No fractional shares will be issued in connection with the reverse stock split. Stockholders of record on the effective date of the split who otherwise would be entitled to receive fractional shares because they hold a number of pre-split shares not evenly divisible by the number of pre-split shares for which each post-split share is to be exchanged, will in lieu of a fractional share, be entitled upon surrender to the exchange agent of certificates representing such pre-split shares, to receive one whole share of common stock by virtue of rounding up such fractional share to the next highest whole share. The ownership of such a whole share will give the holder thereof the same voting, dividend, and other rights as are held by other holders of common stock.

Stockholders should be aware that receipt of a whole share of common stock resulting from the rounding up of a fractional share interest to the next highest whole share may have tax consequences. Each holder should seek advice based on the holder's particular circumstances from an independent tax advisor.

## **Accounting Matters**

The reverse stock split will not affect the common stock capital account on our balance sheet. However, because the par value of our common stock will remain unchanged on the effective date of the split, the components that make up the common stock capital account will change by offsetting amounts. Depending on the size of the reverse stock split the board of directors decides to implement, the stated capital component will be reduced to an amount between \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ of its present amount, and the additional paid-in capital component will be increased with the amount by which the stated capital is reduced. The per share net income or loss and net book value of our common stock will be increased because there will be fewer shares of common stock outstanding. Prior periods' per share amounts will be restated to reflect the reverse stock split.

## **Effect on Par Value**

The proposed amendment to our Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation will not affect the par value of our common stock, which will remain at \$0.01 per share.

## **No Going Private Transaction**

Notwithstanding the decrease in the number of outstanding shares following the proposed reverse stock split, our Board of Directors does not intend for this transaction to be the first step in a "going private transaction" within the meaning of Rule 13e-3 of the Exchange Act.

## **Potential Anti-Takeover Effect**

Although the increased proportion of unissued authorized shares to issued shares could, under certain circumstances, have an anti-takeover effect (for example, by permitting issuances that would dilute the stock ownership of a person seeking to effect a change in the composition of the Board of Directors or contemplating a tender offer or other transaction for the combination of the Company with another company), the reverse stock split proposal is not being proposed in response to any effort of which we are aware to accumulate shares of our common stock or obtain control of the Company, nor is it part of a plan by management to recommend a series of similar amendments to the Board of Directors and stockholders. Other than the reverse stock split proposal, the Board of Directors does not currently contemplate recommending the adoption of any other actions that could be construed to affect the ability of third parties to take over or change control of the Company.

## **No Dissenters' Rights**

Under the Delaware General Corporation Law, the Company's stockholders are not entitled to dissenters' rights with respect to the reverse stock split, and the Company will not independently provide stockholders with any such right.

## **Material United States Federal Income Tax Consequences of the Reverse Stock Split**

The following is not intended as tax or legal advice. Each holder should seek advice based on his, her or its particular circumstances from an independent tax advisor.

The following discussion describes the anticipated material United States federal income tax consequences to "U.S. holders" (as defined below) of our capital stock relating to the reverse stock split. This discussion is based upon the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"), Treasury Regulations promulgated thereunder, judicial authorities, published positions of the Internal Revenue Service ("IRS"), and other applicable authorities, all as currently in effect and all of which are subject to change or differing interpretations (possibly with retroactive effect). We have not obtained a ruling from the IRS or an opinion of legal or tax counsel with respect to the tax consequences of the reverse stock split and there can be no assurance the IRS will not challenge the statements set forth below or that a court would not sustain any such challenge. The following discussion is for information purposes only and is not intended as tax or legal advice.

For purposes of this discussion, the term “U.S. holder” means a beneficial owner of our capital stock that is for United States federal income tax purposes:

- (i) an individual citizen or resident of the United States;
- (ii) a corporation (or other entity treated as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes) organized under the laws of the United States, any state or the District of Columbia;
- (iii) an estate with income subject to United States federal income tax regardless of its source; or
- (iv) a trust that (a) is subject to primary supervision by a United States court and for which United States persons control all substantial decisions or (b) has a valid election in effect under applicable Treasury Regulations to be treated as a United States person.

This discussion assumes that a U.S. holder holds our capital stock as a capital asset within the meaning of Code Section 1221. This discussion does not address all of the tax consequences that may be relevant to a particular stockholder or to stockholders that are subject to special treatment under United States federal income tax laws including, but not limited to, financial institutions, tax-exempt organizations, insurance companies, regulated investment companies, persons that are broker-dealers, traders in securities who elect the mark-to-market method of accounting for their securities, or stockholders holding their shares of our capital stock as part of a “straddle,” “hedge,” “conversion transaction” or other integrated transaction. In addition, this discussion does not address other United States federal taxes (such as gift or estate taxes or alternative minimum taxes), the tax consequences of the reverse stock split under state, local or foreign tax laws or certain tax reporting requirements that may be applicable with respect to the reverse stock split.

If a partnership (or other entity treated as a partnership for United States federal income tax purposes) is a stockholder, the tax treatment of a partner in the partnership or any equity owner of such other entity will generally depend upon the status of the person and the activities of the partnership or other entity treated as a partnership for United States federal income tax purposes.

### **Tax Consequences of the Reverse Stock Split Generally**

We believe that the reverse stock split should qualify as a “recapitalization” under Section 368(a)(1)(E) of the Code. Accordingly:

- A U.S. holder will not recognize any gain or loss as a result of the reverse stock split.
- A U.S. holder’s aggregate tax basis in his, her or its post-reverse stock split shares will be equal to the aggregate tax basis in the pre-reverse stock split shares exchanged therefor.
- A U.S. holder’s holding period for the post-reverse stock split shares will include the period during which such stockholder held the pre-reverse stock split shares surrendered in the reverse stock split.

Treasury Regulations promulgated under the Code provide detailed rules for allocating the tax basis and holding period of the shares of our common stock surrendered to the shares of our common stock received pursuant to the reverse stock split. Holders of shares of our common stock who acquired their shares on different dates and at different prices should consult their tax advisors regarding the allocation of the tax basis and holding period of such shares among their post-reverse stock split shares.

### **Interests of Directors and Executive Officers**

Our directors and executive officers have no substantial interests, directly or indirectly, in the matters set forth in this proposal except to the extent of their ownership of shares of our common stock.

### **Reservation of Right to Abandon Reverse Stock Split**

We reserve the right to not file the Certificate of Amendment and to abandon any reverse stock split without further action by our stockholders at any time before the effectiveness of the filing with the Secretary of the State of Delaware of the Certificate of Amendment, even if the authority to effect these amendments is approved by our stockholders at the annual meeting. By voting in favor of a reverse stock split, you are expressly also authorizing the Board of Directors to delay, not proceed with, and abandon, these proposed amendments if it should so decide, in its sole discretion, that such action is in the best interests of our stockholders.

### **Vote Required and Board of Directors' Recommendation**

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of our common stock entitled to vote on the matter either in person or by proxy at the annual meeting is required to approve the amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to effect a reverse stock split of our common stock.

**THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS A VOTE TO AUTHORIZE THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS IN ITS DISCRETION TO AMEND THE RESTATED CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION TO EFFECT A REVERSE STOCK SPLIT OF THE ISSUED AND OUTSTANDING SHARES OF OUR COMMON STOCK (SUCH SPLIT TO COMBINE A NUMBER OF OUTSTANDING SHARES OF OUR COMMON STOCK BETWEEN TWO (2) AND TEN (10), SUCH NUMBER CONSISTING OF ONLY WHOLE SHARES, INTO ONE (1) SHARE OF OUR COMMON STOCK), AND PROXIES SOLICITED BY THE BOARD WILL BE VOTED IN FAVOR OF THE AMENDMENT UNLESS A STOCKHOLDER INDICATES OTHERWISE ON THE PROXY.**

**PROPOSAL 3: TO AUTHORIZE, FOR PURPOSES OF COMPLYING WITH NASDAQ LISTING RULE 5635(d), THE ISSUANCE OF SHARES OF OUR COMMON STOCK UNDERLYING CONVERTIBLE NOTES AND WARRANTS ISSUED BY US PURSUANT TO THE TERMS OF THAT CERTAIN SECURITIES PURCHASE AGREEMENT, DATED MAY 4, 2015, BY AND AMONG VRINGO, INC. AND THE INVESTORS NAMED THEREIN, IN AN AMOUNT EQUAL TO OR IN EXCESS OF 20% OF OUR COMMON STOCK OUTSTANDING BEFORE THE ISSUANCE OF SUCH CONVERTIBLE NOTES AND WARRANTS.**

**(Notice Item 3)**

**Background and Description of Proposal**

*Financing Transaction*

On May 4, 2015, we entered into a securities purchase agreement (the “Purchase Agreement”) with certain institutional investors (the “Investors”) in a registered direct offering of \$12,500,000 of our Senior Secured Convertible Notes (collectively, “Notes”) and warrants (collectively, “Warrants”) to purchase up to 5,375,000 shares of our common stock in an offering (“Offering”) pursuant to a prospectus supplement to our effective shelf registration statement on Form S-3 (Registration No. 333-182823) (the “Financing Transaction”).

On May 4, 2015, we issued Notes under an indenture, between us and Computershare Trust Company, N.A., as trustee (the “Base Indenture”), as supplemented by a first supplemental indenture thereto, relating to the Notes (the “First Supplemental Indenture” and, the Base Indenture as supplemented by the First Supplemental Indenture, the “First Indenture”). The terms of the Notes include those provided in the First Indenture and those made part of the First Indenture by reference to the Trust Indenture Act.

**Securities Purchase Agreement**

The Notes and Warrants issued on May 4, 2015 (the “Closing”), pursuant to the terms of the Purchase Agreement. The Purchase Agreement provides for the sale of the Notes and the Warrants at the Closing for gross proceeds of \$12,500,000.

The Purchase Agreement obligates us to indemnify the Investors and various related parties for certain losses including those resulting from (i) any misrepresentation or breach of any representation or warranty made by us, (ii) any breach of any obligation of ours, and (iii) certain claims by third parties.

The Purchase Agreement contains representations and warranties of our company and the Investors which are typical for transactions of this type. In addition, it contains customary covenants on our part that are typical for transactions of this type, as well as the following additional covenants: (i) until the 60<sup>th</sup> day after the Closing Date (the “Applicable Date”), we agreed not to file any registration statement, other than a registration statement on Form S-8, post-effective amendments to registration statements that are effective solely to update the information contain therein, and a universal shelf registration statement on Form S-3 filed with the SEC not less than 30 days after the Closing Date, (ii) we agreed not to conduct any other securities offerings until after the Applicable Date, except for certain excluded securities, and while the Notes are outstanding, we agreed not to enter into any variable rate transactions; (iii) we agreed to offer to the investors, as long as the Notes remain outstanding, the opportunity to participate in any subsequent securities offerings by our company; (iv) we agreed to hold a stockholder meeting not later than December 1, 2015 at which we will solicit the stockholders affirmative vote for approval of resolutions providing for our issuance of all the securities described in the transaction documents in accordance with the applicable law and rules and regulations of The NASDAQ Stock Market, for which this Proposal No. 3 refers to, and an increase in the number of shares of common stock that we are authorized to issue to 250,000,000, for which Proposal No. 4 is referred to.

**Notes and Indentures**

The Notes will not be issued with an original issue discount and are not subject to defeasance. The Notes will be issued in certificated form and not as global securities.

### ***Ranking***

The Notes will be the senior secured obligations of our company and not the obligations of our subsidiaries. The Notes will be secured by a first priority perfected security interest in certain of our company's assets, including, without limitation, the Subsidiary Notes and the security interests securing the Subsidiary Notes, as evidenced by the Security Agreement and related security documents.

### ***Maturity Date***

Unless earlier converted or redeemed, the Notes will mature twenty-one months following their issuance date, or Maturity Date, subject to the right of the investors to extend the date (i) if an event of default under the Notes has occurred and is continuing or any event shall have occurred and be continuing that with the passage of time and the failure to cure would result in an event of default under the Notes and (ii) for a period of 20 business days after the consummation of a fundamental transaction if certain events occur.

### ***Interest***

Interest on the Notes will accrue at 8% per annum on the principal amount of the Notes. Interest on the Notes is payable quarterly in shares of common stock or cash, at our option. Interest on the Notes is computed on the basis of a 360-day year and twelve 30-day months and is payable in arrears quarterly and is compounded quarterly. The interest rate will increase to 16.5% per annum upon the occurrence of and during the continuance of any event of default pursuant to the Notes.

Interest on the Notes is payable in arrears on each Installment Date (as defined below). If a holder elects to convert or redeem all or any portion of a Note prior to the Maturity Date, all accrued and unpaid interest on the amount being converted or redeemed will also be payable. If we elects to redeem all or any portion of a Note prior to the Maturity Date, all accrued and unpaid interest on the amount being redeemed will also be payable.

### ***Late Charges***

We are required to pay a late charge of 16.5% on any amount of principal or other amounts due which are not paid when due. Late charges are payable in arrears on each Installment Date. If a holder elects to convert or redeem all or any portion of a Note prior to the Maturity Date, all accrued and unpaid late charges on the amount being converted or redeemed will also be payable. If we elect to redeem all or any portion of a Note prior to the Maturity Date, all accrued and unpaid late charges on the amount being redeemed will also be payable.

### ***Conversion***

All amounts due under the Notes are convertible at any time, in whole or in part, at the option of the holders into shares of our common stock at a conversion price, or Fixed Conversion Price, which is subject to adjustment as described below. If a holder elects to convert all or any portion of a Note prior to the Maturity Date, all accrued and unpaid interest and accrued and unpaid late charges on the principal amount being converted will also be converted at the Fixed Conversion Price.

The Notes are initially convertible into shares of our common stock at the initial Fixed Conversion Price of \$1.00 per share. The Fixed Conversion Price is subject to adjustment for stock splits, combinations or similar events. If we sell or issue any securities with "floating" conversion prices based on the market price of our common stock, a holder of a Note will have the right thereafter to substitute the "floating" conversion price for the Fixed Conversion Price upon conversion of all or part of the Note.

If we fail to timely deliver common stock upon conversion of the Notes, we have agreed to pay certain liquidated damages to the converting holder.



### ***Payment of Principal and Interest***

We have agreed to make amortization payments with respect to the principal amount of each Note on the first trading day of each calendar month following the date the Notes are issued until the Maturity Date (collectively, the “Installment Dates”).

The amortizing portion of the principal of each Note, or Amortization Amount, will equal (i) for all Installment Dates other than the Maturity Date, the lesser of (x) the holder’s pro-rata share of \$595,238.10 and (y) the principal amount then outstanding under the Note, and (ii) on the Maturity Date, the principal amount then outstanding under the Note.

We may pay the Amortization Amount, all accrued and unpaid interest and accrued and unpaid late charges, or collectively the Installment Amount, in cash or shares of our common stock, at our election, subject to the satisfaction of the Equity Conditions (as defined below) as described below if we elect to pay in shares of common stock.

### ***Acceleration of Amortization Amounts***

On any day during the period commencing on an Installment Date, or Current Installment Date, and ending on the trading day prior to prior to the next Installment Date, the holder of a Note may, at its election, convert the Installment Amounts due on up to six future Installment Dates at the Company Conversion Price (as defined below) in effect on the Current Installment Date.

The “Company Conversion Price” on any given date, other than the first Installment Date, is equal to (1) 85% multiplied by (2) the quotient of (A) the sum of each of the three (3) lowest Closing Sale Prices of our common stock during the twenty (20) consecutive trading day period immediately preceding the applicable Installment Date (each such period, a “Company Conversion Measuring Period”) divided by (B) three (3).

### ***Event of Default***

If an event of default occurs, holders of the Notes may force us to redeem all or any portion of the Notes (including all accrued and unpaid interest thereon), in cash, at a price equal to the greater of (i) up to 120% during the period from the issuance date to the one year anniversary of the issuance date and 115% thereafter of the amount being redeemed, depending on the nature of the default, and (ii) the product of the following: (a) the Conversion Rate (as defined below) multiplied (b) up to 120% during the period from the issuance date to the one year anniversary of the issuance date and 115% thereafter of the amount being redeemed, depending on the nature of the default, multiplied by the highest closing sale price of our common stock during the period beginning on the date immediately before the event of default and ending on the date of redemption. The “Conversion Rate” is determined by dividing the amount being converted or redeemed by the Fixed Conversion Price. If we fail to make the cash redemption payment, the conversion price of the Notes shall be automatically adjusted with respect to each conversion effected thereafter to the lowest of (x) the lowest Company Conversion Price of the Installment Dates occurring during the period commencing on the date the holder delivers the applicable redemption Notice and ending on the date that the redemption notice is voided by the holder, (B) 85% of the lowest closing bid price of the common stock during the period commencing on the date the holder delivers the applicable redemption Notice and ending on the date that the redemption notice is voided by the holder and (C) 85% of the VWAP of the common stock for the 5 trading day period immediately preceding the Conversion Date of the applicable conversion.

### ***Fundamental Transactions***

The Notes prohibit us from entering into specified transactions involving a change of control, unless the successor entity assumes in writing all of our obligations under the Notes under a written agreement.

In the event of transactions involving a change of control, the holder of a Note will have the right to force us to redeem all or any portion of the Note it holds (including all accrued and unpaid thereon) at a price equal to 120% during the period from the issuance date to the one year anniversary of the issuance date and 115% thereafter of the amount being redeemed.

### ***Limitations on Conversion and Issuance***

A Note may not be converted and shares of common stock may not be issued under the Notes if, after giving effect to the conversion or issuance, the holder together with its affiliates would beneficially own in excess of 9.99% of our outstanding shares of common stock, or Note Blocker. The Note Blocker may be raised or lowered to any other percentage not in excess of 9.99% at the option of the selling security holder, except that any raise will only be effective upon 61-days' prior notice to us.

A Note may not be converted and shares of common stock may not be issued under the Note if the sum of the number of shares of common stock to be issued plus the number of shares of common stock issued under all of the Notes, the Warrants would exceed 18,718,207 shares of our common stock unless we have obtained stockholder approval pursuant to NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d) for the issuance of more than 18,718,207 shares of our common stock under the Notes, or the NASDAQ Blocker for which this Proposal No. 3 relates.

### **Warrants**

On the Closing Date, we issued Warrants that will entitle the holders of the Warrants to purchase, in aggregate, up to 5,375,000 shares of our common stock. The Warrants will not be exercisable until the six month and one day anniversary of the date of their issuance and will expire five years from the date of they become exercisable. The Warrants will initially be exercisable at an exercise price equal to \$1.00, subject to certain adjustments.

The Warrants may be exercised for cash, provided that, if there is no effective registration statement available registering the exercise of the Warrants, the Warrants may be exercised on a cashless basis.

The exercise price of the Warrants is subject to adjustment for stock splits, combinations or similar events. If we sell or issue any securities with "floating" conversion prices based on the market price of our common stock, a holder of a Warrant will have the right thereafter to substitute the "floating" conversion price for the exercise price upon exercise of all or part the Warrant.

Similar to the Notes, the Warrants require "buy-in" payments to be made by us for failure to deliver the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise.

### ***Proposal to Approve Financing Transaction***

NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d) requires us to obtain stockholder approval prior to the issuance of securities in connection with a transaction other than a public offering involving (i) the sale, issuance or potential issuance by us of our common stock (or securities convertible into or exercisable for our common stock) at a price less than the greater of book or market value which equals 20% or more of common stock or 20% or more of the voting power outstanding before the issuance; or (ii) the sale, issuance or potential issuance by us of our common stock (or securities convertible into or exercisable for our common stock) equal to 20% or more of the common stock or 20% or more of the voting power outstanding before the issuance for less than the greater of book or market value of the stock. In the case of the Financing Transaction, the 20% threshold is determined based on the shares of our common stock outstanding immediately preceding the Financing Transaction, which we signed on May 4, 2015. Because the issuance of shares of our common stock underlying the Notes and Warrants may trigger our obligation to obtain stockholder approval under NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d), the Note and Warrant holders agreed that the total shares of our common stock that may be issued under the Convertible Notes and Warrants is limited to 19.99% of the total number of shares of our common stock outstanding immediately preceding the Financing Transaction, until we obtain stockholder approval of the Financing Transaction or a waiver of NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d). We are permitted to issue up to 18,718,207 shares of our common stock to the Note and Warrant holders without obtaining stockholder approval under NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d). We are now seeking stockholder approval to issue more than 20% of our outstanding shares of common stock to the Note and Warrant holders under the terms of the Financing Transaction.

We have no control over whether the Note holders convert their Notes or whether the Warrant holders exercise their Warrants. Further, we cannot predict the market price of our common stock at any future date, and therefore cannot predict the applicable prices at which the Notes may be converted. In addition, the Notes and Warrants are subject to antidilution adjustment provisions which, if triggered, may require the issuance of additional shares upon conversion or exercise. For these reasons, we are unable to accurately forecast or predict with any certainty the total amount of shares that may be issued under the Notes or Warrants. Under certain circumstances, however, it is possible, that we may have to issue more than 20% of our outstanding shares of common stock to the Note and Warrant holders under the terms of the Financing Transaction. Therefore, we are seeking stockholder approval under this proposal to issue more than 20% of our outstanding shares of common stock, if necessary, to the Note and Warrant holders under the terms of the Financing Transaction.

Any transaction requiring approval by our stockholders under NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d) would likely result in a significant increase in the number of shares of our common stock outstanding, and, as a result, our current stockholders will own a smaller percentage of our outstanding shares of common stock. Future issuances of securities under the Financing Transaction, if any, may cause a significant reduction in the percentage interests of our current stockholders in the voting power, any liquidation value, our book and market value, and in any future earnings. Further, the issuance or resale of common stock issued to the Note and Warrant holders could cause the market price of our common stock to decline. In addition to the foregoing, the increase in the number of issued shares of common stock in connection with the Financing Transaction may have an incidental anti-takeover effect in that additional shares could be used to dilute the stock ownership of parties seeking to obtain control of Vringo. The increased number of issued shares could discourage the possibility of, or render more difficult, certain mergers, tender offers, proxy contests or other change of control or ownership transactions.

Under the NASDAQ Listing Rules, we are not permitted (without risk of delisting) to undertake a transaction that could result in a change in control of Vringo, as defined by NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(b), without seeking and obtaining separate stockholder approval. We are not required to obtain stockholder approval for the Financing Transaction under NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(b) because the Note and Warrant holders have agreed that, for so long as they hold any shares of our common stock, neither they nor any of their affiliates will acquire shares of our common stock which result in them and their affiliates, collectively, beneficially owning or controlling more than 9.99% of the total outstanding shares of our common stock.

### **Consequences of Not Approving this Proposal**

After extensive efforts to raise capital on more favorable terms, we believe that the Financing Transaction is the only viable financing alternative available to us at this time. If our stockholders do not approve this proposal, we will not be able to issue more than 20% of our outstanding shares of common stock to the Note and Warrant holders in connection with the Financing Transaction. As a result, we may be unable to make some of the amortization payments due under the Notes in shares of our common stock or issue sufficient shares upon exercise of the Warrants which will, in lieu of those shares, require that we pay substantial cash amounts to the Note and Warrant holders. We do not have, and do not anticipate having, sufficient funds to make any substantial cash payments to the Note and Warrant holders.

The Securities Purchase Agreement, the form of Notes, the Base Indenture, the form of First Supplemental Indentures, and the form of Warrants are attached to this Proxy Statement as Annexes I–V, respectively.

### **Vote Required and Board of Directors' Recommendation**

NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d) generally requires us to obtain stockholder approval prior to issuing more than 20% of our outstanding shares of common stock under the Financing Transaction. The approval of Proposal No. 3 requires the affirmative vote of a majority of the votes of the shares of our common stock, present at the annual meeting in person or by proxy and entitled to vote.

**THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS A VOTE TO APPROVE THE ISSUANCE OF SHARES OF OUR COMMON STOCK UNDERLYING CONVERTIBLE NOTES AND WARRANTS, IN AN AMOUNT EQUAL TO OR IN EXCESS OF 20% OF OUR COMMON STOCK OUTSTANDING BEFORE THE ISSUANCE OF SUCH CONVERTIBLE NOTES AND WARRANTS, IN SATISFACTION OF THE NASDAQ LISTING RULE 5635(d), AND PROXIES SOLICITED BY THE BOARD WILL BE VOTED IN FAVOR OF THE AMENDMENT UNLESS A STOCKHOLDER INDICATES OTHERWISE ON THE PROXY.**

**PROPOSAL NO. 4: AMENDMENT OF OUR CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION TO INCREASE FROM 150,000,000 SHARES TO 250,000,000 SHARES THE AGGREGATE NUMBER OF SHARES OF COMMON STOCK AUTHORIZED TO BE ISSUED**

**(Notice Item 4)**

The Board of Directors has determined that it is advisable to increase our authorized common stock from 150,000,000 shares to up to a maximum of 250,000,000 shares pursuant to our obligation under the Purchase Agreement, and has voted to recommend that the stockholders adopt an amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation, or the certificate of incorporation, effecting the proposed increase. The full text of the proposed amendment to the certificate of incorporation is attached to this proxy statement as Appendix B.

As of [\_\_\_\_\_], approximately \_\_\_\_ million shares of our common stock were issued and outstanding and approximately an additional \_\_\_\_\_ million shares were reserved for issuance upon the conversion of existing securities and exercise of options granted. Accordingly, a total of approximately \_\_\_\_\_ million shares of common stock is available for future issuance.

The Board of Directors believes it continues to be in our best interest to have sufficient additional authorized but unissued shares of common stock available in order to provide flexibility for corporate action in the future. Management believes that the availability of additional authorized shares for issuance from time to time in the Board of Directors' discretion in connection with future financings, acquisitions, investment opportunities, stock splits or dividends or for other corporate purposes is desirable in order to avoid repeated separate amendments to our certificate of incorporation and the delay and expense incurred in holding special meetings of the stockholders to approve such amendments, however, we seek stockholders approval for the increase of the authorized shares due to our obligation under the Purchase Agreement. In the event we implement the reverse stock split and determine the increase in the authorized shares is not in the best interest of our stockholders, we reserve the right not to adopt the increase in the authorized shares.

We will not solicit further authorization by vote of the stockholders for the issuance of the additional shares of common stock proposed to be authorized, except as required by law, regulatory authorities or rules of The NASDAQ Stock Market or any other stock exchange on which our shares may then be listed. The issuance of additional shares of common stock could have the effect of diluting existing stockholder earnings per share, book value per share and voting power. Our stockholders do not have any preemptive right to purchase or subscribe for any part of any new or additional issuance of our securities.

**Vote Required and Board of Directors' Recommendation**

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of our common stock outstanding and entitled to vote on the matter either in person or by proxy at the annual meeting is required to approve the amendment to our certificate of incorporation to effect the proposed increase in our authorized shares.

**THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS A VOTE TO APPROVE THE AMENDMENT TO OUR AMENDED AND RESTATED CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION, AND PROXIES SOLICITED BY THE BOARD WILL BE VOTED IN FAVOR OF THE AMENDMENT UNLESS A STOCKHOLDER INDICATES OTHERWISE ON THE PROXY.**

## PROPOSAL NO. 5: APPROVAL OF AMENDMENT TO OUR 2102 STOCK INCENTIVE PLAN

### (Notice Item 5)

#### General

On [\_\_\_\_\_], our Board of Directors approved an amendment to our 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan, or the Plan, effective upon approval by our stockholders at the annual meeting, to increase the number of shares authorized for issuance of awards under the Plan by \_\_\_\_\_ shares, from \_\_\_\_\_ to an aggregate of 21,000,000 shares of common stock. Our Plan was approved by our Board of Directors and stockholders in 2012. As of [\_\_\_\_\_], a total of \_\_\_\_\_ shares of our common stock are reserved for issuance under the Plan. As of \_\_\_\_\_, options to purchase \_\_\_\_\_ shares of common stock are outstanding under the Plan, \_\_\_\_\_ shares have been issued upon the exercise of options granted under the Plan and \_\_\_\_\_ options remain available for issuance. In addition, As of [\_\_\_\_\_], we had a total of \_\_\_\_\_ unvested restricted stock units. By its terms, the Plan may be amended by the Board of Directors, provided that any amendment which the Board of Directors determines requires stockholder approval is subject to receiving such stockholder approval. On \_\_\_\_\_, our Board of Directors voted to approve an amendment to the Plan to increase the aggregate number of shares of common stock available for the grant of awards under the Plan by an additional \_\_\_\_\_ shares.

The proposed number of shares subject to the Plan is the sum of: (i) 21 million shares of common stock and (ii) any shares of common stock that are represented by awards granted under our 2006 Stock Option Plan that are forfeited, expire or are cancelled without delivery of shares of common stock or which result in the forfeiture of shares of common stock back to us on or after the date of the Plan approval by the stockholders, or the equivalent of such number of shares after the administrator, in its sole discretion, has interpreted the effect of any stock split, stock dividend, combination, recapitalization or similar transaction in accordance with the Plan; provided, however, that no more than 1.5 million shares shall be added to the Plan.

This amendment is being submitted to you for approval at the annual meeting in order to ensure (i) favorable federal income tax treatment for grants of incentive stock options under Section 422 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"), and (ii) continued eligibility to receive a federal income tax deduction for certain compensation paid under our Plan by complying with Section 162(m) of the Code. Approval by our stockholders of the Plan is also required by the listing rules of The NASDAQ Stock Market.

Generally shares of common stock reserved for awards under the Plan that lapse or are canceled will be added back to the share reserve available for future awards. However, shares of common stock tendered in payment for an award or shares of common stock withheld for taxes will not be available again for grant. Our Plan provides that no participant may receive awards for more than 4,000,000 shares of common stock in any fiscal year and that no more than \_\_\_\_\_ shares shall be issued as stock grants or other stock based awards that are deemed "full value" awards.

Our Board of Directors, the Compensation Committee and management all believe that the effective use of stock-based long-term incentive compensation is vital to our ability to achieve strong performance in the future. The Plan will maintain and enhance the key policies and practices adopted by our management and Board of Directors to align employee and stockholder interests. In addition, our future success depends, in large part, upon our ability to maintain a competitive position in attracting, retaining and motivating key personnel. We believe that the increase in the number of shares available for issuance under our Plan is essential to permit our management to continue to provide long-term, equity-based incentives to present and future key employees, consultants and directors. Accordingly, our Board of Directors believes approval of the amendment to increase the aggregate number of shares available for issuance under the Plan is in our best interests and those of its stockholders and recommends a vote "FOR" the approval of the amendment to the Plan.

The following is a brief summary of the Plan. This summary is qualified in its entirety by reference to the text of the Plan, as amended, a copy of which is attached as Appendix C to this Proxy Statement.

#### Material Features of our Plan.

**Eligibility.** The 2012 Plan allows us, under the direction of its Compensation Committee, to make grants of stock options, restricted and unrestricted stock awards and other stock-based awards to employees, consultants and directors who, in the opinion of the Compensation Committee, are in a position to make a significant contribution to our long-term success. The purpose of these awards is to attract and retain key individuals, further align employee and stockholder interests, and to closely link compensation with our performance. The Plan provides an essential component of the total compensation package, reflecting the importance that we place on aligning the interests of key individuals with those of our stockholders. As of \_\_\_\_\_, there were \_\_\_\_\_ individuals eligible to participate.

**Stock Options.** Stock options granted under the Plan may either be incentive stock options, which are intended to satisfy the requirements of Section 422 of the Code, or non-qualified stock options, which are not intended to meet those requirements. Incentive stock options may be granted to our employees and our affiliates. Non-qualified options may be granted to our employees, directors and consultants and our affiliates. The exercise price of a stock option may not be less than 100% of the fair market value of our common stock on the date of grant. If an incentive stock option is granted to an individual who owns more than 10% of the combined voting power of all classes of the our capital stock, the exercise price may not be less than 110% of the fair market value of our common stock on the date of grant and the term of the option may not be longer than five years.

Award agreements for stock options include rules for exercise of the stock options after termination of service. Options may not be exercised unless they are vested, and no option may be exercised after the end of the term set forth in the award agreement. Generally, stock options will be exercisable for three months after termination of service for any reason other than death or total and permanent disability, and for 12 months after termination of service on account of death or total and permanent disability.

**Restricted Stock.** Restricted stock is common stock that is subject to restrictions, including a prohibition against transfer and a substantial risk of forfeiture, until the end of a “restricted period” during which the grantee must satisfy certain vesting conditions. If the grantee does not satisfy the vesting conditions by the end of the restricted period, the restricted stock is forfeited.

During the restricted period, the holder of restricted stock has the rights and privileges of a regular stockholder, except that the restrictions set forth in the applicable award agreement apply. For example, the holder of restricted stock may vote and receive dividends on the restricted shares; but he or she may not sell the shares until the restrictions are lifted.

**Other Stock-Based Awards.** The Plan also authorizes the grant of other types of stock-based compensation including, but not limited to stock appreciation rights, phantom stock awards, and stock unit awards. Our Board of Directors or an authorized committee may award such stock-based awards subject to such conditions and restrictions as it may determine. These conditions and restrictions may include continued employment with us through a specified restricted period.

**Plan Administration.** In accordance with the terms of our Plan, our Board of Directors has authorized our Compensation Committee to administer the Plan. The Compensation Committee may delegate part of its authority and powers under our Plan to one or more of our directors and/or officers, but only the Compensation Committee can make awards to participants who are our directors or executive officers. In accordance with the provisions of the Plan, our Compensation Committee determines the terms of awards, including:

- which employees, directors and consultants will be granted awards;
- the number of shares subject to each award;
- the vesting provisions of each award;
- the termination or cancellation provisions applicable to awards; and
- all other terms and conditions upon which each award may be granted in accordance with the Plan.

In addition, our Compensation Committee may, in its discretion, amend any term or condition of an outstanding award provided (i) such term or condition as amended is permitted by our Plan, and (ii) any such amendment shall be made only with the consent of the participant to whom such award was made, if the amendment is adverse to the participant; and provided, further, that, without the prior approval of our stockholders, options and stock appreciation rights will not be repriced, replaced or regranted through cancellation or by lowering the exercise price of a previously granted award.

**Stock Dividends and Stock Splits.** If our common stock shall be subdivided or combined into a greater or smaller number of shares or if we issue any shares of common stock as a stock dividend, the number of shares of our common stock deliverable upon exercise of an option issued or upon issuance of an award shall be appropriately increased or decreased proportionately, and appropriate adjustments shall be made in the purchase price per share to reflect such subdivision, combination or stock dividend.

**Corporate Transactions.** Upon a merger or other reorganization event, our Board of Directors, may, in its sole discretion, take any one or more of the following actions pursuant to our Plan, as to some or all outstanding awards:

- provide that all outstanding options shall be assumed or substituted by the successor corporation;
- upon written notice to a participant provide that the participant's unexercised options will terminate immediately prior to the consummation of such transaction unless exercised by the participant;
- in the event of a merger pursuant to which holders of our common stock will receive a cash payment for each share surrendered in the merger, make or provide for a cash payment to the participants equal to the difference between the merger price times the number of shares of our common stock subject to such outstanding options, and the aggregate exercise price of all such outstanding options, in exchange for the termination of such options;
- provide that outstanding awards shall be assumed or substituted by the successor corporation, become realizable or deliverable, or restrictions applicable to an award will lapse, in whole or in part, prior to or upon the merger or reorganization event; and
- with respect to stock grants and in lieu of any of the foregoing, the Board of Directors or an authorized committee may provide that, upon consummation of the transaction, each outstanding stock grant shall be terminated in exchange for payment of an amount equal to the consideration payable upon consummation of such transaction to a holder of the number of shares of common stock comprising such award (to the extent such stock grant is no longer subject to any forfeiture or repurchase rights then in effect or, at the discretion of the Board of Directors or an authorized committee, all forfeiture and repurchase rights being waived upon such transaction).

Notwithstanding the foregoing, in the event the Corporate Transaction also constitutes a Change of Control, then all Options outstanding on the date of the Corporate Transaction shall have vesting acceleration until the next vesting date, unless otherwise agreed upon with the Administrator.

**Amendment and Termination.** Our Plan may be amended by our stockholders. It may also be amended by our Board of Directors, provided that any amendment approved by our Board of Directors which is of a scope that requires stockholder approval as required by the rules of The NASDAQ Stock Market, in order to ensure favorable federal income tax treatment for any incentive stock options under Code Section 422, or for any other reason is subject to obtaining such stockholder approval. In addition, if The NASDAQ Stock Market amends its corporate governance rules so that such rules no longer require stockholder approval of "material amendments" of equity compensation plans, then, from and after the effective date of such an amendment to The NASDAQ Stock Market rules, no amendment of the Plan which (i) materially increases the number of shares to be issued under the Plan (other than to reflect a reorganization, stock split, merger, spin off or similar transaction); (ii) materially increases the benefits to participants, including any material change to: (a) permit a repricing (or decrease in exercise price) of outstanding options, (b) reduce the price at which awards may be offered, or (c) extend the duration of the Plan; (iii) materially expands the class of participants eligible to participate in the Plan; or (iv) expands the types of awards provided under the Plan shall become effective unless stockholder approval is obtained. However, no such action may adversely affect any rights under any outstanding award without the holder's consent.

**Duration of Plan.** The Plan will expire by its terms on the date which is ten years from the earlier of the date of its adoption by the Board of Directors and the date of its approval by our stockholders.

#### **Federal Income Tax Considerations**

The material federal income tax consequences of the issuance and exercise of stock options and other awards under the Plan, based on the current provisions of the Code and regulations, are as follows. Changes to these laws could alter the tax consequences described below. This summary assumes that all awards granted under the Plan are exempt from or comply with, the rules under Section 409A of the Code related to nonqualified deferred compensation.

**Incentive Stock Options:** Incentive stock options are intended to qualify for treatment under Section 422 of the Code. An incentive stock option does not result in taxable income to the optionee or deduction to us at the time it is granted or exercised, provided that no disposition is made by the optionee of the shares acquired pursuant to the option within two years after the date of grant of the option nor within one year after the date of issuance of shares to the optionee (referred to as the “ISO holding period”). However, the difference between the fair market value of the shares on the date of exercise and the option price will be an item of tax preference includible in “alternative minimum taxable income” of the optionee. Upon disposition of the shares after the expiration of the ISO holding period, the optionee will generally recognize long term capital gain or loss based on the difference between the disposition proceeds and the option price paid for the shares. If the shares are disposed of prior to the expiration of the ISO holding period, the optionee generally will recognize taxable compensation, and we will have a corresponding deduction, in the year of the disposition, equal to the excess of the fair market value of the shares on the date of exercise of the option over the option price. Any additional gain realized on the disposition will normally constitute capital gain. If the amount realized upon such a disqualifying disposition is less than fair market value of the shares on the date of exercise, the amount of compensation income will be limited to the excess of the amount realized over the optionee’s adjusted basis in the shares.

**Non-Qualified Options:** Options otherwise qualifying as incentive stock options, to the extent the aggregate fair market value of shares with respect to which such options are first exercisable by an individual in any calendar year exceeds \$100,000, and options designated as non-qualified options will be treated as options that are not incentive stock options.

A non-qualified option ordinarily will not result in income to the optionee or deduction to us at the time of grant. The optionee will recognize compensation income at the time of exercise of such non-qualified option in an amount equal to the excess of the then value of the shares over the option price per share. Such compensation income of optionees may be subject to withholding taxes, and a deduction may then be allowable to us in an amount equal to the optionee’s compensation income.

An optionee’s initial basis in shares so acquired will be the amount paid on exercise of the non-qualified option plus the amount of any corresponding compensation income. Any gain or loss as a result of a subsequent disposition of the shares so acquired will be capital gain or loss.

**Stock Grants:** With respect to stock grants under our Plan that result in the issuance of shares that are either not restricted as to transferability or not subject to a substantial risk of forfeiture, the grantee must generally recognize ordinary income equal to the fair market value of shares received. Thus, deferral of the time of issuance will generally result in the deferral of the time the grantee will be liable for income taxes with respect to such issuance. We generally will be entitled to a deduction in an amount equal to the ordinary income recognized by the grantee.

With respect to stock grants involving the issuance of shares that are restricted as to transferability and subject to a substantial risk of forfeiture, the grantee must generally recognize ordinary income equal to the fair market value of the shares received at the first time the shares become transferable or are not subject to a substantial risk of forfeiture, whichever occurs earlier. A grantee may elect to be taxed at the time of receipt of shares rather than upon lapse of restrictions on transferability or substantial risk of forfeiture, but if the grantee subsequently forfeits such shares, the grantee would not be entitled to any tax deduction, including as a capital loss, for the value of the shares on which he previously paid tax. The grantee must file such election with the Internal Revenue Service within 30 days of the receipt of the shares. We generally will be entitled to a deduction in an amount equal to the ordinary income recognized by the grantee.

**Stock Units:** The grantee recognizes no income until the issuance of the shares. At that time, the grantee must generally recognize ordinary income equal to the fair market value of the shares received. We generally will be entitled to a deduction in an amount equal to the ordinary income recognized by the grantee.



The amounts of future grants under the Plan are not determinable as awards under the Plan and will be granted at the sole discretion of the Compensation Committee, or other delegated persons and we cannot determine at this time either the persons who will receive awards under the Plan or the amount or types of any such awards.

On August 20, 2015, the closing market price per share of our common stock was \$0.62, as reported by The NASDAQ Stock Market.

For these reasons, the Board of Directors has recommended adopting an amendment to our Plan to increase the number of shares authorized to be granted thereunder.

**Vote Required and Board of Directors' Recommendation**

The affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of our common stock present and entitled to vote on the matter either in person or by proxy at the annual meeting is required to approve the Amendment to the Plan.

**THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS APPROVAL OF THE ADOPTION OF AN AMENDMENT TO THE VRINGO, INC. 2012 EMPLOYEE, DIRECTOR AND CONSULTANT EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN TO INCREASE BY 5,400,000 SHARES THE AGGREGATE NUMBER OF SHARES WHICH MAY BE GRANTED UNDER THE PLAN. PROXIES SOLICITED BY THE BOARD WILL BE VOTED IN FAVOR OF THE AMENDMENT UNLESS A STOCKHOLDER HAS INDICATED OTHERWISE ON THE PROXY.**

## PROPOSAL 6: INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

### (Notice Item 6)

The Audit Committee has appointed CohnReznick LLP, or CohnReznick, as our independent registered public accounting firm, to audit our financial statements for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2015. KPMG LLP was our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014. On July 13, 2015, we replaced KPMG LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm with CohnReznick. The Board proposes that the stockholders ratify the appointment of CohnReznick. We expect that representatives of CohnReznick will be present at the annual meeting, will be able to make a statement if they so desire, and will be available to respond to appropriate questions.

Our Audit Committee of the Board of Directors conducted a selection process to determine our registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2015. As a result of this process, the Audit Committee approved the appointment of CohnReznick as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2015, and the dismissal of KPMG LLP as the Company's independent registered public accounting firm, as of July 13, 2015. The report of KPMG LLP on our consolidated financial statements as of and for the year ended December 31, 2014 did not contain an adverse opinion or a disclaimer of opinion and was not qualified or modified as to uncertainty, audit scope or accounting principles, except that KPMG LLP's report on the consolidated financial statements contained a separate paragraph stating that "The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in note 1 to the consolidated financial statements, we have suffered recurring losses from operations and negative cash flows from operating activities and may not have sufficient cash or available sources of liquidity to support operating requirements that raises substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans in regard to these matters are also described in note 1. The consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty." In connection with the audit of our consolidated financial statements for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014, and the subsequent interim period through July 13, 2015, there were no disagreements with KPMG on any matters of accounting principles or practices, financial statement disclosure or auditing scope and procedures, which disagreements, if not resolved to the satisfaction of KPMG, would have caused KPMG to make reference to the matter in its report. There were no reportable events (as that term is described in Item 304(a)(1)(v) of Regulation S-K) during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2014 or the subsequent interim period through July 13, 2015.

In deciding to appoint CohnReznick, the Audit Committee reviewed auditor independence issues and existing commercial relationships with CohnReznick and concluded that CohnReznick has no commercial relationship with the Company that would impair its independence for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2015.

Somekh Chaikin, a member firm of KPMG International ("KPMG Israel"), served as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2013.

The following table presents fees for professional audit services rendered by KPMG LLP and KPMG Israel for the audit of our annual financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2014 and 2013 and fees billed for other services rendered by KPMG LLP and KPMG Israel during those periods.

	2014	2013
<b>Audit fees:</b> <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 412,500	187,000
<b>Tax fees:</b> <sup>(2)</sup>	25,000	8,000
<b>Total</b>	<u>\$ 437,500</u>	<u>\$ 195,000</u>

(1) This category includes fees associated with the annual audits of our financial statements, quarterly reviews of our financial statements, and services that are normally provided by the independent registered public accounting firm in connection with statutory and regulatory filings or engagements. The fees of \$412,500 in 2014 were incurred by KPMG LLP and the fees of \$187,000 in 2013 were incurred by KPMG Israel.

(2) Tax fees represent the aggregate fees for tax compliance, tax advice, and tax planning services provided by KPMG Israel related to our Israeli subsidiary.

## **Policy on Audit Committee Pre-Approval of Audit and Permissible Non-audit Services of Independent Public Accountant**

Consistent with SEC policies and guidelines regarding audit independence, the Audit Committee is responsible for the pre-approval of all audit and permissible non-audit services provided by our independent registered public accounting firm on a case-by-case basis. Our Audit Committee has established a policy regarding approval of all audit and permissible non-audit services provided by our independent registered public accounting firm. Our Audit Committee pre-approves these services by category and service. Our Audit Committee has pre-approved all of the services provided by our independent registered public accounting firms in 2014 and 2013.

Prior to engagement of an independent registered public accounting firm for the next year's audit, management will submit an aggregate of services expected to be rendered during that year for each of four categories of services to the Audit Committee for approval.

(i) **Audit** services include audit work performed in the preparation of financial statements, as well as work that generally only an independent registered public accounting firm can reasonably be expected to provide, including comfort letters, statutory audits, and attest services and consultation regarding financial accounting and/or reporting standards.

(ii) **Audit-Related** services are for assurance and related services that are traditionally performed by an independent registered public accounting firm, including due diligence related to mergers and acquisitions, employee benefit plan audits, and special procedures required to meet certain regulatory requirements.

(iii) **Tax** services include all services performed by an independent registered public accounting firm's tax personnel except those services specifically related to the audit of the financial statements, and includes fees in the areas of tax compliance, tax planning, and tax advice.

(iv) **Other Fees** are those associated with services not captured in the other categories. The Company generally does not request such services from our independent registered public accounting firm.

Prior to engagement, the Audit Committee pre-approves these services by category of service. The fees are budgeted and the Audit Committee requires our independent registered public accounting firm and management to report actual fees versus the budget periodically throughout the year by category of service. During the year, circumstances may arise when it may become necessary to engage our independent registered public accounting firm for additional services not contemplated in the original pre-approval. In those instances, the Audit Committee requires specific pre-approval before engaging our independent registered public accounting firm.

The Audit Committee may delegate pre-approval authority to one or more of its members. The member to whom such authority is delegated must report, for informational purposes only, any pre-approval decisions to the Audit Committee at its next scheduled meeting.

In the event the stockholders do not ratify the appointment of CohnReznick as our independent registered public accounting firm, the Audit Committee will reconsider its appointment.

### **Vote Required and Board of Directors' Recommendation**

The affirmative vote of a majority of the votes of the shares of our common stock, present at the annual meeting in person or by proxy and entitled to vote is required to ratify the appointment of the independent registered public accounting firm.

**THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS A VOTE TO RATIFY THE APPOINTMENT OF COHNREZNICK AS OUR INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM FOR THE FISCAL YEAR ENDING DECEMBER 31, 2015, AND PROXIES SOLICITED BY THE BOARD WILL BE VOTED IN FAVOR OF SUCH RATIFICATION UNLESS A STOCKHOLDER INDICATES OTHERWISE ON THE PROXY.**

## PROPOSAL 7: ADVISORY VOTE ON APPROVAL OF EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION AS DISCLOSED IN THIS PROXY STATEMENT

### (Notice Item 7)

We are seeking your advisory vote as required by Section 14A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, on the approval of the compensation of our named executive officers as described in the Compensation Discussion and Analysis, the compensation tables and related material contained in this proxy statement. Because your vote is advisory, it will not be binding on our Compensation Committee or our Board of Directors. However, the Compensation Committee and the Board of Directors will review the voting results and take them into consideration when making future decisions regarding executive compensation. We have determined to hold an advisory vote to approve the compensation of our named executive officers **annually**, and the next such advisory vote will occur at the 2016 annual meeting of stockholders.

Our compensation philosophy is designed to provide the compensation and incentives needed to motivate and reward fairly those individuals who perform over time at or above the levels that we expect and to attract, as needed, and retain individuals with the skills necessary to achieve our objectives and who are crucial to our long-term success. Our compensation program is also designed to reinforce a sense of ownership and to link compensation to our performance as well as the performance of each of our named executive officers.

We rely on qualified, highly skilled and talented employees who have experience in the legal, intellectual property licensing and enforcement, and other technology-related industries to execute our business plan and strategy. Thus, our compensation program is structured in a manner similar to companies in these industries in order to attract and retain talented employees who may have other opportunities in these industry areas.

Our compensation program consists of these general elements:

- a fixed portion of compensation, in the form of a base salary, to retain and provide a base level of compensation to our named executive officers; and
- a long-term performance element in the form of equity, to incentivize our named executive officers to achieve superior corporate performance.

In determining the total amount and mixture of the compensation for each of our named executive officers, the Compensation Committee subjectively considers the overall value to the Company of each named executive officer in light of numerous factors, including, but not limited to, the following:

- our competitive position;
- our financial performance and the contribution of each individual to our financial performance;
- individual performance, including past and expected contribution to our corporate goals and execution of our business plan and strategy; and
- our long-term needs and operational goals, including attracting and retaining key management personnel.

Stockholders are urged to read the Compensation Discussion and Analysis section of this proxy statement, which discusses how our compensation policies and procedures implement our compensation philosophy. The Compensation Committee and the Board of Directors believe that these policies and procedures are effective in implementing our compensation philosophy and in achieving its goals.

In accordance with the rules of the SEC, the following resolution, commonly known as a “say-on-pay” vote, is being submitted for a stockholder vote at the 2015 annual meeting:

“RESOLVED, that the compensation paid to the named executive officers of Vringo, Inc., as disclosed pursuant to the compensation disclosure rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission, including the Compensation Discussion and Analysis, the compensation tables and the related material disclosed in this proxy statement, is hereby APPROVED.”

**Vote Required and Board of Directors’ Recommendation**

The affirmative vote of a majority of the votes present or represented by proxy and entitled to vote at the annual meeting is required to approve, on an advisory basis, this resolution.

**THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS A VOTE TO APPROVE THE COMPENSATION OF OUR NAMED EXECUTIVE OFFICERS, AND PROXIES SOLICITED BY THE BOARD WILL BE VOTED IN FAVOR OF SUCH APPROVAL UNLESS A STOCKHOLDER INDICATES OTHERWISE ON THE PROXY.**

**PROPOSAL NO. 8: APPROVAL OF THE ADJOURNMENT OF THE ANNUAL MEETING, IF NECESSARY, TO SOLICIT ADDITIONAL PROXIES IF THERE ARE NOT SUFFICIENT VOTES IN FAVOR OF PROPOSALS 2 THROUGH 5  
(Notice Item 8)**

We are asking our stockholders to vote on a proposal to approve the adjournment of the annual meeting, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of Proposals 2 through 5.

**Vote Required and Board of Directors' Recommendation**

Approval of the adjournment of the annual meeting, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of the Proposals 2 through 5 requires the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock present and entitled to vote either in person or by proxy at the annual meeting. A "broker non-vote" or a failure to submit a proxy or vote at the annual meeting will have no effect on the outcome of the vote for this Proposal No. 8. For purposes of the vote on this Proposal No. 8, an abstention will have the same effect as a vote "AGAINST" such proposal.

**THE VRINGO BOARD OF DIRECTORS RECOMMENDS A VOTE "FOR" THE ADJOURNMENT OF THE ANNUAL MEETING, IF NECESSARY, TO SOLICIT ADDITIONAL PROXIES IF THERE ARE NOT SUFFICIENT VOTES IN FAVOR OF PROPOSALS 2 THROUGH 5.**

## CODE OF CONDUCT AND ETHICS

We have adopted a code of conduct and ethics that applies to all of our employees, including our CEO and chief financial and accounting officers. The text of the code of conduct and ethics is posted on the “Investors — Corporate Governance” section of our website at [www.vringoip.com](http://www.vringoip.com), and will be made available to stockholders without charge, upon request, in writing to the Corporate Secretary at 780 Third Avenue, 12th Floor, New York, New York 10017. Disclosure regarding any amendments to, or waivers from, provisions of the code of conduct and ethics that apply to our directors, principal executive and financial officers will be included in a Current Report on Form 8-K within four business days following the date of the amendment or waiver, unless website posting or the issuance of a press release of such amendments or waivers is then permitted by the rules of NASDAQ Stock Market.

## OTHER MATTERS

The Board of Directors knows of no other business which will be presented to the annual meeting. If any other business is properly brought before the annual meeting, proxies will be voted in accordance with the judgment of the persons named therein.

## STOCKHOLDER PROPOSALS AND NOMINATIONS FOR DIRECTOR

To be considered for inclusion in the proxy statement relating to our 2016 annual meeting of stockholders, we must receive stockholder proposals (other than for director nominations) no later than 120 days prior to the date that is one year from this year’s mailing date. To be considered for presentation at the 2016 annual meeting, although not included in the proxy statement, proposals (including director nominations that are not requested to be included in our proxy statement) must be received no earlier than 75 days prior to the date that is one year from this year’s mailing date and no later than 45 days prior to the date that is one year from this year’s mailing date. Proposals that are not received in a timely manner will not be voted on at the 2016 annual meeting. If a proposal is received on time, the proxies that management solicits for the meeting may still exercise discretionary voting authority on the proposal under circumstances consistent with the proxy rules of the SEC. All stockholder proposals should be marked for the attention of Clifford Weinstein, Executive Vice President, Vringo, Inc., 780 Third Avenue, 12<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10017.

**New York, New York**  
**[DATE]**

**FORM OF CERTIFICATE OF AMENDMENT  
OF THE  
AMENDED AND RESTATED CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION  
OF  
VRINGO, INC.**

**VRINGO, INC.**, a Delaware corporation (the “Corporation”), does hereby certify that:

**FIRST:** The name of the Corporation is VRINGO, INC.

**SECOND:** The original Certificate of Incorporation of the Corporation was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on January 9, 2006 and the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Corporation was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on June 22, 2010, and as further amended by the Certificate of Amendment of the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation on July 19, 2012.

**THIRD:** The Board of Directors of the Corporation (the “Board”), acting in accordance with the provisions of Sections 141 and 242 of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (the “DGCL”), adopted resolutions amending the Corporation’s Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation as follows:

Article Fourth of the Corporation’s Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation is hereby amended by adding the following Sections (3) and (4):

“(3) Reverse Stock Split. Effective at 5:00 p.m. (Eastern time), on the date of filing of this Certificate of Amendment of the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Corporation with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware (the “**Effective Time**”), the shares of the Corporation’s Common Stock issued and outstanding prior to the Effective Time and the shares of Common Stock issued and held in treasury of the Corporation immediately prior to the Effective Time shall automatically be reclassified into a smaller number of shares such that each \_\_\_\_ (\_\_\_) shares of the Corporation’s issued and outstanding Common Stock immediately prior to the Effective Time are reclassified into one validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable share of Common Stock, without any further action by the Corporation or the holder thereof. No fractional shares of Corporation common stock will be issued as a result of the reverse stock split. Instead, stockholders of record who otherwise would be entitled to receive fractional shares, will be entitled to rounding up of their fractional share to the nearest whole share.

(4) Each stock certificate that, immediately prior to the Effective Time, represented shares of Common Stock that were issued and outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time shall, from and after the Effective Time, automatically and without the necessity of presenting the same for exchange, represent that the number of whole shares of Common Stock after the Effective Time into which the shares of Common Stock formerly represented by such certificate shall have been reclassified (as well as the right to receive a whole share in lieu of a fractional share of Common Stock), provided, however, that each person of record holding a certificate that represented shares of Common Stock that were issued and outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time shall receive, upon surrender of such certificate, a new certificate evidencing and representing the number of whole shares of Common Stock after the Effective Time into which the shares of Common Stock formerly represented by such certificate shall have been reclassified (including the right to receive a whole share in lieu of a fractional share of Common Stock).”

**FOURTH:** Thereafter, pursuant to a resolution of the Board, this Certificate of Amendment was submitted to the stockholders of the Corporation for their approval, and was duly adopted in accordance with the provisions of Sections 222 and 242 of the DGCL.



IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Corporation has caused this CERTIFICATE OF AMENDMENT to be signed by its [ ] as of the [ ] day of [ ],  
201\_.

**VRINGO, INC.**

\_\_\_\_\_  
By:

Name:

Title:

---

Appendix A-2

---

**FORM OF CERTIFICATE OF AMENDMENT  
OF THE  
AMENDED AND RESTATED CERTIFICATE OF INCORPORATION  
OF  
VRINGO, INC.**

**VRINGO, INC.**, a Delaware corporation (the "Corporation"), does hereby certify that:

**FIRST:** The name of the Corporation is VRINGO, INC.

**SECOND:** The original Certificate of Incorporation of the Corporation was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on January 9, 2006 and the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Corporation was filed with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on June 22, 2010, and as further amended by the Certificate of Amendment of the Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation on July 19, 2012.

**THIRD:** The Board of Directors of the Corporation (the "Board"), acting in accordance with the provisions of Sections 141 and 242 of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (the "DGCL"), adopted resolutions amending the Corporation's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation as follows:

The second sentence of Article Fourth of the Corporation's Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:

"The total number of shares the Corporation shall have the authority to issue is two hundred fifty-five million (255,000,000) shares, two hundred fifty million (250,000,000) shares of which shall be Common Stock and five million (5,000,000) shares of which shall be Preferred Stock."

**FOURTH:** Thereafter, pursuant to a resolution of the Board, this Certificate of Amendment was submitted to the stockholders of the Corporation for their approval, and was duly adopted in accordance with the provisions of Sections 222 and 242 of the DGCL.

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the Corporation has caused this CERTIFICATE OF AMENDMENT to be signed by its [ ] as of the [ ] day of [ ], 201\_.

**VRINGO, INC.**

\_\_\_\_\_  
By:  
Name:  
Title:

## VRINGO, INC.

2012 EMPLOYEE, DIRECTOR AND CONSULTANT EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN  
(as amended on \_\_\_\_\_)1. DEFINITIONS.

Unless otherwise specified or unless the context otherwise requires, the following terms, as used in this Vringo, Inc. 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan, have the following meanings:

Administrator means the Board of Directors, unless it has delegated power to act on its behalf to the Committee, in which case the Administrator means the Committee.

Affiliate means a corporation which, for purposes of Section 424 of the Code, is a parent or subsidiary of the Company, direct or indirect.

Agreement means an agreement between the Company and a Participant delivered pursuant to the Plan and pertaining to a Stock Right, in such form as the Administrator shall approve.

Board of Directors means the Board of Directors of the Company.

Cause means, with respect to a Participant (a) dishonesty with respect to the Company or any Affiliate, (b) insubordination, substantial malfeasance or non-feasance of duty, (c) unauthorized disclosure of confidential information, (d) breach by a Participant of any provision of any employment, consulting, advisory, nondisclosure, non-competition or similar agreement between the Participant and the Company or any Affiliate, and (e) conduct substantially prejudicial to the business of the Company or any Affiliate; provided, however, that any provision in an agreement between a Participant and the Company or an Affiliate, which contains a conflicting definition of Cause for termination and which is in effect at the time of such termination, shall supersede this definition with respect to that Participant. The determination of the Administrator as to the existence of Cause will be conclusive on the Participant and the Company.

Change of Control means the occurrence of any of the following events:

- (i) *Ownership.* Any "Person" (as such term is used in Sections 13(d) and 14(d) of the Exchange Act) becomes the "Beneficial Owner" (as defined in Rule 13d-3 under the Exchange Act), directly or indirectly, of securities of the Company representing 50% or more of the total voting power represented by the Company's then outstanding voting securities (excluding for this purpose any such voting securities held by the Company or its Affiliates or by any employee benefit plan of the Company) pursuant to a transaction or a series of related transactions which the Board of Directors does not approve; or

- (ii) *Merger/Sale of Assets.* (A) A merger or consolidation of the Company whether or not approved by the Board of Directors, other than a merger or consolidation which would result in the voting securities of the Company outstanding immediately prior thereto continuing to represent (either by remaining outstanding or by being converted into voting securities of the surviving entity or the parent of such corporation) more than 50% of the total voting power represented by the voting securities of the Company or such surviving entity or parent of such corporation, as the case may be, outstanding immediately after such merger or consolidation; or (B) the sale or disposition by the Company of all or substantially all of the Company's assets in a transaction requiring stockholder approval; or
- (iii) *Change in Board Composition.* A change in the composition of the Board of Directors, as a result of which fewer than a majority of the directors are Incumbent Directors. "Incumbent Directors" shall mean directors who either (A) are directors of the Company as of the effective date of the Plan, which is the date of its approval by the shareholders of the Company, or (B) are elected, or nominated for election, to the Board of Directors with the affirmative votes of at least a majority of the Incumbent Directors at the time of such election or nomination (but shall not include an individual whose election or nomination is in connection with an actual or threatened proxy contest relating to the election of directors to the Company).
- (iv) "Change of Control" shall be interpreted, if applicable, in a manner, and limited to the extent necessary, so that it will not cause adverse tax consequences under Section 409A.

Code means the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended including any successor statute, regulation and guidance thereto.

Committee means the committee of the Board of Directors to which the Board of Directors has delegated power to act under or pursuant to the provisions of the Plan.<sup>1</sup>

Common Stock means shares of the Company's common stock, \$0.01 par value per share.

Company means Vringo, Inc., a Delaware corporation.

Consultant means any natural person who is an advisor or consultant that provides bona fide services to the Company or its Affiliates, provided that such services are not in connection with the offer or sale of securities in a capital raising transaction, and do not directly or indirectly promote or maintain a market for the Company's or its Affiliates' securities.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Committee should be comprised of "disinterested persons" as defined under Rule 16b-3 of the Exchange Act and "outside directors" as defined in Section 162(m) of the Code.

Disability or Disabled means permanent and total disability as defined in Section 22(e)(3) of the Code.

Employee means any employee of the Company or of an Affiliate (including, without limitation, an employee who is also serving as an officer or director of the Company or of an Affiliate), designated by the Administrator to be eligible to be granted one or more Stock Rights under the Plan.

Exchange Act means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

Fair Market Value of a Share of Common Stock means:

(1) If the Common Stock is listed on a national securities exchange or traded in the over-the-counter market and sales prices are regularly reported for the Common Stock, the closing or, if not applicable, the last price of the Common Stock on the composite tape or other comparable reporting system for the trading day on the applicable date and if such applicable date is not a trading day, the last market trading day prior to such date;

(2) If the Common Stock is not traded on a national securities exchange but is traded on the over-the-counter market, if sales prices are not regularly reported for the Common Stock for the trading day referred to in clause (1), and if bid and asked prices for the Common Stock are regularly reported, the mean between the bid and the asked price for the Common Stock at the close of trading in the over-the-counter market for the trading day on which Common Stock was traded on the applicable date and if such applicable date is not a trading day, the last market trading day prior to such date; and

(3) If the Common Stock is neither listed on a national securities exchange nor traded in the over-the-counter market, such value as the Administrator, in good faith, shall determine. This value will be based on an external valuation in compliance with the applicable laws of the taxing jurisdiction.

ISO means an option intended to qualify as an incentive stock option under Section 422 of the Code.

Non-Qualified Option means an option which is not intended to qualify as an ISO.

Option means an ISO or Non-Qualified Option granted under the Plan.

Participant means an Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or an Affiliate to whom one or more Stock Rights are granted under the Plan. As used herein, "Participant" shall include "Participant's Survivors" where the context requires.

Plan means this Vringo, Inc. 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan.

Securities Act means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

Shares means shares of the Common Stock as to which Stock Rights have been or may be granted under the Plan or any shares of capital stock into which the Shares are changed or for which they are exchanged within the provisions of Paragraph 3 of the Plan. The Shares issued under the Plan may be authorized and unissued shares or shares held by the Company in its treasury, or both.

Stock-Based Award means a grant by the Company under the Plan of an equity award or an equity based award which is not an Option or a Stock Grant.

Stock Grant means a grant by the Company of Shares under the Plan.

Stock Right means a right to Shares or the value of Shares of the Company granted pursuant to the Plan — an ISO, a Non-Qualified Option, a Stock Grant or a Stock-Based Award.

Survivor means a deceased Participant's legal representatives and/or any person or persons who acquired the Participant's rights to a Stock Right by will or by the laws of descent and distribution.

2. PURPOSES OF THE PLAN.

The Plan is intended to encourage ownership of Shares by Employees and directors of and certain Consultants to the Company and its Affiliates in order to attract and retain such people, to induce them to work for the benefit of the Company or of an Affiliate and to provide additional incentive for them to promote the success of the Company or of an Affiliate. The Plan provides for the granting of ISOs, Non-Qualified Options, Stock Grants and Stock-Based Awards.

3. SHARES SUBJECT TO THE PLAN.

(a) The number of Shares which may be issued from time to time pursuant to this Plan shall be the sum of: (i) 21 mm shares of Common Stock and (ii) any shares of Common Stock that are represented by awards granted under the Company's 2006 Stock Option Plan that are forfeited, expire or are cancelled without delivery of shares of Common Stock or which result in the forfeiture of shares of Common Stock back to the Company on or after the date of the Plan approval by the shareholders of the Company, or the equivalent of such number of Shares after the Administrator, in its sole discretion, has interpreted the effect of any stock split, stock dividend, combination, recapitalization or similar transaction in accordance with Paragraph 24 of this Plan; provided, however, that no more than 1.5 mm shares shall be added to the Plan pursuant to subsection (ii).

(b) If an Option ceases to be “outstanding”, in whole or in part (other than by exercise), or if the Company shall reacquire (at not more than its original issuance price) any Shares issued pursuant to a Stock Grant or Stock-Based Award, or if any Stock Right expires or is forfeited, cancelled, or otherwise terminated or results in any Shares not being issued, the unissued or reacquired Shares which were subject to such Stock Right shall again be available for issuance from time to time pursuant to this Plan. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if a Stock Right is exercised, in whole or in part, by tender of Shares or if the Company’s or an Affiliate’s tax withholding obligation is satisfied by withholding Shares, the number of Shares deemed to have been issued under the Plan for purposes of the limitation set forth in Paragraph 3(a) above shall be the number of Shares that were subject to the Stock Right or portion thereof, and not the net number of Shares actually issued. However, in the case of ISOs, the foregoing provisions shall be subject to any limitations under the Code.

#### 4. ADMINISTRATION OF THE PLAN.

The Administrator of the Plan will be the Board of Directors, except to the extent the Board of Directors delegates its authority to the Committee, in which case the Committee shall be the Administrator. Subject to the provisions of the Plan, the Administrator is authorized to:

(a) Interpret the provisions of the Plan and all Stock Rights and to make all rules and determinations which it deems necessary or advisable for the administration of the Plan;

(b) Determine which Employees, directors and Consultants shall be granted Stock Rights;

(c) Determine the number of Shares for which a Stock Right or Stock Rights shall be granted, provided, however, that in no event shall Stock Rights with respect to more than 4.0 mm Shares be granted to any Participant in any fiscal year;

(d) Specify the terms and conditions upon which a Stock Right or Stock Rights may be granted;

(e) Amend any term or condition of any outstanding Stock Right, including, without limitation, to accelerate the vesting schedule or extend the expiration date up to eighteen months from termination date, provided that (i) such term or condition as amended is permitted by the Plan; (ii) any such amendment shall not impair the rights of a Participant under any Stock Right previously granted without such Participant’s consent or in the event of death of the Participant the Participant’s Survivors; and (iii) any such amendment shall be made only after the Administrator determines whether such amendment would cause any adverse tax consequences to the Participant, including, but not limited to, the annual vesting limitation contained in Section 422(d) of the Code and described in Paragraph 6(b)(iv) below with respect to ISOs and pursuant to Section 409A of the Code; and

(f) Adopt any appendices applicable to residents of any specified jurisdiction as it deems necessary or appropriate in order to comply with or take advantage of any tax or other laws applicable to the Company, any Affiliate or to Participants or to otherwise facilitate the administration of the Plan, which appendices may include additional restrictions or conditions applicable to Stock Rights or Shares issuable pursuant to a Stock Right;

provided, however, that all such interpretations, rules, determinations, terms and conditions shall be made and prescribed in the context of not causing any adverse tax consequences under Section 409A of the Code and preserving the tax status under Section 422 of the Code of those Options which are designated as ISOs. Subject to the foregoing, the interpretation and construction by the Administrator of any provisions of the Plan or of any Stock Right granted under it shall be final, unless otherwise determined by the Board of Directors, if the Administrator is the Committee. In addition, if the Administrator is the Committee, the Board of Directors may take any action under the Plan that would otherwise be the responsibility of the Committee.

To the extent permitted under applicable law, the Board of Directors or the Committee may allocate all or any portion of its responsibilities and powers to any one or more of its members and may delegate all or any portion of its responsibilities and powers to any other person selected by it. The Board of Directors or the Committee may revoke any such allocation or delegation at any time. Notwithstanding the foregoing, only the Board of Directors or the Committee shall be authorized to grant a Stock Right to any director of the Company or to any "officer" of the Company as defined by Rule 16a-1 under the Exchange Act.

5. ELIGIBILITY FOR PARTICIPATION.

The Administrator will, in its sole discretion, name the Participants in the Plan; provided, however, that each Participant must be an Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or of an Affiliate at the time a Stock Right is granted. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Administrator may authorize the grant of a Stock Right to a person not then an Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or of an Affiliate; provided, however, that the actual grant of such Stock Right shall be conditioned upon such person becoming eligible to become a Participant at or prior to the time of the execution of the Agreement evidencing such Stock Right. ISOs may be granted only to Employees who are deemed to be residents of the United States for tax purposes. Non-Qualified Options, Stock Grants and Stock-Based Awards may be granted to any Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or an Affiliate. The granting of any Stock Right to any individual shall neither entitle that individual to, nor disqualify him or her from, participation in any other grant of Stock Rights or any grant under any other benefit plan established by the Company or any Affiliate for Employees, directors or Consultants.

6. TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF OPTIONS.

Each Option shall be set forth in writing in an Option Agreement, duly executed by the Company and, to the extent required by law or requested by the Company, by the Participant. The Administrator may provide that Options be granted subject to such terms and conditions, consistent with the terms and conditions specifically required under this Plan, as the Administrator may deem appropriate including, without limitation, subsequent approval by the shareholders of the Company of this Plan or any amendments thereto. The Option Agreements shall be subject to at least the following terms and conditions:



(a) Non-Qualified Options: Each Option intended to be a Non-Qualified Option shall be subject to the terms and conditions which the Administrator determines to be appropriate and in the best interest of the Company, subject to the following minimum standards for any such Non-Qualified Option:

- (i) Exercise Price: Each Option Agreement shall state the exercise price (per share) of the Shares covered by each Option, which exercise price shall be determined by the Administrator and shall be at least equal to the Fair Market Value per share of Common Stock on the date of grant of the Option provided, that if the exercise price is less than Fair Market Value, the terms of such Option must comply with the requirements of Section 409A of the Code unless granted to a Consultant or to a non U.S. person as to whom Section 409A of the Code does not apply.
- (ii) Number of Shares: Each Option Agreement shall state the number of Shares to which it pertains.
- (iii) Option Periods: Each Option Agreement shall state the date or dates on which it first is exercisable and the date after which it may no longer be exercised, and may provide that the Option rights accrue or become exercisable in installments over a period of months or years, or upon the occurrence of certain conditions or the attainment of stated goals or events.
- (iv) Option Conditions: Exercise of any Option may be conditioned upon the Participant's execution of a Share purchase agreement in form satisfactory to the Administrator providing for certain protections for the Company and its other shareholders, including requirements that:
  - A. The Participant's or the Participant's Survivors' right to sell or transfer the Shares may be restricted; and
  - B. The Participant or the Participant's Survivors may be required to execute letters of investment intent and must also acknowledge that the Shares will bear legends noting any applicable restrictions.
- (v) Term of Option: Each Option shall terminate not more than ten years from the date of the grant or at such earlier time as the Option Agreement may provide.

(b) ISOs: Each Option intended to be an ISO shall be issued only to an Employee who is deemed to be a resident of the United States for tax purposes, and shall be subject to the following terms and conditions, with such additional restrictions or changes as the Administrator determines are appropriate but not in conflict with Section 422 of the Code and relevant regulations and rulings of the Internal Revenue Service:

- (i) Minimum standards: The ISO shall meet the minimum standards required of Non-Qualified Options, as described in Paragraph 6(a) above, except clause (i) and (v) thereunder.
- (ii) Exercise Price: Immediately before the ISO is granted, if the Participant owns, directly or by reason of the applicable attribution rules in Section 424(d) of the Code:
  - A. 10% or less of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock of the Company or an Affiliate, the exercise price per share of the Shares covered by each ISO shall not be less than 100% of the Fair Market Value per share of the Common Stock on the date of grant of the Option; or
  - B. More than 10% of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock of the Company or an Affiliate, the exercise price per share of the Shares covered by each ISO shall not be less than 110% of the Fair Market Value per share of the Common Stock on the date of grant of the Option.
- (iii) Term of Option: For Participants who own:
  - A. 10% or less of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock of the Company or an Affiliate, each ISO shall terminate not more than ten years from the date of the grant or at such earlier time as the Option Agreement may provide; or
  - B. More than 10% of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock of the Company or an Affiliate, each ISO shall terminate not more than five years from the date of the grant or at such earlier time as the Option Agreement may provide.
- (iv) Limitation on Yearly Exercise: The Option Agreements shall restrict the amount of ISOs which may become exercisable in any calendar year (under this or any other ISO plan of the Company or an Affiliate) so that the aggregate Fair Market Value (determined on the date each ISO is granted) of the stock with respect to which ISOs are exercisable for the first time by the Participant in any calendar year does not exceed \$100,000.

7. TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF STOCK GRANTS.

Each Stock Grant to a Participant shall state the principal terms in an Agreement duly executed by the Company and, to the extent required by law or requested by the Company, by the Participant. The Agreement shall be in a form approved by the Administrator and shall contain terms and conditions which the Administrator determines to be appropriate and in the best interest of the Company, subject to the following minimum standards:

(a) Each Agreement shall state the purchase price per share, if any, of the Shares covered by each Stock Grant, which purchase price shall be determined by the Administrator but shall not be less than the minimum consideration required by the Delaware General Corporation Law, if any, on the date of the grant of the Stock Grant;

(b) Each Agreement shall state the number of Shares to which the Stock Grant pertains; and

(c) Each Agreement shall include the terms of any right of the Company to restrict or reacquire the Shares subject to the Stock Grant, including the time and events upon which such rights shall accrue and the purchase price therefor, if any.

8. TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF OTHER STOCK-BASED AWARDS.

The Administrator shall have the right to grant other Stock-Based Awards based upon the Common Stock having such terms and conditions as the Administrator may determine, including, the grant of Shares based upon certain conditions, the grant of securities convertible into Shares and the grant of stock appreciation rights, phantom stock awards or stock units. The principal terms of each Stock-Based Award shall be set forth in an Agreement, duly executed by the Company and, to the extent required by law or requested by the Company, by the Participant. The Agreement shall be in a form approved by the Administrator and shall contain terms and conditions which the Administrator determines to be appropriate and in the best interest of the Company.

The Company intends that the Plan and any Stock-Based Awards granted hereunder be exempt from the application of Section 409A of the Code or meet the requirements of paragraphs (2), (3) and (4) of subsection (a) of Section 409A of the Code, to the extent applicable, and be operated in accordance with Section 409A so that any compensation deferred under any Stock-Based Award (and applicable investment earnings) shall not be included in income under Section 409A of the Code. Any ambiguities in the Plan shall be construed to affect the intent as described in this Paragraph 8.

9. EXERCISE OF OPTIONS AND ISSUE OF SHARES.

An Option (or any part or installment thereof) shall be exercised by giving written notice to the Company or its designee (in a form acceptable to the Administrator, which may include electronic notice), together with provision for payment of the aggregate exercise price in accordance with this Paragraph for the Shares as to which the Option is being exercised, and upon compliance with any other condition(s) set forth in the Option Agreement. Such notice shall be signed by the person exercising the Option (which signature may be provided electronically in a form acceptable to the Administrator), shall state the number of Shares with respect to which the Option is being exercised and shall contain any representation required by the Plan or the Option Agreement. Payment of the exercise price for the Shares as to which such Option is being exercised shall be made (a) in United States dollars in cash or by check, or (b) at the discretion of the Administrator, through delivery of shares of Common Stock held for at least six months (if required to avoid negative accounting treatment) having a Fair Market Value equal as of the date of the exercise to the aggregate cash exercise price for the number of Shares as to which the Option is being exercised, or (c) at the discretion of the Administrator, by having the Company retain from the Shares otherwise issuable upon exercise of the Option, a number of Shares having a Fair Market Value equal as of the date of exercise to the aggregate exercise price for the number of Shares as to which the Option is being exercised, or (d) at the discretion of the Administrator, in accordance with a cashless exercise program established with a securities brokerage firm, and approved by the Administrator, or (e) at the discretion of the Administrator, by any combination of (a), (b), (c), and (d) above or (f) at the discretion of the Administrator, by payment of such other lawful consideration as the Administrator may determine. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Administrator shall accept only such payment on exercise of an ISO as is permitted by Section 422 of the Code.

The Company shall then reasonably promptly deliver the Shares as to which such Option was exercised to the Participant (or to the Participant's Survivors, as the case may be). In determining what constitutes "reasonably promptly," it is expressly understood that the issuance and delivery of the Shares may be delayed by the Company in order to comply with any law or regulation (including, without limitation, state securities or "blue sky" laws) which requires the Company to take any action with respect to the Shares prior to their issuance. The Shares shall, upon delivery, be fully paid, non-assessable Shares.

10. PAYMENT IN CONNECTION WITH THE ISSUANCE OF STOCK GRANTS AND STOCK-BASED AWARDS AND ISSUE OF SHARES.

Any Stock Grant or Stock-Based Award requiring payment of a purchase price for the Shares as to which such Stock Grant or Stock-Based Award is being granted shall be made (a) in United States dollars in cash or by check, or (b) at the discretion of the Administrator, through delivery of shares of Common Stock held for at least six months (if required to avoid negative accounting treatment) and<sup>2</sup> having a Fair Market Value equal as of the date of payment to the purchase price of the Stock Grant or Stock-Based Award, or (c) at the discretion of the Administrator, by any combination of (a) and (b) above; or (d) at the discretion of the Administrator, by payment of such other lawful consideration as the Administrator may determine.

The Company shall when required by the applicable Agreement, reasonably promptly deliver the Shares as to which such Stock Grant or Stock-Based Award was made to the Participant (or to the Participant's Survivors, as the case may be), subject to any escrow provision set forth in the applicable Agreement. In determining what constitutes "reasonably promptly," it is expressly understood that the issuance and delivery of the Shares may be delayed by the Company in order to comply with any law or regulation (including, without limitation, state securities or "blue sky" laws) which requires the Company to take any action with respect to the Shares prior to their issuance.

---

<sup>2</sup> If an employee uses previously owned shares to pay for a stock purchase and those shares have not been held by the employee for at least six months, the company will incur a variable accounting charge.

11. RIGHTS AS A SHAREHOLDER.

No Participant to whom a Stock Right has been granted shall have rights as a shareholder with respect to any Shares covered by such Stock Right except after due exercise of an Option or issuance of Shares as set forth in any Agreement, tender of the aggregate exercise or purchase price, if any, for the Shares being purchased and registration of the Shares in the Company's share register in the name of the Participant.

12. ASSIGNABILITY AND TRANSFERABILITY OF STOCK RIGHTS.

By its terms, a Stock Right granted to a Participant shall not be transferable by the Participant other than (i) by will or by the laws of descent and distribution, or (ii) as approved by the Administrator in its discretion and set forth in the applicable Agreement provided that no Stock Right may be transferred by a Participant for value. Notwithstanding the foregoing, an ISO transferred except in compliance with clause (i) above shall no longer qualify as an ISO. The designation of a beneficiary of a Stock Right by a Participant, with the prior approval of the Administrator and in such form as the Administrator shall prescribe, shall not be deemed a transfer prohibited by this Paragraph. Except as provided above during the Participant's lifetime a Stock Right shall only be exercisable by or issued to such Participant (or his or her legal representative) and shall not be assigned, pledged or hypothecated in any way (whether by operation of law or otherwise) and shall not be subject to execution, attachment or similar process. Any attempted transfer, assignment, pledge, hypothecation or other disposition of any Stock Right or of any rights granted thereunder contrary to the provisions of this Plan, or the levy of any attachment or similar process upon a Stock Right, shall be null and void.

13. EFFECT ON OPTIONS OF TERMINATION OF SERVICE OTHER THAN FOR CAUSE OR DEATH OR DISABILITY.

Except as otherwise provided in a Participant's Option Agreement, in the event of a termination of service (whether as an Employee, director or Consultant) with the Company or an Affiliate before the Participant has exercised an Option, the following rules apply:

(a) A Participant who ceases to be an Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or of an Affiliate (for any reason other than termination for Cause, Disability, or death for which events there are special rules in Paragraphs 14, 15, and 16, respectively), may exercise any Option granted to him or her to the extent that the Option is exercisable on the date of such termination of service, but only within such term as the Administrator has designated in a Participant's Option Agreement and in no event later than eighteen months after the Participant's termination of employment. In addition, the Administrator may extend the period in which the Participant is eligible to exercise any vested Options but in no event may an Option be exercised later than eighteen months after the Participant's termination of employment,

(b) Except as provided in Subparagraph (c) below, or Paragraph 15 or 16, in no event may an Option intended to be an ISO, be exercised later than three months after the Participant's termination of employment.

(c) The provisions of this Paragraph, and not the provisions of Paragraph 15 or 16, shall apply to a Participant who subsequently becomes Disabled or dies after the termination of employment, director status or consultancy; provided, however, in the case of a Participant's Disability or death within three months after the termination of employment, director status or consultancy, the Participant or the Participant's Survivors may exercise the Option within eighteen months after the date of the Participant's termination of service or twelve months in the case of an ISO, but in no event after the date of expiration of the term of the Option.

(d) Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, if subsequent to a Participant's termination of employment, termination of director status or termination of consultancy, but prior to the exercise of an Option, the Administrator determines that, either prior or subsequent to the Participant's termination, the Participant engaged in conduct which would constitute Cause, then such Participant shall forthwith cease to have any right to exercise any Option.

(e) A Participant to whom an Option has been granted under the Plan who is absent from the Company or an Affiliate because of temporary disability (any disability other than a Disability as defined in Paragraph 1 hereof), or who is on leave of absence for any purpose, shall not, during the period of any such absence, be deemed, by virtue of such absence alone, to have terminated such Participant's employment, director status or consultancy with the Company or with an Affiliate, except as the Administrator may otherwise expressly provide; provided, however, that, for ISOs, any leave of absence granted by the Administrator of greater than ninety days, unless pursuant to a contract or statute that guarantees the right to reemployment, shall cause such ISO to become a Non-Qualified Option on the 181<sup>st</sup> day following such leave of absence.

(f) Except as required by law or as set forth in a Participant's Option Agreement, Options granted under the Plan shall not be affected by any change of a Participant's status within or among the Company and any Affiliates, so long as the Participant continues to be an Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or any Affiliate.

#### 14. EFFECT ON OPTIONS OF TERMINATION OF SERVICE FOR CAUSE.

Except as otherwise provided in a Participant's Option Agreement, the following rules apply if the Participant's service (whether as an Employee, director or Consultant) with the Company or an Affiliate is terminated for Cause prior to the time that all his or her outstanding Options have been exercised:

(a) All outstanding and unexercised Options as of the time the Participant is notified his or her service is terminated for Cause will immediately be forfeited.

(b) Cause is not limited to events which have occurred prior to a Participant's termination of service, nor is it necessary that the Administrator's finding of Cause occur prior to termination. If the Administrator determines, subsequent to a Participant's termination of service but prior to the exercise of an Option, that either prior or subsequent to the Participant's termination the Participant engaged in conduct which would constitute Cause, then the right to exercise any Option is forfeited.

15. EFFECT ON OPTIONS OF TERMINATION OF SERVICE FOR DISABILITY.

Except as otherwise provided in a Participant's Option Agreement:

(a) A Participant who ceases to be an Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or of an Affiliate by reason of Disability may exercise any Option granted to such Participant:

- (i) To the extent that the Option has become exercisable but has not been exercised on the date of the Participant's termination of service due to Disability; and
- (ii) In the event rights to exercise the Option accrue periodically, to the extent of a pro rata portion through the date of the Participant's termination of service due to Disability of any additional vesting rights that would have accrued on the next vesting date had the Participant not become Disabled. The proration shall be based upon the number of days accrued in the current vesting period prior to the date of the Participant's termination of service due to Disability.

(b) A Disabled Participant may exercise the Option only within the period ending one year after the date of the Participant's termination of service due to Disability, notwithstanding that the Participant might have been able to exercise the Option as to some or all of the Shares on a later date if the Participant had not been terminated due to Disability and had continued to be an Employee, director or Consultant or, if earlier, within the originally prescribed term of the Option.

(c) The Administrator shall make the determination both of whether Disability has occurred and the date of its occurrence (unless a procedure for such determination is set forth in another agreement between the Company and such Participant, in which case such procedure shall be used for such determination). If requested, the Participant shall be examined by a physician selected or approved by the Administrator, the cost of which examination shall be paid for by the Company.

16. EFFECT ON OPTIONS OF DEATH WHILE AN EMPLOYEE, DIRECTOR OR CONSULTANT.

Except as otherwise provided in a Participant's Option Agreement:

(a) In the event of the death of a Participant while the Participant is an Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or of an Affiliate, such Option may be exercised by the Participant's Survivors:

- (i) To the extent that the Option has become exercisable but has not been exercised on the date of death; and

(ii) In the event rights to exercise the Option accrue periodically, to the extent of a pro rata portion through the date of death of any additional vesting rights that would have accrued on the next vesting date had the Participant not died. The proration shall be based upon the number of days accrued in the current vesting period prior to the Participant's date of death.

(b) If the Participant's Survivors wish to exercise the Option, they must take all necessary steps to exercise the Option within one year after the date of death of such Participant, notwithstanding that the decedent might have been able to exercise the Option as to some or all of the Shares on a later date if he or she had not died and had continued to be an Employee, director or Consultant or, if earlier, within the originally prescribed term of the Option.

17. EFFECT OF TERMINATION OF SERVICE ON STOCK GRANTS AND STOCK-BASED AWARDS.

In the event of a termination of service (whether as an Employee, director or Consultant) with the Company or an Affiliate for any reason before the Participant has accepted a Stock Grant or a Stock-Based Award and paid the purchase price, if required, such grant shall terminate.

For purposes of this Paragraph 17 and Paragraph 18 below, a Participant to whom a Stock Grant has been issued under the Plan who is absent from work with the Company or with an Affiliate because of temporary disability (any disability other than a Disability as defined in Paragraph 1 hereof), or who is on leave of absence for any purpose, shall not, during the period of any such absence, be deemed, by virtue of such absence alone, to have terminated such Participant's employment, director status or consultancy with the Company or with an Affiliate, except as the Administrator may otherwise expressly provide.

In addition, for purposes of this Paragraph 17 and Paragraph 18 below, any change of employment or other service within or among the Company and any Affiliates shall not be treated as a termination of employment, director status or consultancy so long as the Participant continues to be an Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or any Affiliate.

18. EFFECT ON STOCK GRANTS OF TERMINATION OF SERVICE OTHER THAN FOR CAUSE OR DEATH OR DISABILITY.

Except as otherwise provided in a Participant's Stock Grant Agreement, in the event of a termination of service (whether as an Employee, director or Consultant), other than termination for Cause, Disability, or death for which events there are special rules in Paragraphs 19, 20, and 21, respectively, before all forfeiture provisions or Company rights of repurchase shall have lapsed, then the Company shall have the right to cancel or repurchase that number of Shares subject to a Stock Grant as to which the Company's forfeiture or repurchase rights have not lapsed.



19. EFFECT ON STOCK GRANTS OF TERMINATION OF SERVICE FOR CAUSE.

Except as otherwise provided in a Participant's Stock Grant Agreement, the following rules apply if the Participant's service (whether as an Employee, director or Consultant) with the Company or an Affiliate is terminated for Cause:

(a) All Shares subject to any Stock Grant whether or not then subject to forfeiture or repurchase shall be immediately subject to repurchase by the Company at par value.

(b) Cause is not limited to events which have occurred prior to a Participant's termination of service, nor is it necessary that the Administrator's finding of Cause occur prior to termination. If the Administrator determines, subsequent to a Participant's termination of service, that either prior or subsequent to the Participant's termination the Participant engaged in conduct which would constitute Cause, then all Shares subject to any Stock Grant that remained subject to forfeiture provisions or as to which the Company had a repurchase right on the date of termination shall be immediately forfeited to the Company.

20. EFFECT ON STOCK GRANTS OF TERMINATION OF SERVICE FOR DISABILITY.

Except as otherwise provided in a Participant's Stock Grant Agreement, the following rules apply if a Participant ceases to be an Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or of an Affiliate by reason of Disability: to the extent the forfeiture provisions or the Company's rights of repurchase have not lapsed on the date of Disability, they shall be exercisable; provided, however, that in the event such forfeiture provisions or rights of repurchase lapse periodically, such provisions or rights shall lapse to the extent of a pro rata portion of the Shares subject to such Stock Grant through the date of Disability as would have lapsed had the Participant not become Disabled. The proration shall be based upon the number of days accrued prior to the date of Disability.

The Administrator shall make the determination both as to whether Disability has occurred and the date of its occurrence (unless a procedure for such determination is set forth in another agreement between the Company and such Participant, in which case such procedure shall be used for such determination). If requested, the Participant shall be examined by a physician selected or approved by the Administrator, the cost of which examination shall be paid for by the Company.

21. EFFECT ON STOCK GRANTS OF DEATH WHILE AN EMPLOYEE, DIRECTOR OR CONSULTANT.

Except as otherwise provided in a Participant's Stock Grant Agreement, the following rules apply in the event of the death of a Participant while the Participant is an Employee, director or Consultant of the Company or of an Affiliate: to the extent the forfeiture provisions or the Company's rights of repurchase have not lapsed on the date of death, they shall be exercisable; provided, however, that in the event such forfeiture provisions or rights of repurchase lapse periodically, such provisions or rights shall lapse to the extent of a pro rata portion of the Shares subject to such Stock Grant through the date of death as would have lapsed had the Participant not died. The proration shall be based upon the number of days accrued prior to the Participant's date of death.

22. PURCHASE FOR INVESTMENT.

Unless the offering and sale of the Shares shall have been effectively registered under the Securities Act, the Company shall be under no obligation to issue Shares under the Plan unless and until the following conditions have been fulfilled:

(a) The person who receives a Stock Right shall warrant to the Company, prior to the receipt of Shares, that such person is acquiring such Shares for his or her own account, for investment, and not with a view to, or for sale in connection with, the distribution of any such Shares, in which event the person acquiring such Shares shall be bound by the provisions of the following legend (or a legend in substantially similar form) which shall be endorsed upon the certificate evidencing the Shares issued pursuant to such exercise or such grant:

“The shares represented by this certificate have been taken for investment and they may not be sold or otherwise transferred by any person, including a pledgee, unless (1) either (a) a Registration Statement with respect to such shares shall be effective under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or (b) the Company shall have received an opinion of counsel satisfactory to it that an exemption from registration under such Act is then available, and (2) there shall have been compliance with all applicable state securities laws.”

(b) At the discretion of the Administrator, the Company shall have received an opinion of its counsel that the Shares may be issued in compliance with the Securities Act without registration thereunder.

23. DISSOLUTION OR LIQUIDATION OF THE COMPANY.

Upon the dissolution or liquidation of the Company, all Options granted under this Plan which as of such date shall not have been exercised and all Stock Grants and Stock-Based Awards which have not been accepted, to the extent required under the applicable Agreement, will terminate and become null and void; provided, however, that if the rights of a Participant or a Participant’s Survivors have not otherwise terminated and expired, the Participant or the Participant’s Survivors will have the right immediately prior to such dissolution or liquidation to exercise or accept any Stock Right to the extent that the Stock Right is exercisable or subject to acceptance as of the date immediately prior to such dissolution or liquidation. Upon the dissolution or liquidation of the Company, any outstanding Stock-Based Awards shall immediately terminate unless otherwise determined by the Administrator or specifically provided in the applicable Agreement.

24. ADJUSTMENTS.

Upon the occurrence of any of the following events, a Participant's rights with respect to any Stock Right granted to him or her hereunder shall be adjusted as hereinafter provided, unless otherwise specifically provided in a Participant's Agreement:

(a) Stock Dividends and Stock Splits. If (i) the shares of Common Stock shall be subdivided or combined into a greater or smaller number of shares or if the Company shall issue any shares of Common Stock as a stock dividend on its outstanding Common Stock, or (ii) additional shares or new or different shares or other securities of the Company or other non-cash assets are distributed with respect to such shares of Common Stock, each Stock Right and the number of shares of Common Stock deliverable thereunder shall be appropriately increased or decreased proportionately, and appropriate adjustments shall be made including, in the exercise or purchase price per share, to reflect such events. The number of Shares subject to the limitations in Paragraph 3(a) and 4(c) shall also be proportionately adjusted upon the occurrence of such events.

(b) Corporate Transactions. If the Company is to be consolidated with or acquired by another entity in a merger, consolidation, or sale of all or substantially all of the Company's assets other than a transaction to merely change the state of incorporation (a "Corporate Transaction"), the Administrator or the board of directors of any entity assuming the obligations of the Company hereunder (the "Successor Board"), shall, as to outstanding Options, either (i) make appropriate provision for the continuation of such Options by substituting on an equitable basis for the Shares then subject to such Options either the consideration payable with respect to the outstanding shares of Common Stock in connection with the Corporate Transaction or securities of any successor or acquiring entity; or (ii) upon written notice to the Participants, provide that such Options must be exercised (either (A) to the extent then exercisable or, (B) at the discretion of the Administrator, any such Options being made partially or fully exercisable for purposes of this Subparagraph), within a specified number of days of the date of such notice, at the end of which period such vested Options which have not been exercised shall terminate; or (iii) terminate such Options in exchange for payment of an amount equal to the consideration payable upon consummation of such Corporate Transaction to a holder of the number of shares of Common Stock into which such Option would have been exercisable (either (A) to the extent then exercisable or, (B) at the discretion of the Administrator, any such Options being made partially or fully exercisable for purposes of this Subparagraph) less the aggregate exercise price thereof. For purposes of determining the payments to be made pursuant to Subclause (iii) above, in the case of a Corporate Transaction the consideration for which, in whole or in part, is other than cash, the consideration other than cash shall be valued at the fair value thereof as determined in good faith by the Board of Directors.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, in the event the Corporate Transaction also constitutes a Change of Control, then all Options outstanding on the date of the Corporate Transaction shall have vesting acceleration until the next vesting date, unless otherwise agreed upon with the Administrator.

With respect to outstanding Stock Grants, the Administrator or the Successor Board, shall make appropriate provision for the continuation of such Stock Grants on the same terms and conditions by substituting on an equitable basis for the Shares then subject to such Stock Grants either the consideration payable with respect to the outstanding Shares of Common Stock in connection with the Corporate Transaction or securities of any successor or acquiring entity. In lieu of the foregoing, in connection with any Corporate Transaction, the Administrator may provide that, upon consummation of the Corporate Transaction, each outstanding Stock Grant shall be terminated in exchange for payment of an amount equal to the consideration payable upon consummation of such Corporate Transaction to a holder of the number of shares of Common Stock comprising such Stock Grant (to the extent such Stock Grant is no longer subject to any forfeiture or repurchase rights then in effect or, at the discretion of the Administrator, all forfeiture and repurchase rights being waived upon such Corporate Transaction).

In taking any of the actions permitted under this Paragraph 24(b), the Administrator shall not be obligated by the Plan to treat all Stock Rights, all Stock Rights held by a Participant, or all Stock Rights of the same type, identically.

(c) Recapitalization or Reorganization. In the event of a recapitalization or reorganization of the Company other than a Corporate Transaction pursuant to which securities of the Company or of another corporation are issued with respect to the outstanding shares of Common Stock, a Participant upon exercising an Option or accepting a Stock Grant after the recapitalization or reorganization shall be entitled to receive for the price paid upon such exercise or acceptance if any, the number of replacement securities which would have been received if such Option had been exercised or Stock Grant accepted prior to such recapitalization or reorganization.

(d) Adjustments to Stock-Based Awards. Upon the happening of any of the events described in Subparagraphs (a), (b) or (c) above, any outstanding Stock-Based Award shall be appropriately adjusted to reflect the events described in such Subparagraphs. The Administrator or the Successor Board shall determine the specific adjustments to be made under this Paragraph 24, including, but not limited to the effect of any, Corporate Transaction and Change of Control and, subject to Paragraph 4, its determination shall be conclusive.

(e) Modification of Options. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any adjustments made pursuant to Subparagraph (a), (b) or (c) above with respect to Options shall be made only after the Administrator determines whether such adjustments would (i) constitute a "modification" of any ISOs (as that term is defined in Section 424(h) of the Code) or (ii) cause any adverse tax consequences for the holders of Options, including, but not limited to, pursuant to Section 409A of the Code. If the Administrator determines that such adjustments made with respect to Options would constitute a modification or other adverse tax consequence, it may refrain from making such adjustments, unless the holder of an Option specifically agrees in writing that such adjustment be made and such writing indicates that the holder has full knowledge of the consequences of such "modification" on his or her income tax treatment with respect to the Option. This paragraph shall not apply to the acceleration of the vesting of any ISO that would cause any portion of the ISO to violate the annual vesting limitation contained in Section 422(d) of the Code, as described in Paragraph 6(b)(iv).

25. ISSUANCES OF SECURITIES.

Except as expressly provided herein, no issuance by the Company of shares of stock of any class, or securities convertible into shares of stock of any class, shall affect, and no adjustment by reason thereof shall be made with respect to, the number or price of shares subject to Stock Rights. Except as expressly provided herein, no adjustments shall be made for dividends paid in cash or in property (including without limitation, securities) of the Company prior to any issuance of Shares pursuant to a Stock Right.

26. FRACTIONAL SHARES.

No fractional shares shall be issued under the Plan and the person exercising a Stock Right shall receive from the Company cash in lieu of such fractional shares equal to the Fair Market Value thereof.

27. CONVERSION OF ISOs INTO NON-QUALIFIED OPTIONS; TERMINATION OF ISOs.

The Administrator, at the written request of any Participant, may in its discretion take such actions as may be necessary to convert such Participant's ISOs (or any portions thereof) that have not been exercised on the date of conversion into Non-Qualified Options at any time prior to the expiration of such ISOs, regardless of whether the Participant is an Employee of the Company or an Affiliate at the time of such conversion. At the time of such conversion, the Administrator (with the consent of the Participant) may impose such conditions on the exercise of the resulting Non-Qualified Options as the Administrator in its discretion may determine, provided that such conditions shall not be inconsistent with this Plan. Nothing in the Plan shall be deemed to give any Participant the right to have such Participant's ISOs converted into Non-Qualified Options, and no such conversion shall occur until and unless the Administrator takes appropriate action. The Administrator, with the consent of the Participant, may also terminate any portion of any ISO that has not been exercised at the time of such conversion.

28. WITHHOLDING.

In the event that any federal, state, or local income taxes, employment taxes, Federal Insurance Contributions Act ("F.I.C.A.") withholdings or other amounts are required by applicable law or governmental regulation to be withheld from the Participant's salary, wages or other remuneration in connection with the issuance of a Stock Right or Shares under the Plan or for any other reason required by law, the Company may withhold from the Participant's compensation, if any, or may require that the Participant advance in cash to the Company, or to any Affiliate of the Company which employs or employed the Participant, the statutory minimum amount of such withholdings unless a different withholding arrangement, including the use of shares of the Company's Common Stock or a promissory note, is authorized by the Administrator (and permitted by law). For purposes hereof, the fair market value of the shares withheld for purposes of payroll withholding shall be determined in the manner set forth under the definition of Fair Market Value provided in Paragraph 1 above, as of the most recent practicable date prior to the date of exercise. If the Fair Market Value of the shares withheld is less than the amount of payroll withholdings required, the Participant may be required to advance the difference in cash to the Company or the Affiliate employer. The Administrator in its discretion may condition the exercise of an Option for less than the then Fair Market Value on the Participant's payment of such additional withholding.

29. NOTICE TO COMPANY OF DISQUALIFYING DISPOSITION.

Each Employee who receives an ISO must agree to notify the Company in writing immediately after the Employee makes a Disqualifying Disposition of any Shares acquired pursuant to the exercise of an ISO. A Disqualifying Disposition is defined in Section 424(c) of the Code and includes any disposition (including any sale or gift) of such Shares before the later of (a) two years after the date the Employee was granted the ISO, or (b) one year after the date the Employee acquired Shares by exercising the ISO, except as otherwise provided in Section 424(c) of the Code. If the Employee has died before such Shares are sold, these holding period requirements do not apply and no Disqualifying Disposition can occur thereafter.

30. TERMINATION OF THE PLAN.

The Plan will terminate on the date which is ten years from the earlier of the date of its adoption by the Board of Directors and the date of its approval by the shareholders of the Company. The Plan may be terminated at an earlier date by vote of the shareholders or the Board of Directors of the Company; provided, however, that any such earlier termination shall not affect any Agreements executed prior to the effective date of such termination. Termination of the Plan shall not affect any Stock Rights theretofore granted.

31. AMENDMENT OF THE PLAN AND AGREEMENTS.

The Plan may be amended by the shareholders of the Company. The Plan may also be amended by the Administrator, including, without limitation, to the extent necessary to qualify any or all outstanding Stock Rights granted under the Plan or Stock Rights to be granted under the Plan for favorable federal income tax treatment as may be afforded incentive stock options under Section 422 of the Code (including deferral of taxation upon exercise), and to the extent necessary to qualify the Shares issuable under the Plan for listing on any national securities exchange or quotation in any national automated quotation system of securities dealers. In addition, if NYSE Amex amends its corporate governance rules so that such rules no longer require stockholder approval of "material amendments" of equity compensation plans, then, from and after the effective date of such an amendment to such rules, no amendment of the Plan which (i) materially increases the number of shares to be issued under the Plan (other than to reflect a reorganization, stock split, merger, spin-off or similar transaction); (ii) materially increases the benefits to Participants, including any material change to: (a) permit a repricing (or decrease in exercise price) of outstanding Options, (b) reduce the price at which Shares or Options may be offered, or (c) extend the duration of the Plan; (iii) materially expands the class of Participants eligible to participate in the Plan; or (iv) expands the types of awards provided under the Plan shall become effective unless stockholder approval is obtained. Any amendment approved by the Administrator which the Administrator determines is of a scope that requires shareholder approval shall be subject to obtaining such shareholder approval. Any modification or amendment of the Plan shall not, without the consent of a Participant, adversely affect his or her rights under a Stock Right previously granted to him or her. With the consent of the Participant affected, the Administrator may amend outstanding Agreements in a manner which may be adverse to the Participant but which is not inconsistent with the Plan. In the discretion of the Administrator, outstanding Agreements may be amended by the Administrator in a manner which is not adverse to the Participant.

32. EMPLOYMENT OR OTHER RELATIONSHIP.

Nothing in this Plan or any Agreement shall be deemed to prevent the Company or an Affiliate from terminating the employment, consultancy or director status of a Participant, nor to prevent a Participant from terminating his or her own employment, consultancy or director status or to give any Participant a right to be retained in employment or other service by the Company or any Affiliate for any period of time.

33. GOVERNING LAW.

This Plan shall be construed and enforced in accordance with the law of the State of Delaware.

VRINGO, INC.

2012 EMPLOYEE, DIRECTOR AND CONSULTANT EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN

APPENDIX A– ISRAEL

1. NAME AND EFFECTIVE DATE

1.1 This Appendix A (the “**Appendix**”) to the Vringo, Inc. 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan (the “**Plan**”) shall apply only to individuals who are granted Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options who are residents of the State of Israel for tax purposes, or are otherwise subject to taxation in Israel with respect to Options.

1.2 This Appendix shall be effective as of September 12, 2012.

2. PURPOSE

2.1 This Appendix applies to Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options granted to Israeli Participants under the Plan and such Stock Grants, Stock Rights and Options shall comply with Amendment no. 132 of the Israeli Tax Ordinance which is effective with respect to Options granted as of January 1, 2003 and may or may not contain such terms as will qualify such options for the special tax treatment under Section 102(b) of the Ordinance and the Rules (“**102 Options**”).

2.2 The purpose of this Appendix is to establish certain rules and limitations applicable to Stock Grants, Stock Rights and Options that may be granted under the Plan from time to time, in compliance with securities and other applicable laws currently in force in the State of Israel. Except as otherwise provided by this Appendix, all grants made pursuant to this Appendix shall be governed by the terms of the Plan.

3. DEFINITIONS

3.1 Capitalized Terms not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings assigned in the Plan. The following additional terms will apply to grants made pursuant to this Appendix:

“**3(i) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option**” means a Stock Grants, Stock Rights or an Option granted under the terms of Section 3(i) of the Ordinance to persons which do not qualify as “employees” under the provisions of Section 102.

“**102(b) Track Election**” means the right of the Company to prefer either the “Capital Track” (as set under Section 102(b)(2)), or the “Ordinary Income Track” (as set under Section 102(b)(1)), but subject to the provisions of Section 102(g) of the Ordinance.



“**102(b)** Stock Grant, Stock Right or an **Option**” means a Stock Grant, Stock Right or an Option intended to qualify, under the provisions of Section 102(b) of the Ordinance (including the Section 102(b) Choice of Track), as either:

- (i) “**102(b)(2) Option**” for the special tax treatments under the “Capital Track”, or
- (ii) “**102(b)(1) Option**” for the special tax treatments under the “Ordinary Income Track”.

“**Affiliate**” means any “employing company” within the meaning of Section 102 of the Ordinance which includes (i) any company which is a Controlling Person of the Company, or (ii) that the Company is a Controlling Person of such company, or (iii) that the Company and such company are controlled by the same Controlling Person, as such term may be amended from time to time.

“**Controlling Person**” shall have the meaning ascribed to such definition under Section 102 of the Ordinance, as may be amended from time to time.

“**Employee**” or “**employee**” for the purposes of Section 102 to the Ordinance shall mean a person who is employed by the Company or its Affiliates, including an officer and a director but excluding a Controlling Person, as such term may be amended from time to time under Section 102 of the Ordinance.

“**Fair Market Value**” Solely for the purpose of determining the tax liability pursuant to Section 102(b)(3) of the Ordinance, if at the date of grant the Company’s Shares are listed on any established stock exchange or a national market system or if the Company’s Shares will be registered for trading within ninety (90) days following the date of grant of the 102(b)(2) Option, the fair market value of the Shares at the date of grant shall be determined in accordance with the average value of the Company’s Shares on the thirty (30) trading days preceding the date of grant or on the thirty (30) trading days following the date of registration for trading, as the case may be. In all other cases Fair Market Value shall be as defined in the Plan.

“**Ordinance**” means the Israeli Income Tax Ordinance (New Version), 5721-1961, and the rules, regulations, orders or procedures promulgated thereunder and any amendments thereto, including specifically the Rules, all as may be amended from time to time.

“**Rights**” means rights issued or distributed in respect of Shares issued pursuant to exercise of Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options under the Appendix, including bonus shares but excluding cash dividends.

“**Rules**” means the Income Tax Rules (Tax Benefits in Share Issuances to Employees) 5763-2003.

“**Unapproved 102 Options**” means 102 Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options granted pursuant to Section 102(c) of the Ordinance and not held in trust by a Trustee.

4. DESIGNATION OF PARTICIPANTS

The persons eligible for participation under the Appendix as recipients of Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options shall include any Employees (including officers), directors and consultants of the Company or of any Affiliate of the Company who are residents of the State of Israel or those who are deemed to be residents of the State of Israel for the payment of tax. The grant of a Stock Grant, Stock Rights or Option hereunder shall neither entitle the recipient thereof to participate nor disqualify him from participating in, any other grant of Stock Grant, Stock Right or Options pursuant to the Appendix, the Plan or any other equity plan of the Company or any of its Affiliates. Notwithstanding the foregoing, no 102 Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options shall be granted to any individual who is not an Employee of the Company or of an Affiliate of the Company, or which otherwise does not qualify as an "employee" under Section 102(a) to the Ordinance. 3(i) Options may be granted only to non-Employees.

5. DESIGNATION OF OPTIONS PURSUANT TO SECTION 102

5.1 The Company may designate Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options granted to Employees pursuant to Section 102 of the Ordinance as Unapproved 102 Options or 102(b) Options.

5.2 The grant of 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options shall be made under this Appendix and shall be conditioned upon the approval of this Appendix by the Israeli Tax Authorities (the "ITA").

5.3 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options may either be classified as 102(b)(2) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options under the capital gain tax Track or 102(b)(1) Stock Grants, Stock or Options under the Ordinary Income Track.

5.4 The Company's election of the type of 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options as 102(b)(2) Stock Grants, Stock or Options or 102(b)(1) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options granted to Employees (the "**Election**"), shall be appropriately filed with the ITA before the date of grant of 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options. Such Election shall become effective beginning the first date of grant of 102(b) Option under this Appendix and shall remain in effect at least until the end of the year following the year during which the Company first granted 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options or such other period as shall be determined from time to time under Section 102 of the Ordinance and the Rules, regulation and orders promulgated thereunder. The Election shall obligate the Company to grant only the type of 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option it has elected, and shall apply to all Participants who were granted 102(b) Options during the period indicated herein, all in accordance with the provisions of Section 102(g) of the Ordinance. For the avoidance of doubt, such Election shall not prevent the Company from granting Unapproved 102 Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option simultaneously.

5.5 All 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options must be held in trust by a Trustee, as described in Section 6 below.

- 5.6 For the avoidance of doubt, the designation of Unapproved 102 Options and 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options shall be subject to the terms and conditions set forth in Section 102 of the Ordinance and Rules, regulations and orders promulgated thereunder.
- 5.7 With regards to 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options, the provisions of the Appendix and/or the Option Agreement shall be subject to the provisions of Section 102 of the Ordinance and the Tax Assessing Officer's permit, and the said provisions and permit shall be deemed an integral part of the Plan, the Appendix and of the Option Agreement. Any provision of Section 102 of the Ordinance and/or the said permit which is necessary in order to receive and/or to keep any tax benefit pursuant to Section 102 of the Ordinance, which is not expressly specified in the Plan, Appendix or the Option Agreement, shall be considered binding upon the Company and the Participants.
6. TRUSTEE
- 6.1 The 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options which shall be granted to Participants and/or any Shares issued upon exercise of such 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options and/or any other shares received subsequently following any realization of rights resulting from a 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option or Rights resulting from Shares issued upon exercise of a 102(b) Option, including without limitation bonus shares, shall be allocated or issued to a trustee nominated by the Board of Directors or the Administrator, as required by law, and approved in accordance with the provisions of Section 102 of the Ordinance (the "Trustee") for such period of time, at least the minimum period required by Section 102 or any regulations, rules or orders or procedures promulgated thereunder. The Board of Directors or the Administrator, as applicable, shall determine and approve the terms of engagement of the Trustee, and shall be authorized to designate from time to time a new Trustee and replace either of them at its sole discretion, and in the event of replacement of any existing Trustee, to instruct the transfer of all 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options and Shares held by such Trustee at such time to its successor. The Trustee will hold such 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options or Shares resulting from the exercise thereof in accordance with the provisions of the Ordinance and the Rules promulgated thereunder, the trust agreement and any other instructions the Board of Directors or the Administrator, as applicable, may issue to him/it from time to time (so long as they do not contradict the Ordinance and the Rules promulgated thereunder). Thereafter, the Trustee will transfer the 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options or the Shares, as the case may be, to the Participants upon his/her demand, subject to any deduction or withholding of taxes required under the Ordinance, the Rules or any other applicable law. In the case the requirements for Approved 102 Options are not met, then the Approved 102 Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options may be regarded as Unapproved 102 Options, all in accordance with the provisions of Section 102.
- 6.2 Anything to the contrary notwithstanding, the Trustee shall not release any 102(b) Options which were not already exercised into Shares by the Participant or release any Shares issued upon exercise of such 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options prior to the full payment of the Participant's tax liabilities arising from such 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options which were granted to him and/or any Shares issued upon exercise of such 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options.

- 6.3 Upon receipt of a 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option, the Participant will sign the Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option Agreement or an applicable option award which shall be deemed as the Participant's undertaking to exempt the Trustee from any liability in respect of any action or decision duly taken and bona fide executed in relation with the Plan and the Appendix, or any 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option or Share granted to him thereunder.
- 6.4 Subject to applicable law, the Board of Directors or the Administrator shall be entitled to revise, amend or replace the terms of the trust agreement with the Trustee, to the extent that same (i) do not adversely affect any rights of a Participant under any valid and outstanding 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option, which are expressly provided for in this Appendix or the respective Option Agreement with such Participant, or is (ii) necessary or desirable in the light of any change or replacement of Section 102 of the Ordinance.
- 6.5 Any and all Rights with respect to a 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option shall be issued or distributed, as the case may be, to the Trustee and held thereby. Such Rights will not be sold or transferred until the lapse of the minimum period permitted by applicable law, and such Rights shall be subject to the taxation track which is applicable to such Shares issued pursuant to the exercise of a 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option hereunder. Notwithstanding the aforesaid, Shares issued pursuant to the exercise of 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options hereunder or Rights may be sold or transferred, and the Trustee may release such Shares issued pursuant to the exercise of 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options hereunder (or the applicable option award) or Rights from trust, prior to the lapse of the transferred until the lapse of the minimum period permitted by applicable law.
- 6.6 During the period in which Shares, issued to the Trustee on behalf of a Participant upon exercise of a 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option, are held by the Trustee, the cash dividends paid with respect thereto shall be paid directly to the Participant; all subject to the provisions of applicable law including in particular the provisions of Section 102 and the rules, regulations or orders promulgated thereunder and Section 6.2 above.
- 6.7 As long as Shares are held by the Trustee in favor of the Participant, then all rights the last possesses over the Shares are personal, cannot be transferred, assigned, pledged or mortgaged, other than by will or laws of descent and distribution.

7. SHARES RESERVED FOR THE PLAN; RESTRICTION THEREON

7.1 Each Stock Grant, Stock Right or Option granted pursuant to this Appendix, shall be evidenced by an Option Agreement between the Company and the Participant, in such form as the Board of Directors or the Administrator, as applicable, shall from time to time approve. Each Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option Agreement shall state a number of the Shares to which the Option relates and the type of Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option granted thereunder (whether a 102(b)(1) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option, 102(b)(2) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option, Other 102 Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option, or a 3(i) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option, the purchase price per Share and the vesting schedule to which such Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option shall become exercisable. Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options may be granted at any time after this Appendix has been approved by the Company, subject to any further approval or consent required under Section 102 of the Ordinance or the Rules, in case of 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options, and other applicable law.

7.3 Each Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option Agreement evidencing 102(b) Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options shall include (i) an approval and acknowledgment by the Participant of the agreement of the Company with the Trustee (as may be amended from time to time), (ii) a declaration that the Participant is familiar with the provisions of Section 102 and the "Capital Track" (if applicable) and (iii) an undertaking not to sell or transfer the Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options and/or the Shares issued pursuant to the exercise of Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options prior to the lapse of the period in which the Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options and/or such Shares are held in trust, unless the Participant pays all taxes, which may arise in connection with such sale and/or transfer (as provided in Section 6.5 above).

8. AMENDMENTS OR TERMINATION

8.1 The Board of Directors or the Administrator, as required by law, may, at any time and from time to time, amend, alter or discontinue this Appendix, except that no amendment or alteration shall be made which would impair the rights of the holder of any share and/or Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option granted, if and to the extent such rights are specifically set forth under the applicable Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option Agreement, without such Participant's written consent.

9. GOVERNMENT REGULATION

This Appendix and the granting and exercise of Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options hereunder, and the obligation of the Company to sell and deliver Shares under such Options, shall be subject to all applicable laws, rules and regulations of the State of Israel and of the United States, if applicable, and to such approvals by any governmental agencies as may be required.

10. CONTINUANCE OF EMPLOYMENT OR HIRED SERVICES

Neither the Plan nor the Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option Agreement with the Participant shall impose any obligation on the Company or an Affiliate thereof, to continue any Participant in its employ, or the hiring by the Company of the Participant's services and nothing in the Plan or in any Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option granted pursuant thereto shall confer upon any Participant any right to continue in the employ or service of the Company or an Affiliate thereof or restrict the right of the Company or an Affiliate thereof to terminate such employment or service hiring at any time.

11. TAX CONSEQUENCES

- 11.1 To the extent permitted by applicable law, any tax consequences arising from the grant or exercise of any Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option, from the payment for Shares covered thereby or from any other event or act (of the Company, its Affiliates, the Trustee or the Participant), hereunder, shall be borne solely by the Participant. The Company and/or the Trustee (where applicable) shall withhold taxes according to the requirements under the applicable laws, rules, and regulations, including the withholding of taxes at source. Furthermore, the Participant shall agree to indemnify the Company and the Trustee (where applicable) and hold them harmless against and from any and all liability for any such tax or interest or penalty thereon, including without limitation, liabilities relating to the necessity to withhold, or to have withheld, any such tax from any payment made to the Participant.
- 11.2 The Board of Directors, the Administrator and/or the Trustee shall not be required to release any Share certificate, issued upon exercise of Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Option, to a Participant, until all required payments have been fully made.
- 11.3 Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, this Appendix shall be governed by the provisions of the Ordinance, the rules promulgated thereunder, and any other applicable Israeli laws.
- 11.4 Following the grant of Stock Grants, Stock Rights or Options under this Appendix and in any case in which the Participant shall stop being considered as an "Israeli Resident", as defined in the Ordinance, the Company may, if and to the extent the Ordinance and/or the rules promulgated thereunder shall impose such obligation on the Company, to withhold all applicable taxes from the Participant, to remit the amount withheld to the appropriate Israeli tax authorities and to report to such Participant the amount so withheld and paid to said tax authorities.

\* \* \*

**VRINGO, INC.**  
**780 THIRD AVENUE**  
**12TH FLOOR**  
**NEW YORK, NY 10017**

**VOTE BY INTERNET - [www.proxyvote.com](http://www.proxyvote.com)**

Use the Internet to transmit your voting instructions and for electronic delivery of information up until 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time the day before the cut-off date or meeting date. Have your proxy card in hand when you access the web site and follow the instructions to obtain your records and to create an electronic voting instruction form.

**ELECTRONIC DELIVERY OF FUTURE PROXY MATERIALS**

If you would like to reduce the costs incurred by our company in mailing proxy materials, you can consent to receiving all future proxy statements, proxy cards and annual reports electronically via e-mail or the Internet. To sign up for electronic delivery, please follow the instructions above to vote using the Internet and, when prompted, indicate that you agree to receive or access proxy materials electronically in future years.

**VOTE BY PHONE - 1-800-690-6903**

Use any touch-tone telephone to transmit your voting instructions up until 11:59 p.m. Eastern Time the day before the cut-off date or meeting date. Have your proxy card in hand when you call and then follow the instructions.

**VOTE BY MAIL**

Mark, sign and date your proxy card and return it in the postage-paid envelope we have provided or return it to Vote Processing, c/o Broadridge, 51 Mercedes Way, Edgewood, NY 11717.

TO VOTE, MARK BLOCKS BELOW IN BLUE OR BLACK INK AS FOLLOWS:

M95966-P69413

KEEP THIS PORTION FOR YOUR RECORDS  
 DETACH AND RETURN THIS PORTION ONLY

THIS PROXY CARD IS VALID ONLY WHEN SIGNED AND DATED.

<b>VRINGO, INC.</b>		<b>For All</b>	<b>Withhold All</b>	<b>For All Except</b>	To withhold authority to vote for any individual nominee(s), mark "For All Except" and write the number(s) of the nominee(s) on the line below.
<b>The Board of Directors recommends you vote FOR the following:</b>					
1. Election of Directors		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	_____
<b>Nominees:</b>					
01) Andrew D. Perlman	04) H. Van Sinclair				
02) John Engelman	05) Noel J. Spiegel				
03) Ashley C. Keller	06) Donald E. Stout				
<b>The Board of Directors recommends you vote FOR the following proposals:</b>		<b>For</b>	<b>Against</b>	<b>Abstain</b>	
2. To approve a proposed amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to effect a reverse stock split of our issued and outstanding shares of common stock, at a ratio within the range of one-for-two to one-for-ten, such ratio to be determined by our Board of Directors.		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
3. To authorize, for purposes of complying with NASDAQ Listing Rule 5635(d), the issuance of shares of our common stock underlying convertible notes and warrants issued by us pursuant to the terms of that certain Securities Purchase Agreement, dated May 4, 2015, by and among Vringo, Inc. and the investors named therein, in an amount equal to or in excess of 20% of our common stock outstanding before the issuance of such convertible notes and warrants.		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
4. To approve a proposed amendment to our amended and restated certificate of incorporation to increase the number of our authorized shares of common stock by 100,000,000, from 150,000,000 to 250,000,000 shares.		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
5. To approve a proposed amendment to Vringo, Inc. 2012 Employee, Director and Consultant Equity Incentive Plan, or the Plan, to increase the number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance under the Plan to up to a maximum of 21,000,000 shares (on a pre-split basis).		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
6. To ratify the selection of CohnReznik LLP as our independent registered public accounting firm for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2015.		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
7. To approve, by an advisory vote, the compensation of our named executive officers, as disclosed in this proxy statement.		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
8. To approve an adjournment of our annual meeting of stockholders, if necessary, to solicit additional proxies if there are not sufficient votes in favor of the proposals referred to in clauses (2) through (5).		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
<b>NOTE:</b> The proxies are authorized to vote on all such matters as may properly come before the meeting or any adjournment thereof.					
Please sign exactly as your name(s) appear(s) hereon. When signing as attorney, executor, administrator, or other fiduciary, please give full title as such. Joint owners should each sign personally. All holders must sign. If a corporation or partnership, please sign in full corporate or partnership name by authorized officer.					
<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 20px; width: 100%;"></div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 20px; width: 100%;"></div>				
Signature [PLEASE SIGN WITHIN BOX]	Date	<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 20px; width: 100%;"></div>		<div style="border: 1px solid black; height: 20px; width: 100%;"></div>	
		Signature (Joint Owners)		Date	

**Important Notice Regarding the Availability of Proxy Materials for the Annual Meeting:**  
The Notice and Proxy Statement and 2014 Annual Report are available at [www.proxyvote.com](http://www.proxyvote.com).

M95967-P69413

**VRINGO, INC.**  
**Annual Meeting of Stockholders**  
**, 2015 11:00 AM, EST**

**THIS PROXY IS SOLICITED ON BEHALF OF THE BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF VRINGO, INC.**

The undersigned stockholder of Vringo, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), hereby appoints Andrew D. Perlman and Anastasia Nyrkovskaya, and each of them, with power to act without the other and with power of substitution, as proxies and attorneys-in-fact and hereby authorizes them to represent and vote, all of the shares of common stock of the Company which the undersigned is entitled to vote, on all matters that may properly come before the Annual Meeting of Stockholders of the Company to be held on \_\_\_\_\_, 2015, at 11:00 am, EST, at the offices of Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C., the Chrysler Center, 666 Third Avenue, New York, New York 10017, and at any adjournment or postponement thereof.

The undersigned stockholder hereby revokes any proxy or proxies heretofore given by the undersigned for the Annual Meeting.

**THIS PROXY CARD, WHEN PROPERLY EXECUTED, WILL BE VOTED IN THE MANNER DIRECTED HEREIN BY THE UNDERSIGNED. IF NO DIRECTION IS MADE BUT THE CARD IS SIGNED, THIS PROXY CARD WILL BE VOTED "FOR" THE ELECTION OF ALL NOMINEES NAMED HEREIN AND "FOR" PROPOSALS 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7 AND 8.**

**Continued and to be signed on reverse side**





## SECURITIES PURCHASE AGREEMENT

This **SECURITIES PURCHASE AGREEMENT** (this “**Agreement**”), dated as of May 4, 2015, is by and among Vringo, Inc., a Delaware corporation with headquarters located at 780 Third Avenue, 12th Floor, New York, New York 10017 (the “**Company**”), and each of the investors listed on the Schedule of Buyers attached hereto (individually, a “**Buyer**” and collectively, the “**Buyers**”).

**RECITALS**

A. The Company and each Buyer desire to enter into this transaction to purchase the Notes (as defined below) set forth herein pursuant to a currently effective shelf registration statement on Form S-3, which has sufficient availability for the issuance of securities of the Company (Registration Number 333-182823) (the “**Registration Statement**”), which Registration Statement has been declared effective in accordance with the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**1933 Act**”), by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**SEC**”).

B. The Company has authorized the issuance of senior secured convertible notes in the aggregate amount of \$12,500,000, in the form attached to the Supplemental Indenture (as defined below) (the “**Notes**”), which Notes shall be convertible into shares of the Company’s common stock, \$0.01 par value per share (the “**Common Stock**”) (as converted, collectively, together with any shares of Common Stock issuable as interest or otherwise pursuant to such Notes, the “**Conversion Shares**”) in accordance with, and issued pursuant to and by, the provisions of an Indenture dated as of the Closing Date (as defined below), by and between the Company and Computershare Trust Company, N.A., as trustee (the “**Trustee**”), in substantially the form attached hereto as **Exhibit A** (as amended and/or supplemented from time to time, including, without limitation, by the Supplemental Indenture dated as of the Closing Date, by and between the Company and the Trustee, in substantially the form attached hereto as **Exhibit B**, the “**Indenture**”).

C. Upon the terms and subject to the conditions contained in this Agreement, each Buyer wishes to purchase, and the Company wishes to sell, (i) the aggregate original principal amount of the Notes set forth opposite such Buyer’s name in column (3) on the Schedule of Buyers, (ii) a warrant to initially acquire up to the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock set forth opposite such Buyer’s name in column (4) on the Schedule of Buyers, in the form attached hereto as **Exhibit C** (the “**Warrants**”) (as exercised, collectively, the “**Warrant Shares**”).

D. The Notes are entitled to interest, amortization payments and certain other amounts, which, at the option of the Company and subject to certain conditions, may be paid in shares of Common Stock (the “**Interest Shares**”) or in cash.

E. The Notes, the Conversion Shares, the Interest Shares, the Warrants and the Warrant Shares are collectively referred to herein as the “**Securities**.”

F. The proceeds of the Notes will immediately be lent by the Company to certain of the Company's Subsidiaries (as defined below) (each, a "**Borrower Subsidiary**") pursuant to the terms of a Subsidiary Note and Security Agreement, in form and substance acceptable to each Buyer (the "**Subsidiary Notes**") which will be secured by a first priority perfected security interest in certain of the U.S. assets of the Borrower Subsidiaries pursuant to the terms of the Subsidiary Notes.

G. The Notes will be secured by a first priority perfected security interest in certain of the assets of the Company, including, without limitation, the Subsidiary Notes and the security interests securing the Subsidiary Notes, as evidenced by a security agreement as the Buyers shall require in form and substance acceptable to each Buyer (the "**Security Agreement**" and together with the other security documents and agreements entered into in connection with this Agreement and each of such other documents and agreements, as each may be amended or modified from time to time, collectively, the "**Security Documents**").

## AGREEMENT

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and the mutual covenants contained herein and for other good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, the Company and each Buyer hereby agree as follows:

### 1. PURCHASE AND SALE OF NOTES AND WARRANTS.

(a) Purchase of Notes and Warrants. Subject to the satisfaction (or waiver) of the conditions set forth in Sections 6 and 7 below, the Company shall issue and sell to each Buyer, and each Buyer severally, but not jointly, shall purchase from the Company on the Closing Date (as defined below), a Note in the original principal amount as is set forth opposite such Buyer's name in column (3) on the Schedule of Buyers, along with a Warrant to acquire up to the aggregate number of Warrant Shares as is set forth opposite such Buyer's name in column (4) on the Schedule of Buyers.

(b) Closing. The closing (the "**Closing**") of the purchase of the Notes and the Warrants by the Buyers shall occur at the offices of Lowenstein Sandler LLP, 1251 Avenue of the Americas, New York, New York 10020. The date and time of the Closing (the "**Closing Date**") shall be 10:00 a.m., New York time, on the first (1<sup>st</sup>) Business Day on which the conditions to the Closing set forth in Sections 6 and 7 below are satisfied or waived (or such later date as is mutually agreed to by the Company and each Buyer). As used herein "**Business Day**" means any day other than a Saturday, Sunday or other day on which commercial banks in New York, New York are authorized or required by law to remain closed.

(c) Purchase Price. The aggregate purchase price for the Notes and the Warrants to be purchased by each Buyer (the "**Purchase Price**") shall be the amount set forth opposite such Buyer's name in column (5) on the Schedule of Buyers.

(d) Payment of Purchase Price; Delivery of Notes and Warrants. On the Closing Date, (i) each Buyer shall pay its respective Purchase Price to the Company for its respective Note and Warrants to be issued and sold to such Buyer at the Closing, by wire transfer of immediately available funds in accordance with the Company's written wire instructions (less, in the case of Iroquois (as defined below), the amounts withheld pursuant to Section 4(g)) and (ii) the Company shall deliver to each Buyer (A) a Note (in such amount as is set forth opposite such Buyer's name in column (3) on the Schedule of Buyers) and (B) a Warrant pursuant to which such Buyer shall have the right to acquire up to the aggregate number of Warrant Shares as is set forth opposite such Buyer's name in column (4) on the Schedule of Buyers, in each case, duly executed on behalf of the Company (and, in the case of the Notes, duly authenticated by the Trustee) and registered in the name of such Buyer or its designee.

## 2. BUYER'S REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES.

Each Buyer, severally and not jointly, represents and warrants to the Company with respect to only itself that:

(a) Organization; Authority. Such Buyer is an entity duly organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction of its organization with the requisite power and authority to enter into and to consummate the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents (as defined below) to which it is a party and otherwise to carry out its obligations hereunder and thereunder.

(b) Validity; Enforcement. This Agreement has been duly and validly authorized, executed and delivered on behalf of such Buyer and constitutes the legal, valid and binding obligations of such Buyer enforceable against such Buyer in accordance with its terms, except as such enforceability may be limited by general principles of equity or applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, liquidation and other similar laws relating to, or affecting generally, the enforcement of applicable creditors' rights and remedies.

(c) No Conflicts. The execution, delivery and performance by such Buyer of this Agreement and the consummation by such Buyer of the transactions contemplated hereby will not (i) result in a violation of the organizational documents of such Buyer, (ii) conflict with, or constitute a default (or an event which with notice or lapse of time or both would become a default) under, or give to others any rights of termination, amendment, acceleration or cancellation of, any agreement, indenture or instrument to which such Buyer is a party or (iii) result in a violation of any law, rule, regulation, order, judgment or decree (including federal and state securities laws) applicable to such Buyer, except in the case of clauses (ii) and (iii) above, for such conflicts, defaults, rights or violations which would not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a material adverse effect on the ability of such Buyer to perform its obligations hereunder.

(d) Certain Trading Activities. Such Buyer has not directly or indirectly, nor has any Person acting on behalf of or pursuant to any understanding with such Buyer, engaged in any transactions in the securities of the Company (including, without limitation, any Short Sales (as defined below) involving the Company's securities) during the period commencing as of the time that such Buyer executed a Term Sheet regarding the specific investment in the Company contemplated by this Agreement and ending immediately prior to the execution of this Agreement by such Buyer. "**Short Sales**" means all "short sales" as defined in Rule 200 promulgated under Regulation SHO under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "**1934 Act**"), (but shall not be deemed to include the location and/or reservation of borrowable shares of Common Stock). Such Buyer is aware that Short Sales and other hedging activities may be subject to applicable federal and state securities laws, rules and regulations and such Buyer acknowledges that the responsibility of compliance with any such federal or state securities laws, rules and regulations is solely the responsibility of such Buyer.

(e) Receipt of Prospectus Supplement. Such Buyer acknowledges receipt of the Company's Prospectus Supplement relating to the offering of the Securities, which Prospectus Supplement is required to be delivered to such Buyer pursuant to Section 4(c) below. Such Buyer acknowledges that it has had an opportunity to review the Prospectus Supplement prior to committing to purchase any of the Securities.

(f) Independent Negotiation of Transaction. Such Buyer understands that nothing in this Agreement, the Prospectus Supplement or any other materials presented to such Buyer in connection with the purchase and sale of the Securities constitutes legal, tax or investment advice from the Company. Such Buyer is knowledgeable, sophisticated and experienced in making, and is qualified to make decisions with respect to, investments in securities presenting an investment decision like that involved in the purchase of the Securities. Such Buyer has independently negotiated and entered into this Agreement and the transactions contemplated hereby and has consulted such legal, tax and investment advisors and made such investigation as it, in its sole discretion, has deemed necessary or appropriate in connection with its purchase of the Securities.

(g) FINRA. Such Buyer represents that (i) it has had no position, office or other material relationship within the past three years with the Company, and (ii) it is not a FINRA member or an Associated Person (as such term is defined under the NASD Membership and Registration Rules Section 1011) of a FINRA member as of the Closing.

### 3. REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES OF THE COMPANY.

The Company represents and warrants to each of the Buyers that:

(a) Organization and Qualification. Each of the Company and each of its Subsidiaries are entities duly organized and validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction in which they are formed, and have the requisite power and authorization to own their properties and to carry on their business as now being conducted and as presently proposed to be conducted. Each of the Company and each of its Subsidiaries is duly qualified as a foreign entity to do business and is in good standing in every jurisdiction in which its ownership of property or the nature of the business conducted by it makes such qualification necessary, except to the extent that the failure to be so qualified or be in good standing would not have a Material Adverse Effect. "**Material Adverse Effect**" means any material adverse effect on (i) the business, properties, assets, liabilities, operations (including results thereof), condition (financial or otherwise) or prospects of the Company and its Subsidiaries, taken as a whole, (ii) the transactions contemplated hereby or in any of the other Transaction Documents or (iii) the authority or ability of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries to perform any of their respective obligations under any of the Transaction Documents (as defined below). Other than the Persons (as defined below) set forth in Exhibit 21 to its Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the SEC on March 16, 2015, the Company has no Subsidiaries. A "**Subsidiary**" means any Person in which the Company, directly or indirectly, owns any of the outstanding capital stock or holds any equity or similar interest of such Person.

(b) Authorization; Enforcement; Validity. The Company has the requisite power and authority to enter into and perform its obligations under this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents and to issue the Securities in accordance with the terms hereof and thereof. Each Borrower Subsidiary has the requisite power and authority to enter into and perform its obligations under the Transaction Documents to which it is a party. The execution and delivery of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents by the Company and the Borrower Subsidiaries, and the consummation by the Company and the Borrower Subsidiaries of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby (including, without limitation, the issuance of the Notes and the reservation for issuance and issuance of the Conversion Shares issuable upon conversion of the Notes and any Interest Shares issuable pursuant to the terms of the Notes, the issuance of the Warrants and the reservation for issuance and issuance of the Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants) have been duly authorized by the Company's board of directors and each of the Borrower Subsidiaries' board of directors or other governing body, as applicable, and (other than (i) the Stockholder Approval (as defined below), and (ii) the filing with the SEC of a prospectus supplement in connection with the Closing as required by the Registration Statement pursuant to Rule 424(b) under the 1933 Act (the "**Prospectus Supplement**") supplementing the base prospectus forming part of the Registration Statement (the "**Prospectus**"), and the Indenture and the Supplemental Indenture (and/or any amendment or supplement thereto)) (collectively, the "**Required Approvals**"), no further filing, consent or authorization is required by the Company, the Borrower Subsidiaries, their respective boards of directors or their stockholders or other governing body. This Agreement has been, and the other Transaction Documents to which the Company is a party will be prior to the Closing, duly executed and delivered by the Company, and upon such execution and delivery will constitute the legal, valid and binding obligations of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with their respective terms, except as such enforceability may be limited by general principles of equity or applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, liquidation or similar laws relating to, or affecting generally, the enforcement of applicable creditors' rights and remedies and except as rights to indemnification and to contribution may be limited by federal or state securities law. Prior to the Closing, the Transaction Documents to which each Borrower Subsidiary is a party will be duly executed and delivered by each such Borrower Subsidiary, and upon such execution and delivery will constitute the legal, valid and binding obligations of each such Borrower Subsidiary, enforceable against each such Borrower Subsidiary in accordance with their respective terms, except as such enforceability may be limited by general principles of equity or applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, liquidation or similar laws relating to, or affecting generally, the enforcement of applicable creditors' rights and remedies and except as rights to indemnification and to contribution may be limited by federal or state securities law. "**Transaction Documents**" means, collectively, this Agreement, the Notes, the Indenture, the Supplemental Indenture, the Warrants, the Subsidiary Notes, the Security Documents, the Irrevocable Transfer Agent Instructions (as defined below) and each of the other agreements and instruments entered into or delivered by any of the parties hereto in connection with the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby, as may be amended from time to time.

(c) Issuance of Securities. The issuance of the Notes and the Warrants is duly authorized, and upon issuance in accordance with the terms of the Transaction Documents, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable and free from all preemptive or similar rights, taxes, liens, charges and other encumbrances with respect to the issuance thereof. The Company shall have reserved from its duly authorized capital stock not less than 100% of the sum of (i) the maximum number of Conversion Shares issuable upon conversion of the Notes (assuming for purposes hereof that the Notes are convertible at the initial Conversion Price (as defined in the Notes) and without taking into account any limitations on the conversion of the Notes set forth therein), (ii) the maximum number of Interest Shares issuable pursuant to the terms of the Notes, (determined without taking into account any limitations on the conversion of the Notes set forth therein) and (iii) the maximum number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants (without taking into account any limitations on the exercise of the Warrants set forth therein). Upon issuance or conversion in accordance with the Notes and the Indenture or exercise in accordance with the Warrants (as the case may be), the Conversion Shares, the Interest Shares and the Warrant Shares, respectively, when issued, will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable and free from all preemptive or similar rights, taxes, liens, charges and other encumbrances with respect to the issue thereof, with the holders being entitled to all rights accorded to a holder of Common Stock. The issuance by the Company of the Securities has been registered under the 1933 Act, the Securities are being issued pursuant to the Registration Statement and all of the Securities are freely transferable and freely tradable by each of the Buyers without restriction. The Registration Statement is effective and available for the issuance of the Securities thereunder and the Company has not received any notice that the SEC has issued or intends to issue a stop-order with respect to the Registration Statement or that the SEC otherwise has suspended or withdrawn the effectiveness of the Registration Statement, either temporarily or permanently, or intends or has threatened in writing to do so. The “Plan of Distribution” section under the Registration Statement permits the issuance and sale of the Securities hereunder and as contemplated by the other Transaction Documents. Upon receipt of the Securities, each of the Buyers will have good and marketable title to the Securities. The Registration Statement and any prospectus included therein, including the Prospectus and the Prospectus Supplement, complied in all material respects with the requirements of the 1933 Act and the 1934 Act and the rules and regulations of the SEC promulgated thereunder and all other applicable laws and regulations. At the time the Registration Statement and any amendments thereto became effective, at the date of this Agreement and at each deemed effective date thereof pursuant to Rule 430B(f)(2) of the 1933 Act, the Registration Statement and any amendments thereto complied and will comply in all material respects with the requirements of the 1933 Act and did not and will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading. The Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto (including, without limitation the Prospectus Supplement), at the time the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto was issued and at such Closing Date, complied, and will comply, in all material respects with the requirements of the 1933 Act and did not, and will not, contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The Company meets all of the requirements for the use of Form S-3 under the 1933 Act for the offering and sale of the Securities contemplated by this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents, and the SEC has not notified the Company of any objection to the use of the form of the Registration Statement pursuant to Rule 401(g)(1) under the 1933 Act. The Registration Statement meets the requirements set forth in Rule 415(a)(1)(x) under the 1933 Act.

(d) No Conflicts. The execution, delivery and performance of the Transaction Documents by the Company and the Borrower Subsidiaries and the consummation by the Company and the Borrower Subsidiaries of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby (including, without limitation, the issuance of the Notes, the Warrants, the Conversion Shares and the Warrant Shares and the reservation for issuance of the Conversion Shares, the Interest Shares and Warrant Shares) will not (i) result in a violation of the Certificate of Incorporation (as defined below) or other organizational documents of the Company or any of the Borrower Subsidiaries, any capital stock of the Company or any of the Borrower Subsidiaries or Bylaws (as defined below) of the Company or any of the Borrower Subsidiaries, (ii) conflict with, or constitute a default (or an event which with notice or lapse of time or both would become a default) under, or give to others any rights of termination, amendment, acceleration or cancellation of, any agreement, indenture or instrument to which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is a party, or (iii) result in a violation of any law, rule, regulation, order, judgment or decree (including, without limitation, foreign, federal and state securities laws and regulations and the rules and regulations of the NASDAQ Capital Market (the “**Principal Market**”)) applicable to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or by which any property or asset of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is bound or affected except, in the case of clause (ii) or (iii) above, to the extent such violations that could not reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(e) Consents. Neither the Company nor any Borrower Subsidiary is required to obtain any consent from, authorization or order of, or make any filing or registration with (other than the Required Approvals, the filing with the SEC of the 8-K Filing (as defined below) and any required notification to the Principal Market (which shall be completed prior to Closing)), any court, governmental agency or any regulatory or self-regulatory agency or any other Person in order for it to execute, deliver or perform any of its respective obligations under, or contemplated by, the Transaction Documents to which it is a party, in each case, in accordance with the terms hereof or thereof. All consents, authorizations, orders, filings and registrations which the Company or any Subsidiary is required to obtain at or prior to the Closing have been obtained or effected on or prior to the Closing Date, and neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries are aware of any facts or circumstances which might prevent the Company or any Subsidiary from obtaining or effecting any of the registration, application or filings contemplated by the Transaction Documents. Except as disclosed in the SEC Documents, the Company is not in violation of the requirements of the Principal Market and has no knowledge of any facts or circumstances which could reasonably lead to delisting or suspension of the Common Stock in the foreseeable future.

(f) Acknowledgment Regarding Buyer's Purchase of Securities. The Company acknowledges and agrees that each Buyer is acting solely in the capacity of an arm's length purchaser with respect to the Transaction Documents and the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby and that no Buyer is (i) an officer or director of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, (ii) to its knowledge, an "affiliate" (as defined in Rule 144) of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or (iii) to its knowledge, a "beneficial owner" of more than 10% of the shares of Common Stock (as defined for purposes of Rule 13d-3 of the 1934 Act). The Company further acknowledges that no Buyer is acting as a financial advisor or fiduciary of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries (or in any similar capacity) with respect to the Transaction Documents and the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby, and any advice given by a Buyer or any of its representatives or agents in connection with the Transaction Documents and the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby is merely incidental to such Buyer's purchase of the Securities. The Company further represents to each Buyer that the Company's decision to enter into the Transaction Documents has been based solely on the independent evaluation by the Company and its representatives.

(g) Placement Agent's Fees. The Company shall be responsible for the payment of any placement agent's fees, financial advisory fees, or brokers' commissions (other than for Persons engaged by any Buyer or its investment advisor) relating to or arising out of the transactions contemplated hereby. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has engaged any placement agent or other agent in connection with the offer or sale of the Securities.



(h) No Integrated Offering. None of the Company, its Subsidiaries or any of their affiliates, nor any Person acting on their behalf has, directly or indirectly, made any offers or sales of any security or solicited any offers to buy any security, under circumstances that would require registration of the issuance of any of the Securities under the 1933 Act, whether through integration with prior offerings or otherwise, or cause this offering of the Securities to require approval of stockholders of the Company (other than the Stockholder Approval) under any applicable stockholder approval provisions, including, without limitation, under the rules and regulations of any exchange or automated quotation system on which any of the securities of the Company are listed or designated for quotation. None of the Company, its Subsidiaries, their affiliates nor any Person acting on their behalf will take any action or steps that would require registration of the issuance of any of the Securities under the 1933 Act or cause the offering of any of the Securities to be integrated with other offerings of securities of the Company.

(i) Dilutive Effect. The Company understands and acknowledges that the number of Conversion Shares, Interest Shares and Warrant Shares will increase in certain circumstances. The Company further acknowledges that its obligation to issue the Conversion Shares upon conversion of the Notes in accordance with this Agreement, the Indenture and the Notes, the Interest Shares in accordance with this Agreement, the Indenture and the Notes and the Warrant Shares upon exercise of the Warrants in accordance with this Agreement and the Warrants, is absolute and unconditional, regardless of the dilutive effect that such issuance may have on the ownership interests of other stockholders of the Company.

(j) Application of Takeover Protections; Rights Agreement. The Company and its board of directors have taken all necessary action, if any, in order to render inapplicable any control share acquisition, interested stockholder, business combination, poison pill (including, without limitation, any distribution under a rights agreement) or other similar anti-takeover provision under the Certificate of Incorporation, Bylaws or other organizational documents or the laws of the jurisdiction of its incorporation or otherwise which is or could become applicable to any Buyer as a result of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, including, without limitation, the Company's issuance of the Securities and any Buyer's ownership of the Securities. The Company and its board of directors have taken all necessary action, if any, in order to render inapplicable any stockholder rights plan or similar arrangement relating to accumulations of beneficial ownership of shares of Common Stock or a change in control of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

(k) SEC Documents; Financial Statements. During the two (2) years prior to the date hereof, the Company has timely filed all reports, schedules, forms, proxy statements, statements and other documents required to be filed by it with the SEC pursuant to the reporting requirements of the 1934 Act (all of the foregoing filed prior to the date hereof and all exhibits and appendices included therein and financial statements, notes and schedules thereto and documents incorporated by reference therein being hereinafter referred to as the “**SEC Documents**”). The Company has delivered to the Buyers or their respective representatives true, correct and complete copies of each of the SEC Documents not available on the EDGAR system. As of their respective dates, the SEC Documents complied in all material respects with the requirements of the 1934 Act and the rules and regulations of the SEC promulgated thereunder applicable to the SEC Documents, and none of the SEC Documents, at the time they were filed with the SEC, contained any untrue statement of a material fact or omitted to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. As of their respective dates, the financial statements of the Company included in the SEC Documents complied as to form in all material respects with applicable accounting requirements and the published rules and regulations of the SEC with respect thereto as in effect as of the time of filing. Such financial statements have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, consistently applied, during the periods involved (except (i) as may be otherwise indicated in such financial statements or the notes thereto, or (ii) in the case of unaudited interim statements, to the extent they may exclude footnotes or may be condensed or summary statements) and fairly present in all material respects the financial position of the Company as of the dates thereof and the results of its operations and cash flows for the periods then ended (subject, in the case of unaudited statements, to normal year-end audit adjustments which will not be material, either individually or in the aggregate). No other information provided by or on behalf of the Company to any of the Buyers which is not included in the SEC Documents contains any untrue statement of a material fact or omits to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein not misleading, in the light of the circumstance under which they are or were made. The Company is not currently contemplating the amendment or restatement of any of the financial statements (including without limitation, any notes or any letter of the independent accountants of the Company with respect thereto) included in the SEC Documents (the “**Financial Statements**”), nor is the Company currently aware of facts or circumstances which would require the Company to amend or restate any of the Financial Statements, in each case, in order for any of the Financial Statements to be in compliance with GAAP and the rules and regulations of the SEC. The Company has not been informed by its independent accountants that they recommend that the Company amend or restate any of the Financial Statements or that there is any need for the Company to amend or restate any of the Financial Statements.

(l) Absence of Certain Changes. Since the date of the Company’s most recent audited financial statements contained in a Form 10-K, except as disclosed in the SEC Documents filed subsequent to such Form 10-K, there has been no material adverse change and no material adverse development in the business, assets, liabilities, properties, operations (including results thereof), condition (financial or otherwise) or prospects of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries. Since the date of the Company’s most recent audited financial statements contained in a Form 10-K, except as disclosed in the SEC Documents filed subsequent to such Form 10-K, neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has (i) declared or paid any dividends, (ii) sold any assets outside of the ordinary course of business or (iii) made any material capital expenditures, individually or in the aggregate. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has taken any steps to seek protection pursuant to any law or statute relating to bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, receivership, liquidation or winding up, nor does the Company or any Subsidiary have any knowledge or reason to believe that any of their respective creditors intend to initiate involuntary bankruptcy proceedings or any actual knowledge of any fact which would reasonably lead a creditor to do so. The Company and its Subsidiaries, on a consolidated basis, are not, and after giving effect to the transactions contemplated hereby to occur at the Closing will not be, Insolvent (as defined below). “**Insolvent**” means, (I) with respect to the Company and its Subsidiaries, on a consolidated basis, (i) the present fair saleable value of the Company’s and its Subsidiaries’ assets is less than the amount required to pay the Company’s and its Subsidiaries’ total Indebtedness (as defined below), (ii) the Company and its Subsidiaries are unable to pay their debts and liabilities, subordinated, contingent or otherwise, as such debts and liabilities become absolute and matured or (iii) the Company and its Subsidiaries intend to incur or believe that they will incur debts that would be beyond their ability to pay as such debts mature; and (II) with respect to the Company and each Subsidiary, individually, (i) the present fair saleable value of the Company’s or such Subsidiary’s (as the case may be) assets is less than the amount required to pay its respective total Indebtedness, (ii) the Company or such Subsidiary (as the case may be) is unable to pay its respective debts and liabilities, subordinated, contingent or otherwise, as such debts and liabilities become absolute and matured or (iii) the Company or such Subsidiary (as the case may be) intends to incur or believes that it will incur debts that would be beyond its respective ability to pay as such debts mature. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has engaged in any business or in any transaction, and is not about to engage in any business or in any transaction, for which the Company’s or such Subsidiary’s remaining assets constitute unreasonably small capital.

(m) No Undisclosed Events, Liabilities, Developments or Circumstances. No event, liability, development or circumstance has occurred or exists, or is reasonably expected to occur or exist with respect to the Company, any of its Subsidiaries or any of their respective businesses, properties, liabilities, prospects, operations (including results thereof) or condition (financial or otherwise) that (i) would be required to be disclosed by the Company under applicable securities laws on a registration statement on Form S-1 filed with the SEC relating to an issuance and sale by the Company of its Common Stock and which has not been publicly announced, (ii) could have a material adverse effect on any Buyer's investment or (iii) could have a Material Adverse Effect.

(n) Conduct of Business; Regulatory Permits. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is in violation of any term of or in default under its Certificate of Incorporation, any certificate of designation, preferences or rights of any other outstanding series of preferred stock of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or Bylaws or their organizational charter, certificate of formation or certificate of incorporation or bylaws, respectively. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is in violation of any judgment, decree or order or any statute, ordinance, rule or regulation applicable to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, and neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries will conduct its business in violation of any of the foregoing, except in all cases for possible violations which could not, individually or in the aggregate, have a Material Adverse Effect. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, except as disclosed in the SEC Documents, the Company is not in violation of any of the rules, regulations or requirements of the Principal Market and has no knowledge of any facts or circumstances that could reasonably lead to delisting or suspension of the Common Stock by the Principal Market in the foreseeable future. During the two years prior to the date hereof, (i) the Common Stock has been listed or designated for quotation on the Principal Market, (ii) trading in the Common Stock has not been suspended by the SEC or the Principal Market and (iii) except as disclosed in the SEC Documents, the Company has received no communication, written or oral, from the SEC or the Principal Market regarding the suspension or delisting of the Common Stock from the Principal Market. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries possess all certificates, authorizations and permits issued by the appropriate regulatory authorities necessary to conduct their respective businesses, except where the failure to possess such certificates, authorizations or permits would not have, individually or in the aggregate, a Material Adverse Effect, and neither the Company nor any such Subsidiary has received any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of any such certificate, authorization or permit.

(o) Foreign Corrupt Practices. Neither the Company, any Subsidiary or any director, officer, agent, employee, nor any other person acting for or on behalf of the foregoing (individually and collectively, a “**Company Affiliate**”) have violated the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act (the “**FCPA**”) or any other applicable anti-bribery or anti-corruption laws, nor has any Company Affiliate offered, paid, promised to pay, or authorized the payment of any money, or offered, given, promised to give, or authorized the giving of anything of value, to any officer, employee or any other person acting in an official capacity for any governmental entity to any political party or official thereof or to any candidate for political office (individually and collectively, a “**Government Official**”) or to any person under circumstances where such Company Affiliate knew or was aware of a high probability that all or a portion of such money or thing of value would be offered, given or promised, directly or indirectly, to any Governmental Official, for the purpose of:

(1) (A) influencing any act or decision of such Government Official in his/her official capacity, (B) inducing such Government Official to do or omit to do any act in violation of his/her lawful duty, (C) securing any improper advantage, or (D) inducing such Government Official to influence or affect any act or decision of any Governmental Entity, or

(2) assisting the Company or its subsidiary in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or directing business to, the Company or its subsidiary.

(p) Sarbanes-Oxley Act. The Company and each Subsidiary is in compliance with all applicable requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 that are effective as of the date hereof, and all applicable rules and regulations promulgated by the SEC thereunder that are effective as of the date hereof.

(q) Transactions With Affiliates. Except as disclosed in the SEC Documents, none of the officers, directors, employees or affiliates of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is presently a party to any transaction with the Company or any of its Subsidiaries (other than for ordinary course services as employees, officers or directors), including any contract, agreement or other arrangement providing for the furnishing of services to or by, providing for rental of real or personal property to or from, or otherwise requiring payments to or from any such officer, director, employee or affiliate or, to the knowledge of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, any corporation, partnership, trust or other Person in which any such officer, director, employee or affiliate has a substantial interest or is an employee, officer, director, trustee or partner.

(a) Equity Capitalization. As of the date hereof, the authorized capital stock of the Company consists of (i) 150,000,000 shares of Common Stock, of which, 93,591,042 are issued and outstanding and 27,281,523 shares are reserved for issuance pursuant to securities (other than the Notes and the Warrants) exercisable or exchangeable for, or convertible into, shares of Common Stock and (ii) 5,000,000 shares of Series A Preferred Stock, of which no shares are issued or outstanding. No shares of Common Stock are held in treasury. All of such outstanding shares are duly authorized and have been, or upon issuance will be, validly issued and are fully paid and nonassessable. 6,797,074 shares of the Company's issued and outstanding Common Stock on the date hereof are owned by Persons who are "affiliates" (as defined in Rule 405 of the 1933 Act and calculated based on the assumption that only officers, directors and holders of at least 10% of the Company's issued and outstanding Common Stock are "affiliates" without conceding that any such Persons are "affiliates" for purposes of federal securities laws) of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries. To the Company's knowledge, no Person owns 10% or more of the Company's issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock (calculated based on the assumption that all Convertible Securities (as defined below), whether or not presently exercisable or convertible, have been fully exercised or converted (as the case may be) taking account of any limitations on exercise or conversion (including "blockers") contained therein without conceding that such identified Person is a 10% stockholder for purposes of federal securities laws). (i) None of the Company's or any Subsidiary's capital stock is subject to preemptive rights or any other similar rights or any liens or encumbrances suffered or permitted by the Company or any Subsidiary; (ii) except as disclosed in the SEC Documents, there are no outstanding options, warrants, scrip, rights to subscribe to, calls or commitments of any character whatsoever relating to, or securities or rights convertible into, or exercisable or exchangeable for, any capital stock of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, or contracts, commitments, understandings or arrangements by which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is or may become bound to issue additional capital stock of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or options, warrants, scrip, rights to subscribe to, calls or commitments of any character whatsoever relating to, or securities or rights convertible into, or exercisable or exchangeable for, any capital stock of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries; (iii) there are no outstanding debt securities, notes, credit agreements, credit facilities or other agreements, documents or instruments evidencing Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or by which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is or may become bound; (iv) there are no financing statements securing obligations in any amounts filed in connection with the Company or any of its Subsidiaries; (v) there are no agreements or arrangements under which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is obligated to register the sale of any of their securities under the 1933 Act; (vi) there are no outstanding securities or instruments of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries which contain any redemption or similar provisions, and there are no contracts, commitments, understandings or arrangements by which the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is or may become bound to redeem a security of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries; (vii) there are no securities or instruments containing anti-dilution or similar provisions that will be triggered by the issuance of the Securities; (viii) neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has any stock appreciation rights or "phantom stock" plans or agreements or any similar plan or agreement; and (ix) neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries have any liabilities or obligations required to be disclosed in the SEC Documents which are not so disclosed in the SEC Documents, other than those incurred in the ordinary course of the Company's or its Subsidiaries' respective businesses and which, individually or in the aggregate, do not or could not have a Material Adverse Effect. The Company has furnished to the Buyers true, correct and complete copies of the Company's Certificate of Incorporation, as amended and as in effect on the date hereof (the "**Certificate of Incorporation**"), and the Company's bylaws, as amended and as in effect on the date hereof (the "**Bylaws**"), and the terms of all securities convertible into, or exercisable or exchangeable for, shares of Common Stock and the material rights of the holders thereof in respect thereto to the extent not described in the SEC Documents.

(b) Indebtedness and Other Contracts. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries (i) has any outstanding Indebtedness (as defined below) except as disclosed in the SEC Documents, (ii) except as disclosed in the SEC Documents is a party to any contract, agreement or instrument, the violation of which, or default under which, by the other party(ies) to such contract, agreement or instrument could reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect, (iii) is in violation of any term of, or in default under, any contract, agreement or instrument relating to any Indebtedness, except where such violations and defaults would not result, individually or in the aggregate, in a Material Adverse Effect, or (iv) is a party to any contract, agreement or instrument relating to any Indebtedness, the performance of which, in the judgment of the Company's officers, has or is expected to have a Material Adverse Effect. (x) "**Indebtedness**" of any Person means, without duplication (A) all indebtedness for borrowed money, (B) all obligations issued, undertaken or assumed as the deferred purchase price of property or services (including, without limitation, "capital leases" in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles) (other than trade payables entered into in the ordinary course of business), (C) all reimbursement or payment obligations with respect to letters of credit, surety bonds and other similar instruments, (D) all obligations evidenced by notes, bonds, debentures or similar instruments, including obligations so evidenced incurred in connection with the acquisition of property, assets or businesses, (E) all indebtedness created or arising under any conditional sale or other title retention agreement, or incurred as financing, in either case with respect to any property or assets acquired with the proceeds of such indebtedness (even though the rights and remedies of the seller or bank under such agreement in the event of default are limited to repossession or sale of such property), (F) all monetary obligations under any leasing or similar arrangement which, in connection with generally accepted accounting principles, consistently applied for the periods covered thereby, is classified as a capital lease, (G) all indebtedness referred to in clauses (A) through (F) above secured by (or for which the holder of such Indebtedness has an existing right, contingent or otherwise, to be secured by) any mortgage, claim, lien, pledge, tax, right of first refusal, encumbrance, charge, security interest or other encumbrance upon or in any property or assets (including accounts and contract rights) owned by any Person, even though the Person which owns such assets or property has not assumed or become liable for the payment of such indebtedness, and (H) all Contingent Obligations in respect of indebtedness or obligations of others of the kinds referred to in clauses (A) through (G) above; (y) "**Contingent Obligation**" means, as to any Person, any direct or indirect liability, contingent or otherwise, of that Person with respect to any indebtedness, lease, dividend or other obligation of another Person if the primary purpose or intent of the Person incurring such liability, or the primary effect thereof, is to provide assurance to the obligee of such liability that such liability will be paid or discharged, or that any agreements relating thereto will be complied with, or that the holders of such liability will be protected (in whole or in part) against loss with respect thereto; provided, however that the term "Contingent Obligation" shall not include any liability or other obligation of the Company or any Subsidiary imposed by a court of competent jurisdiction to post any bond, guarantee or other security to assure the payment of an adverse judgment, attorney's fees or other costs of suit in connection with any action, suit or proceeding instituted by the Company or a Subsidiary in the ordinary course operation of the Company's business of enforcing and licensing intellectual property rights; and (z) "**Person**" means an individual, a limited liability company, a partnership, a joint venture, a corporation, a trust, an unincorporated organization, any other entity and a government or any department or agency thereof.

(c) Absence of Litigation. Except as disclosed in the SEC Documents, there is no action, suit, proceeding, inquiry or investigation before or by the Principal Market, any court, government agency, self-regulatory organization or other body pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened against or affecting the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, the Common Stock or any of the Company's or its Subsidiaries' officers or directors which is outside of the ordinary course of business or individually or in the aggregate material to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries. There has not been, and to the knowledge of the Company, there is not pending or contemplated, any investigation by the SEC involving the Company, any of its Subsidiaries or any current or former director or officer of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries that has not been previously resolved with no consequences to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries. The SEC has not issued any stop order or other order suspending the effectiveness of any registration statement filed by the Company under the 1933 Act or the 1934 Act.

(d) Insurance. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries are insured by insurers of recognized financial responsibility against such losses and risks and in such amounts as management of the Company believes to be prudent and customary in the businesses in which the Company and its Subsidiaries are engaged. Neither the Company nor any such Subsidiary has been refused any insurance coverage sought or applied for, and neither the Company nor any such Subsidiary has any reason to believe that it will be unable to renew its existing insurance coverage as and when such coverage expires or to obtain similar coverage from similar insurers as may be necessary to continue its business at a cost that would not have a Material Adverse Effect.

(e) Employee Relations. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is a party to any collective bargaining agreement or employs any member of a union. No executive officer (as defined in Rule 501(f) promulgated under the 1933 Act) or other key employee of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries has notified the Company or any such Subsidiary that such officer intends to leave the Company or any such Subsidiary or otherwise terminate such officer's employment with the Company or any such Subsidiary. No executive officer or other key employee of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is, or is now expected to be, in violation of any material term of any employment contract, confidentiality, disclosure or proprietary information agreement, non-competition agreement, or any other contract or agreement or any restrictive covenant, and the continued employment of each such executive officer or other key employee (as the case may be) does not subject the Company or any of its Subsidiaries to any liability with respect to any of the foregoing matters. The Company and its Subsidiaries are in compliance with all federal, state, local and foreign laws and regulations respecting labor, employment and employment practices and benefits, terms and conditions of employment and wages and hours, except where failure to be in compliance would not, either individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(f) Title. The Company and its Subsidiaries have good and marketable title in fee simple to all real property, and have good and marketable title to all personal property, owned by them which is material to the business of the Company and its Subsidiaries, in each case, free and clear of all liens, encumbrances and defects except such as do not materially affect the value of such property and do not interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company and any of its Subsidiaries. Any real property and facilities held under lease by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries are held by them under valid, subsisting and enforceable leases with such exceptions as are not material and do not interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such property and buildings by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

(g) Intellectual Property Rights. The Company and its Subsidiaries own or possess adequate rights or licenses to use all trademarks, trade names, service marks, service mark registrations, service names, patents, patent rights, copyrights, original works, inventions, licenses, approvals, governmental authorizations, trade secrets and other intellectual property rights and all applications and registrations therefor (“**Intellectual Property Rights**”) necessary to conduct their respective businesses as now conducted and as presently proposed to be conducted. None of the Company’s or its Subsidiaries’ Intellectual Property Rights have expired, terminated or been abandoned, or are expected to expire, terminate or be abandoned, within three years from the date of this Agreement. The Company has no knowledge of any infringement by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries of Intellectual Property Rights of others. Except as disclosed in the SEC Documents, there is no claim, action or proceeding being made or brought, or to the knowledge of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, being threatened, against the Company or any of its Subsidiaries regarding their Intellectual Property Rights. The Company is not aware of any facts or circumstances which might give rise to any of the foregoing infringements or claims, actions or proceedings. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries have taken reasonable security measures to protect the secrecy, confidentiality and value of all of their Intellectual Property Rights.

(h) Environmental Laws. The Company and its Subsidiaries (i) are in compliance with all Environmental Laws (as defined below), (ii) have received all permits, licenses or other approvals required of them under applicable Environmental Laws to conduct their respective businesses and (iii) are in compliance with all terms and conditions of any such permit, license or approval except where, in each of the foregoing clauses (i), (ii) and (iii), the failure to so comply has not had, and could not reasonably be expected to have, individually or in the aggregate, a Material Adverse Effect. “**Environmental Laws**” means all federal, state, local or foreign laws relating to pollution or protection of human health or the environment (including, without limitation, ambient air, surface water, groundwater, land surface or subsurface strata), including, without limitation, laws relating to emissions, discharges, releases or threatened releases of chemicals, pollutants, contaminants, or toxic or hazardous substances or wastes (collectively, “**Hazardous Materials**”) into the environment, or otherwise relating to the manufacture, processing, distribution, use, treatment, storage, disposal, transport or handling of Hazardous Materials, as well as all authorizations, codes, decrees, demands or demand letters, injunctions, judgments, licenses, notices or notice letters, orders, permits, plans or regulations issued, entered, promulgated or approved thereunder.

(i) Subsidiary Rights. The Company or one of its Subsidiaries has the unrestricted right to vote, and (subject to limitations imposed by applicable law) to receive dividends and distributions on, all capital securities of its Subsidiaries as owned by the Company or such Subsidiary. The Company or another wholly-owned Subsidiary of the Company owns all of the outstanding capital stock or other equity interests of each Subsidiary, free and clear of any Encumbrances (as defined below), other than those created by the Transaction Documents.

(j) Tax Status. The Company and each of its Subsidiaries (i) has timely made or filed all foreign, federal and state income and all other tax returns, reports and declarations required by any jurisdiction to which it is subject, (ii) has timely paid all taxes and other governmental assessments and charges that are material in amount, shown or determined to be due on such returns, reports and declarations, except those being contested in good faith and (iii) has set aside on its books provision reasonably adequate for the payment of all taxes for periods subsequent to the periods to which such returns, reports or declarations apply. There are no unpaid taxes in any material amount claimed to be due by the taxing authority of any jurisdiction, and the officers of the Company know of no basis for any such claim. The Company is not operated in such a manner as to qualify as a passive foreign investment company, as defined in Section 1297 of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.



(k) Internal Accounting and Disclosure Controls. The Company maintains internal control over financial reporting (as such term is defined in Rule 13a-15(f) under the 1934 Act) that is effective to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, including that (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorizations, (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles and to maintain asset and liability accountability, (iii) access to assets or incurrence of liabilities is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets and liabilities is compared with the existing assets and liabilities at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any difference. The Company maintains disclosure controls and procedures (as such term is defined in Rule 13a-15(e) under the 1934 Act) that are effective in ensuring that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the 1934 Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported, within the time periods specified in the rules and forms of the SEC, including, without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports that it files or submits under the 1934 Act is accumulated and communicated to the Company's management, including its principal executive officer or officers and its principal financial officer or officers, as appropriate, to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure. The Company has not received any notice or correspondence from any accountant or other Person relating to any potential material weakness or significant deficiency in any part of the internal controls over financial reporting of the Company with respect to any fiscal year commencing on or after January 1, 2013.

(l) Off Balance Sheet Arrangements. There is no transaction, arrangement, or other relationship between the Company or any of its Subsidiaries and an unconsolidated or other off balance sheet entity that is required to be disclosed by the Company in its 1934 Act filings and is not so disclosed or that otherwise could be reasonably likely to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(m) Investment Company Status. The Company is not, and upon consummation of the sale of the Securities will not be, an "investment company," an affiliate of an "investment company," a company controlled by an "investment company" or an "affiliated person" of, or "promoter" or "principal underwriter" for, an "investment company" as such terms are defined in the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended.

(n) Acknowledgement Regarding Buyers' Trading Activity. It is understood and acknowledged by the Company that (i) following the public disclosure of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents in accordance with the terms thereof, none of the Buyers have been asked by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries to agree, nor has any Buyer agreed with the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, to desist from effecting any transactions in or with respect to (including, without limitation, purchasing or selling, long and/or short) any securities of the Company, or "derivative" securities based on securities issued by the Company or to hold any of the Securities for any specified term; (ii) any Buyer, and counterparties in "derivative" transactions to which any such Buyer is a party, directly or indirectly, presently may have a "short" position in the Common Stock which was established prior to such Buyer's knowledge of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents; and (iii) each Buyer shall not be deemed to have any affiliation with or control over any arm's length counterparty in any "derivative" transaction. The Company further understands and acknowledges that following the public disclosure of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents pursuant to the 8-K Filing (as defined below) one or more Buyers may engage in hedging and/or trading activities at various times during the period that the Securities are outstanding, including, without limitation, during the periods that the value and/or number of the Conversion Shares, Interest Shares or Warrant Shares deliverable with respect to the Securities are being determined and such hedging and/or trading activities, if any, can reduce the value of the existing stockholders' equity interest in the Company both at and after the time the hedging and/or trading activities are being conducted. The Company acknowledges that such aforementioned hedging and/or trading activities do not constitute a breach of this Agreement or any other Transaction Document or any of the documents executed in connection herewith or therewith.

(o) Manipulation of Price. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries has, and, to the knowledge of the Company, no Person acting on their behalf has, directly or indirectly, (i) taken any action designed to cause or to result in the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries to facilitate the sale or resale of any of the Securities, (ii) sold, bid for, purchased, or paid any compensation for soliciting purchases of, any of the Securities (other than the Placement Agent), or (iii) paid or agreed to pay to any Person any compensation for soliciting another to purchase any other securities of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

(p) U.S. Real Property Holding Corporation. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is, or has ever been, and so long as any of the Securities are held by any of the Buyers, shall become, a U.S. real property holding corporation within the meaning of Section 897 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the Company and each Subsidiary shall so certify upon any Buyer's request.

(q) Transfer Taxes. On the Closing Date, all stock transfer or other taxes (other than income or similar taxes) which are required to be paid in connection with the issuance, sale and transfer of the Securities to be sold to each Buyer hereunder will be, or will have been, fully paid or provided for by the Company, and all laws imposing such taxes will be or will have been complied with.

(r) Bank Holding Company Act. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is subject to the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, as amended (the "BHCA") and to regulation by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (the "Federal Reserve"). Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries or affiliates owns or controls, directly or indirectly, five percent (5%) or more of the outstanding shares of any class of voting securities or twenty-five percent (25%) or more of the total equity of a bank or any equity that is subject to the BHCA and to regulation by the Federal Reserve. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries or affiliates exercises a controlling influence over the management or policies of a bank or any entity that is subject to the BHCA and to regulation by the Federal Reserve.

(s) Shell Company Status. The Company is not, and has never been, an issuer identified in, or subject to, Rule 144(i).

(t) Public Utility Holding Act. None of the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is a “holding company,” or an “affiliate” of a “holding company,” as such terms are defined in the Public Utility Holding Act of 2005.

(u) Federal Power Act. None of the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is subject to regulation as a “public utility” under the Federal Power Act, as amended.

(v) No Additional Agreements. The Company does not have any agreement or understanding with any Buyer with respect to the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents other than as specified in the Transaction Documents.

(w) Real Property. Each of the Company and its Subsidiaries holds good title to all real property, leases in real property, or other interests in real property owned or held by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries (the “**Real Property**”) owned by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries (as applicable). The Real Property is free and clear of all mortgages, defects, claims, liens, pledges, charges, taxes, rights of first refusal, encumbrances, security interests and other encumbrances (collectively “**Encumbrances**”) and is not subject to any rights of way, building use restrictions, exceptions, variances, reservations, or limitations of any nature except for (a) liens for current taxes not yet due and (b) zoning laws and other land use restrictions that do not impair the present or anticipated use of the property subject thereto.

(x) Fixtures and Equipment. Each of the Company and its Subsidiaries (as applicable) has good title to, or a valid leasehold interest in, the tangible personal property, equipment, improvements, fixtures, and other personal property and appurtenances that are used by the Company or its Subsidiary in connection with the conduct of its business (the “**Fixtures and Equipment**”). The Fixtures and Equipment are structurally sound, are in good operating condition and repair, are adequate for the uses to which they are being put, are not in need of maintenance or repairs except for ordinary, routine maintenance and repairs and are sufficient for the conduct of the Company’s and/or its Subsidiaries’ businesses (as applicable) in the manner as conducted prior to the Closing. Each of the Company and its Subsidiaries owns all of its Fixtures and Equipment free and clear of all Encumbrances except for (a) liens for current taxes not yet due and (b) zoning laws and other land use restrictions that do not impair the present or anticipated use of the property subject thereto.

(y) Illegal or Unauthorized Payments; Political Contributions. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries nor, to the Company’s knowledge (after reasonable inquiry of its officers and directors), any of the officers, directors, employees, agents or other representatives of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or any other business entity or enterprise with which the Company or any Subsidiary is or has been affiliated or associated, has, directly or indirectly, made or authorized any payment, contribution or gift of money, property, or services, whether or not in contravention of applicable law, (a) as a kickback or bribe to any Person or (b) to any political organization, or the holder of or any aspirant to any elective or appointive public office except for personal political contributions not involving the direct or indirect use of funds of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

(z) Money Laundering. The Company and its Subsidiaries are in compliance with, and have not previously violated, the USA Patriot Act of 2001 and all other applicable U.S. and non-U.S. anti-money laundering laws and regulations, including, without limitation, the laws, regulations and Executive Orders and sanctions programs administered by the U.S. Office of Foreign Assets Control, including, without limitation, (i) Executive Order 13224 of September 23, 2001 entitled, “Blocking Property and Prohibiting Transactions With Persons Who Commit, Threaten to Commit, or Support Terrorism” (66 Fed. Reg. 49079 (2001)); and (ii) any regulations contained in 31 CFR, Subtitle B, Chapter V.

(aa) No Additional Agreements. The Company does not have any agreement or understanding with any Buyer with respect to the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents other than as specified in the Transaction Documents.

(bb) Ranking of the Notes. No Indebtedness of the Company, at the Closing, will be senior to, or *pari passu* with, the Notes in right of payment, whether with respect to payment or redemptions, interest, damages, upon liquidation or dissolution or otherwise. No Subsidiary has any outstanding Indebtedness other than Indebtedness owed to the Company or a wholly-owned Subsidiary of the Company, except Indebtedness created pursuant to the Transaction Documents.

(cc) Disclosure. The Company confirms that neither it nor any other Person acting on its behalf has provided any of the Buyers or their agents or counsel with any information that constitutes or could reasonably be expected to constitute material, non-public information concerning the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, other than the existence of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents. The Company understands and confirms that each of the Buyers will rely on the foregoing representations in effecting transactions in securities of the Company. All disclosure provided to the Buyers regarding the Company and its Subsidiaries, their businesses and the transactions contemplated hereby, including the schedules to this Agreement, furnished by or on behalf of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is true and correct and does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements made therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. Each press release issued by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries during the twelve (12) months preceding the date of this Agreement did not at the time of release contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they are made, not misleading. No event or circumstance has occurred or information exists with respect to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries or its or their business, properties, liabilities, prospects, operations (including results thereof) or conditions (financial or otherwise), which, under applicable law, rule or regulation, requires public disclosure at or before the date hereof or announcement by the Company but which has not been so publicly disclosed. The Company acknowledges and agrees that no Buyer makes or has made any representations or warranties with respect to the transactions contemplated hereby other than those specifically set forth in Section 2.

#### 4. COVENANTS.

(a) Best Efforts. Each Buyer shall use its best efforts to timely satisfy each of the conditions to be satisfied by it as provided in Section 6 of this Agreement. The Company shall use its best efforts to timely satisfy each of the conditions to be satisfied by it as provided in Section 7 of this Agreement.

(b) Amendments to the Registration Statement; Prospectus Supplement; Free Writing Prospectuses.

(i) Except as provided in this Agreement and other than periodic reports required to be filed pursuant to the 1934 Act, the Company shall not file with the SEC any amendment to the Registration Statement that relates to the Buyer, this Agreement, the Indenture, the Notes or the transactions contemplated hereby or thereby or file with the SEC any Prospectus Supplement that relates to the Buyer, this Agreement, the Indenture, the Notes or the transactions contemplated hereby or thereby with respect to which (a) the Buyer shall not previously have been advised, (b) the Company shall not have given due consideration to any comments thereon received from the Buyer or its counsel, or (c) the Buyer shall reasonably object after being so advised, unless the Company reasonably has determined that it is necessary to amend the Registration Statement or make any supplement to the Prospectus to comply with the 1933 Act or any other applicable law or regulation, in which case the Company shall promptly (but in no event later than 24 hours) so inform the Buyer, the Buyer shall be provided with a reasonable opportunity to review and comment upon any disclosure relating to the Buyer and the Company shall expeditiously furnish to the Buyer an electronic copy thereof. In addition, for so long as, in the reasonable opinion of counsel for the Buyer, the Prospectus (or in lieu thereof, the notice referred to in Rule 173(a) under the 1933 Act) is required to be delivered in connection with any acquisition or sale of Securities by the Buyer, the Company shall not file any Prospectus Supplement with respect to the Securities without delivering or making available a copy of such Prospectus Supplement, together with the Prospectus, to the Buyer promptly.

(ii) The Company has not made, and agrees that unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Buyer it will not make, an offer relating to the Securities that would constitute an “issuer free writing prospectus” as defined in Rule 433 promulgated under the Securities Act (an “**Issuer Free Writing Prospectus**”) or that would otherwise constitute a “free writing prospectus” as defined in Rule 405 promulgated under the Securities Act (a “**Free Writing Prospectus**”) required to be filed by the Company or the Buyer with the SEC or retained by the Company or the Buyer under Rule 433 under the 1933 Act. The Buyer has not made, and agrees that unless it obtains the prior written consent of the Company it will not make, an offer relating to the Securities that would constitute a Free Writing Prospectus required to be filed by the Company with the SEC or retained by the Company under Rule 433 under the 1933 Act. Any such Issuer Free Writing Prospectus or other Free Writing Prospectus consented to by the Buyer or the Company is referred to in this Agreement as a “**Permitted Free Writing Prospectus**.” The Company agrees that (x) it has treated and will treat, as the case may be, each Permitted Free Writing Prospectus as an Issuer Free Writing Prospectus and (y) it has complied and will comply, as the case may be, with the requirements of Rules 164 and 433 under the Securities Act applicable to any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus, including in respect of timely filing with the SEC, legending and record keeping.

(c) Prospectus Delivery. Immediately prior to execution of this Agreement, the Company shall have delivered to the Buyer, and as soon as practicable after execution of this Agreement the Company shall file, the Prospectus Supplement with respect to the Securities to be issued on the Closing Date, as required under, and in conformity with, the 1933 Act, including Rule 424(b) thereunder. The Company shall provide the Buyer a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of each Prospectus Supplement and any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, shall give due consideration to all such comments and, subject to the provisions of Section 4(b) hereof, shall deliver or make available to the Buyer, without charge, an electronic copy of each form of Prospectus Supplement, together with the Prospectus, and any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus on each date on which the Company issues Securities to the Buyer. The Company consents to the use of the Prospectus (and of any Prospectus Supplements thereto) in accordance with the provisions of the 1933 Act and with the securities or “blue sky” laws of the jurisdictions in which the Securities may be sold by the Buyer, in connection with the offering and sale of the Securities and for such period of time thereafter as the Prospectus (or in lieu thereof, the notice referred to in Rule 173(a) under the 1933 Act) is required by the 1933 Act to be delivered in connection with sales of the Securities. If during such period of time any event shall occur that in the judgment of the Company and its counsel is required to be set forth in the Registration Statement or the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus or should be set forth therein in order to make the statements made therein (in the case of the Prospectus, in light of the circumstances under which they were made) not misleading, or if it is necessary to amend the Registration Statement or supplement or amend the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus to comply with the 1933 Act or any other applicable law or regulation, the Company shall forthwith prepare and, subject to Section 4(b) above, file with the SEC an appropriate amendment to the Registration Statement or Prospectus Supplement to the Prospectus (or supplement to the Permitted Free Writing Prospectus) and shall expeditiously furnish or make available to the Buyer an electronic copy thereof.

(d) Stop Orders. The Company shall advise the Buyer promptly (but in no event later than 24 hours) and shall confirm such advice in writing: (i) of the Company’s receipt of notice of any request by the SEC for amendment of or a supplement to the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus or for any additional information; (ii) of the Company’s receipt of notice of the issuance by the SEC of any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or prohibiting or suspending the use of the Prospectus or any Prospectus Supplement, or of the suspension of qualification of the Securities for offering or sale in any jurisdiction, or the initiation or contemplated initiation of any proceeding for such purpose; (iii) of the Company becoming aware of the happening of any event, which makes any statement of a material fact made in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus untrue or which requires the making of any additions to or changes to the statements then made in the Registration Statement, the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus in order to state a material fact required by the 1933 Act to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements then made therein (in the case of the Prospectus, in light of the circumstances under which they were made) not misleading, or of the necessity to amend the Registration Statement or supplement the Prospectus or any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus to comply with the 1933 Act or any other law or (iv) if at any time following the date hereof the Registration Statement is not effective or is not otherwise available for the issuance of the Securities or any Prospectus contained therein is not available for use for any other reason. Thereafter, the Company shall promptly notify such holders when the Registration Statement, the Prospectus, any Permitted Free Writing Prospectus and/or any amendment or supplement thereto, as applicable, is effective and available for the issuance of the Securities. If at any time the SEC shall issue any stop order suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or prohibiting or suspending the use of the Prospectus or any Prospectus Supplement, the Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to obtain the withdrawal of such order at the earliest possible time. So long as any Notes remain outstanding, the Company shall use its best efforts to maintain the continuous effectiveness of the Registration Statement under the 1933 Act.

(e) Blue Sky. If required, the Company shall, on or before the Closing Date, take such action as the Company shall reasonably determine is necessary in order to obtain an exemption for, or to, qualify the Securities for sale to the Buyers at the Closing pursuant to this Agreement under applicable securities or “Blue Sky” laws of the states of the United States (or to obtain an exemption from such qualification), and shall provide evidence of any such action so taken to the Buyers on or prior to the Closing Date. Without limiting any other obligation of the Company under this Agreement, the Company shall timely make all filings and reports relating to the offer and sale of the Securities required under all applicable securities laws (including, without limitation, all applicable federal securities laws and all applicable “Blue Sky” laws), and the Company shall comply with all applicable federal, state and local laws, statutes, rules, regulations and the like relating to the offering and sale of the Securities to the Buyers.

(f) Reporting Status. Until the date (the “**Reporting Period**”) on which the Buyer shall have sold all of the Securities or any capital stock of the Company issued or issuable with respect to the Notes or the Warrants, including, without limitation, (1) as a result of any stock split, stock dividend, recapitalization, exchange or similar event or otherwise and (2) shares of capital stock of the Company into which the shares of Common Stock are converted, exercised or exchanged and shares of capital stock of a Successor Entity (as defined in the Notes) into which the shares of Common Stock are converted, exercised or exchanged (in each case, without regard to any limitations on conversion of (or other issuance pursuant to) the Notes or the Warrants) or otherwise issuable pursuant to the terms of the Notes or the Warrants (collectively, the “**Covered Securities**”), the Company shall timely file all reports required to be filed with the SEC pursuant to the 1934 Act, and the Company shall not terminate its status as an issuer required to file reports under the 1934 Act even if the 1934 Act or the rules and regulations thereunder would no longer require or otherwise permit such termination.

(g) Use of Proceeds. The Company shall use the net proceeds from the sale of the Securities hereunder solely for the purpose of making loans to the Borrower Subsidiaries pursuant to the Subsidiary Notes and the Company shall cause the Borrower Subsidiaries to use the proceeds of the Subsidiary Notes solely for the working capital of such Borrower Subsidiaries. Without limiting the foregoing, none of such proceeds shall be used, directly or indirectly, (i) for the satisfaction of any Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, (ii) for the redemption of any securities of the Company (other than the Securities), or (iii) for any transaction outside the ordinary course of the Company’s business of enforcing and licensing intellectual property rights, consistent with past practice.

(h) Financial Information. The Company agrees to send the following to each holder of Notes or Warrants (an “**Investor**”) during the Reporting Period (i) unless the following are filed with the SEC through EDGAR and are available to the public through the EDGAR system, within one (1) Business Day after the filing thereof with the SEC, a copy of its Annual Reports on Form 10-K and Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, any interim reports or any consolidated balance sheets, income statements, stockholders’ equity statements and/or cash flow statements for any period other than annual, any Current Reports on Form 8-K and any registration statements (other than on Form S-8) or amendments filed pursuant to the 1933 Act, and (ii) copies of any notices and other information made available or given to the stockholders of the Company generally, contemporaneously with the making available or giving thereof to the stockholders.

(i) Listing. The Company shall promptly secure the listing or designation for quotation (as the case may be) of all of the Covered Securities upon each national securities exchange and automated quotation system, if any, upon which the Common Stock is then listed or designated for quotation (as the case may be) (subject to official notice of issuance) and shall maintain such listing or designation for quotation (as the case may be) of all the Covered Securities from time to time issuable under the terms of the Transaction Documents on such national securities exchange or automated quotation system. The Company shall maintain the Common Stock's listing or designation for quotation (as the case may be) on the Principal Market, The New York Stock Exchange, the NASDAQ Global Select Market, the NASDAQ Global Market, the NYSE MKT or the OTCQB (each, an "**Eligible Market**"). Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries shall take any action which could be reasonably expected to result in the delisting or suspension of the Common Stock on an Eligible Market. The Company shall pay all fees and expenses in connection with satisfying its obligations under this Section 4(i).

(j) Fees. The Company shall reimburse Iroquois Master Fund Ltd. ("**Iroquois**") or its designee(s) for all reasonable out-of-pocket costs and expenses incurred by it or its affiliates in connection with the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents (including, without limitation, as applicable, all reasonable legal fees and disbursements in connection therewith, structuring, documentation and implementation of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents and due diligence and regulatory filings in connection therewith) in a non-accountable amount equal to \$75,000, which amount (less the Advance (as defined below)) shall be withheld by Iroquois from its Purchase Price at the Closing or paid by the Company on demand by Iroquois if Iroquois terminates its obligations under this Agreement in accordance with Section 8 (as the case may be). Iroquois hereby acknowledges that the Company has previously paid \$30,000 to Iroquois as a nonrefundable advance (the "**Advance**") against the expenses incurred by Iroquois in connection herewith. The Company shall be responsible for the payment of any placement agent's fees, financial advisory fees, transfer agent fees, the fees and expenses of the Trustee (including any legal counsel to the Trustee), DTC (as defined below) fees or broker's commissions (other than for Persons engaged by any Buyer) relating to or arising out of the transactions contemplated hereby (including, without limitation, any fees payable to the Placement Agent, who is the Company's sole placement agent in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement). The Company shall pay, and hold each Buyer harmless against, any liability, loss or expense (including, without limitation, reasonable attorneys' fees and out-of-pocket expenses) arising in connection with any claim relating to any such payment. Except as otherwise set forth in the Transaction Documents, each party to this Agreement shall bear its own expenses in connection with the sale of the Securities to the Buyers.

(k) Pledge of Securities. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Agreement, the Company acknowledges and agrees that the Securities may be pledged by a Buyer in connection with a bona fide margin agreement or other loan or financing arrangement that is secured by the Securities. The pledge of Securities shall not be deemed to be a transfer, sale or assignment of the Securities hereunder, and no Buyer effecting a pledge of Securities shall be required to provide the Company with any notice thereof or otherwise make any delivery to the Company pursuant to this Agreement or any other Transaction Document. The Company hereby agrees to execute and deliver such documentation as a pledgee of the Securities may reasonably request in connection with a pledge of the Securities to such pledgee by a Buyer.



(l) Disclosure of Transactions and Other Material Information. The Company shall (i) on or before 8:30 a.m. New York time on the date of this Agreement, if this Agreement is executed and delivered prior thereto, and (ii) on or before 8:30 a.m. New York time on the first (1st) Business Day after the date of this Agreement, if this Agreement is executed and delivered after 8:30 a.m. New York time, file a Current Report on Form 8-K describing all the material terms of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents in the form required by the 1934 Act and attaching all the material Transaction Documents (including, without limitation, this Agreement (and all schedules to this Agreement), the Indenture, the Supplemental Indenture, the form of the Notes, the form of the Warrants, the form of the Security Documents and the form of the Guaranties) (including all attachments, the “**8-K Filing**”). From and after the filing of the 8-K Filing, the Company shall have disclosed all material, non-public information (if any) delivered to any of the Buyers by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, or any of their respective officers, directors, employees or agents in connection with the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents. The Company shall not, and the Company shall cause each of its Subsidiaries and each of its and their respective officers, directors, employees and agents, not to, provide any Buyer with any material, non-public information regarding the Company or any of its Subsidiaries from and after the filing of the 8-K Filing without the express prior written consent of such Buyer. The Company understands and confirms that each Buyer shall be relying on the foregoing covenant and agreement in effecting transactions in securities of the Company, and based on such covenant and agreement, unless otherwise expressly agreed in writing by such Buyer: (i) such Buyer does not have any obligation of confidentiality with respect to any information that the Company provides to such Buyer; and (ii) such Buyer shall not be deemed to be in breach of any duty to the Company and/or to have misappropriated any non-public information of the Company, if such Buyer engages in transactions of securities of the Company, including, without limitation, any hedging transactions, short sales and/or any derivative transactions based on securities of the Company while in possession of such material non-public information. In the event of a breach of any of the foregoing covenants or any of the covenants or agreements contained in the Transaction Documents by the Company, any of its Subsidiaries, or any of its or their respective officers, directors, employees and agents (as determined in the reasonable good faith judgment of such Buyer), in addition to any other remedy provided herein or in the Transaction Documents, such Buyer shall have the right to make a public disclosure, in the form of a press release, public advertisement or otherwise, of such breach or such material, non-public information without the prior approval by the Company, any of its Subsidiaries, or any of its or their respective officers, directors, employees or agents. No Buyer shall have any liability to the Company, any of its Subsidiaries, or any of its or their respective officers, directors, employees, stockholders or agents, for any such disclosure. Subject to the foregoing, neither the Company, its Subsidiaries nor any Buyer shall issue any press releases or any other public statements with respect to the transactions contemplated hereby; provided, however, the Company shall be entitled, without the prior approval of any Buyer, to make any press release or other public disclosure with respect to such transactions (i) in substantial conformity with the 8-K Filing and contemporaneously therewith and (ii) as is required by applicable law and regulations (provided that in the case of clause (i) each Buyer shall be consulted by the Company in connection with any such press release or other public disclosure prior to its release). Without the prior written consent of the applicable Buyer, the Company shall not (and shall cause each of its Subsidiaries and affiliates to not) disclose the name of such Buyer in any filing (other than the 8-K Filing), announcement, release or otherwise.

(m) Additional Registration Statements. Until the sixtieth (60<sup>th</sup>) day after the Closing Date (the “**Applicable Date**”), the Company shall not file a registration statement under the 1933 Act relating to securities that are not the Registrable Securities (other than (i) registration statements on Form S-8 for an Approved Stock Plan (as defined below), (ii) post-effective amendments to registration statements that are effective as of the date of this Agreement solely to update the information contained therein, and (iii) a universal shelf registration statement on Form S-3 filed with the SEC not less than thirty (30) days after the Closing Date).

(n) Additional Issuance of Securities. The Company agrees that for the period commencing on the date hereof and ending on the Applicable Date (the “**Restricted Period**”), neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries shall directly or indirectly issue, offer, sell, grant any option or right to purchase, or otherwise dispose of (or announce any issuance, offer, sale, grant of any option or right to purchase or other disposition of) any equity security or any equity-linked or related security (including, without limitation, any “equity security” (as that term is defined under Rule 405 promulgated under the 1933 Act), any Convertible Securities (as defined below), any debt, any preferred stock or any purchase rights) (any such issuance, offer, sale, grant, disposition or announcement (whether occurring during the Restricted Period or at any time thereafter) is referred to as a “**Subsequent Placement**”). Notwithstanding the foregoing, this Section 4(n) shall not apply in respect of the issuance of (A) shares of Common Stock or standard options to purchase Common Stock to directors, officers, consultants (it being expressly understood and agreed that lawyers, law firms, accountants, accounting firms and other similar professional advisors and professional advisory firms are not consultants) or employees of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries in their capacity as such pursuant to an Approved Share Plan (as defined below), provided that (1) all such issuances (taking into account the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of such options) after the date hereof pursuant to this clause (A) do not, in the aggregate, exceed more than 1,000,000 shares of Common Stock (adjusted for stock splits, stock combinations and other similar transactions occurring after the date of this Agreement) and (2) the exercise price of any such options is not lowered, none of such options are amended to increase the number of shares issuable thereunder and none of the terms or conditions of any such options are otherwise materially changed in any manner that adversely affects any of the Buyers; (B) shares of Common Stock issued upon the conversion or exercise of Convertible Securities (other than standard options to purchase Common Stock issued pursuant to an Approved Share Plan that are covered by clause (A) above) issued prior to the date hereof, provided that the conversion or exercise price of any such Convertible Securities (other than standard options to purchase Common Stock issued pursuant to an Approved Share Plan that are covered by clause (A) above) is not lowered, none of such Convertible Securities (other than standard options to purchase Common Stock issued pursuant to an Approved Share Plan that are covered by clause (A) above) are amended to increase the number of shares issuable thereunder and none of the terms or conditions of any such Convertible Securities (other than standard options to purchase Common Stock issued pursuant to an Approved Share Plan that are covered by clause (A) above) are otherwise materially changed in any manner that adversely affects any of the Buyers; (C) the Pre-Installment Conversion Shares (as defined in the Notes); (D) the Warrant Shares; (E) the Conversion Shares (other than those that constitute Pre-Installment Conversion Shares), (F) the Interest Shares; and (G) capital stock or Convertible Securities issued as consideration for an acquisition or strategic transaction approved by a majority of the disinterested directors of the Company, provided that any such issuance shall only be a Person (or to the equityholders of a Person) which is, itself or through its subsidiaries, an operating company or an owner of an asset in a business synergistic with the business of the Company and shall provide to the Company additional benefits in addition to the investment of funds, but shall not, for the purposes of this clause (G), include a transaction in which the Company is issuing securities primarily for the purpose of raising capital or to an entity whose primary business is investing in securities (each of the foregoing in clauses (A) through (G) collectively the “**Excluded Securities**”). “**Approved Share Plan**” means any employee benefit plan which has been approved by the board of directors of the Company prior to or subsequent to the date hereof pursuant to which shares of Common Stock and standard options to purchase Common Stock may be issued to any employee, officer, consultants or director for services provided to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries in their capacity as such. “**Convertible Securities**” means any capital stock or other security of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries that is at any time and under any circumstances directly or indirectly convertible into, exercisable or exchangeable for, or which otherwise entitles the holder thereof to acquire, any capital stock or other security of the Company (including, without limitation, Common Stock) or any of its Subsidiaries.

(o) Reservation of Shares. The Company shall take all action to from its duly authorized capital stock not less than 100% of the sum of (i) the maximum number of Conversion Shares issuable upon conversion of the Notes (assuming for purposes hereof that the Notes are convertible at the initial Conversion Price (as defined in the Notes) and without taking into account any limitations on the conversion of the Notes set forth therein), (ii) the maximum number of Interest Shares issuable pursuant to the terms of the Notes, (determined without taking into account any limitations on the conversion of the Notes set forth therein) and (iii) the maximum number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants (without taking into account any limitations on the exercise of the Warrants set forth therein).

(p) Conduct of Business. The business of the Company and its Subsidiaries shall not be conducted in violation of any law, ordinance or regulation of any governmental entity, except where such violations would not result, either individually or in the aggregate, in a Material Adverse Effect. So long as the Subsidiary Notes are outstanding, the Company shall take such actions as may be necessary to assure that each Borrower Subsidiary is not Insolvent. Without the prior written consent of the Buyers, the Company shall not (i) modify or amend the terms of the Subsidiary Notes, (ii) release any collateral securing the Subsidiary Notes (except to the extent permitted in the Notes), (iii) forgive, in whole or in part, any amounts due under the Subsidiary Notes, or (iv) waive or agree to forbear from enforcing any rights or obligations under the Subsidiary Notes.

(q) Variable Rate Transaction. Until the date no Notes are outstanding, the Company and each Subsidiary shall be prohibited from effecting or entering into an agreement to effect any Subsequent Placement involving a Variable Rate Transaction. “**Variable Rate Transaction**” means a transaction in which the Company or any Subsidiary (i) issues or sells any Convertible Securities either (A) at a conversion, exercise or exchange rate or other price that is based upon and/or varies with the trading prices of, or quotations for, the shares of Common Stock at any time after the initial issuance of such Convertible Securities, or (B) with a conversion, exercise or exchange price that is subject to being reset at some future date after the initial issuance of such Convertible Securities or upon the occurrence of specified or contingent events directly or indirectly related to the business of the Company or the market for the Common Stock, other than pursuant to a customary “weighted average” anti-dilution provision, or (ii) enters into any agreement (including, without limitation, an “equity line of credit” or an “at-the-market offering”) whereby the Company or any Subsidiary may sell securities at a future determined price (other than standard and customary “preemptive” or “participation” rights). Each Buyer shall be entitled to obtain injunctive relief against the Company and its Subsidiaries to preclude any such issuance, which remedy shall be in addition to any right to collect damages.

(r) Qualification Under Trust Indenture Act. Prior to any issuance of Notes hereunder, the Company shall qualify the Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended (the “**TIA**”) and enter into the Supplemental Indenture in connection therewith and, so long as the Notes remain outstanding, the Indenture and the Supplemental Indenture shall be maintained in compliance with the TIA.

(s) Participation Right. So long as any Notes remain outstanding, neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries shall, directly or indirectly, effect any Subsequent Placement unless the Company shall have first complied with this Section 4(s). The Company acknowledges and agrees that the right set forth in this Section 4(s) is a right granted by the Company, separately, to each Buyer.

(i) At least five (5) Trading Days prior to any proposed or intended Subsequent Placement, the Company shall deliver to each Buyer a written notice of its proposal or intention to effect a Subsequent Placement (each such notice, a “**Pre-Notice**”), which Pre-Notice shall not contain any information (including, without limitation, material, non-public information) other than: (i) a statement that the Company proposes or intends to effect a Subsequent Placement, (ii) a statement that the statement in clause (i) above does not constitute material, non-public information and (iii) a statement informing such Buyer that it is entitled to receive an Offer Notice (as defined below) with respect to such Subsequent Placement upon its written request. Upon the written request of a Buyer within three (3) Trading Days after the Company’s delivery to such Buyer of such Pre-Notice, and only upon a written request by such Buyer, the Company shall promptly, but no later than one (1) Trading Day after such request, deliver to such Buyer an irrevocable written notice (the “**Offer Notice**”) of any proposed or intended issuance or sale or exchange (the “**Offer**”) of the securities being offered (the “**Offered Securities**”) in a Subsequent Placement, which Offer Notice shall (w) identify and describe the Offered Securities, (x) describe the price and other terms upon which they are to be issued, sold or exchanged, and the number or amount of the Offered Securities to be issued, sold or exchanged, (y) identify the Persons (if known) to which or with which the Offered Securities are to be offered, issued, sold or exchanged and (z) offer to issue and sell to or exchange with such Buyer in accordance with the terms of the Offer all of the Offered Securities, provided that the number of Offered Securities which such Buyer shall have the right to subscribe for under this Section 4(s) shall be (a) based on such Buyer’s pro rata portion of the aggregate original principal amount of the Notes purchased hereunder by all Buyers (the “**Basic Amount**”), and (b) with respect to each Buyer that elects to purchase its Basic Amount, any additional portion of the Offered Securities attributable to the Basic Amounts of other Buyers as such Buyer shall indicate it will purchase or acquire should the other Buyers subscribe for less than their Basic Amounts (the “**Undersubscription Amount**”).

(ii) To accept an Offer, in whole or in part, such Buyer must deliver a written notice to the Company prior to the end of the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Business Day after such Buyer's receipt of the Offer Notice (the "**Offer Period**"), setting forth the portion of such Buyer's Basic Amount that such Buyer elects to purchase and, if such Buyer shall elect to purchase all of its Basic Amount, the Undersubscription Amount, if any, that such Buyer elects to purchase (in either case, the "**Notice of Acceptance**"). If the Basic Amounts subscribed for by all Buyers are less than the total of all of the Basic Amounts, then such Buyer who has set forth an Undersubscription Amount in its Notice of Acceptance shall be entitled to purchase, in addition to the Basic Amounts subscribed for, the Undersubscription Amount it has subscribed for; provided, however, if the Undersubscription Amounts subscribed for exceed the difference between the total of all the Basic Amounts and the Basic Amounts subscribed for (the "**Available Undersubscription Amount**"), such Buyer who has subscribed for any Undersubscription Amount shall be entitled to purchase only that portion of the Available Undersubscription Amount as the Basic Amount of such Buyer bears to the total Basic Amounts of all Buyers that have subscribed for Undersubscription Amounts, subject to rounding by the Company to the extent it deems reasonably necessary. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company desires to modify or amend the terms and conditions of the Offer prior to the expiration of the Offer Period, the Company may deliver to each Buyer a new Offer Notice and the Offer Period shall expire on the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Business Day after such Buyer's receipt of such new Offer Notice.

(iii) The Company shall have five (5) days from the expiration of the Offer Period above (i) to offer, issue, sell or exchange all or any part of such Offered Securities as to which a Notice of Acceptance has not been given by a Buyer (the "**Refused Securities**") pursuant to a definitive agreement(s) (the "**Subsequent Placement Agreement**"), but only to the offerees described in the Offer Notice (if so described therein) and only upon terms and conditions (including, without limitation, unit prices and interest rates) that are not more favorable to the acquiring Person or Persons or less favorable to the Company than those set forth in the Offer Notice and (ii) to publicly announce (a) the execution of such Subsequent Placement Agreement, and (b) either (x) the consummation of the transactions contemplated by such Subsequent Placement Agreement or (y) the termination of such Subsequent Placement Agreement, which shall be filed with the SEC on a Current Report on Form 8-K with such Subsequent Placement Agreement and any documents contemplated therein filed as exhibits thereto.

(iv) In the event the Company shall propose to sell less than all the Refused Securities (any such sale to be in the manner and on the terms specified in Section 4(s)(iii) above), then such Buyer may, at its sole option and in its sole discretion, reduce the number or amount of the Offered Securities specified in its Notice of Acceptance to an amount that shall be not less than the number or amount of the Offered Securities that such Buyer elected to purchase pursuant to Section 4(s)(ii) above multiplied by a fraction, (i) the numerator of which shall be the number or amount of Offered Securities the Company actually proposes to issue, sell or exchange (including Offered Securities to be issued or sold to Buyers pursuant to this Section 4(s) prior to such reduction) and (ii) the denominator of which shall be the original amount of the Offered Securities. In the event that any Buyer so elects to reduce the number or amount of Offered Securities specified in its Notice of Acceptance, the Company may not issue, sell or exchange more than the reduced number or amount of the Offered Securities unless and until such securities have again been offered to the Buyers in accordance with Section 4(s)(i) above.

(v) Upon the closing of the issuance, sale or exchange of all or less than all of the Refused Securities, such Buyer shall acquire from the Company, and the Company shall issue to such Buyer, the number or amount of Offered Securities specified in its Notice of Acceptance. The purchase by such Buyer of any Offered Securities is subject in all cases to the preparation, execution and delivery by the Company and such Buyer of a separate purchase agreement relating to such Offered Securities reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to such Buyer and its counsel.

(vi) Any Offered Securities not acquired by a Buyer or other Persons in accordance with this Section 4(s) may not be issued, sold or exchanged until they are again offered to such Buyer under the procedures specified in this Agreement.

(vii) The Company and each Buyer agree that if any Buyer elects to participate in the Offer, neither the Subsequent Placement Agreement with respect to such Offer nor any other transaction documents related thereto (collectively, the “**Subsequent Placement Documents**”) shall include any term or provision whereby such Buyer shall be required to agree to any restrictions on trading as to any securities of the Company (other than restrictions required by applicable securities laws on the resale of the specific “restricted securities” (as that term is defined under Rule 144) being issued in the Subsequent Placement) or be required to consent to any amendment to or termination of, or grant any waiver, release or the like under or in connection with, any agreement previously entered into with the Company or any instrument received from the Company.

(viii) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Section 4(s) and unless otherwise agreed to by such Buyer, the Company shall either confirm in writing to such Buyer that the transaction with respect to the Subsequent Placement has been abandoned or shall publicly disclose its intention to issue the Offered Securities, in either case in such a manner such that such Buyer will not be in possession of any material, non-public information, by the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Business Day following delivery of the Offer Notice. If by such fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) Business Day, no public disclosure regarding a transaction with respect to the Offered Securities has been made, and no notice regarding the abandonment of such transaction has been received by such Buyer, such transaction shall be deemed to have been abandoned and such Buyer shall not be in possession of any material, non-public information with respect to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries. Should the Company decide to again pursue such transaction with respect to the Offered Securities, the Company shall provide such Buyer with another Offer Notice in accordance with, and subject to, the terms of this Section 4(s) and such Buyer will again have the right of participation set forth in this Section 4(s). The Company shall not be permitted to deliver more than one Offer Notice to such Buyer in any forty-five (45) day period, except as expressly contemplated by the last sentence of Section 4(s)(ii).

(ix) The restrictions contained in this Section 4(s) shall not apply in connection with the issuance of (i) any Excluded Securities or (ii) any Common Stock or Convertible Securities issued pursuant to an Approved Stock Plan. The Company shall not circumvent the provisions of this Section 4(s) by providing terms or conditions to one Buyer that are not provided to all.

(t) Passive Foreign Investment Company. The Company shall conduct its business in such a manner as will ensure that the Company will not be deemed to constitute a passive foreign investment company within the meaning of Section 1297 of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.

(u) Restriction on Redemption and Cash Dividends. So long as any Notes are outstanding, the Company shall not, directly or indirectly, redeem, or declare or pay any cash dividend or distribution on, any securities of the Company without the prior express written consent of the Buyers.

(v) Corporate Existence. So long as any Buyer owns any Notes or Warrants, the Company shall not be party to any Fundamental Transaction (as defined in the Notes) unless the Company is in compliance with the applicable provisions governing Fundamental Transactions set forth in the Notes and the Warrants.

(w) Stockholder Approval. The Company shall provide each stockholder entitled to vote at either (x) the next annual meeting of stockholders of the Company or (y) a special meeting of stockholders of the Company (the “**Stockholder Meeting**”), which shall be promptly called and held not later than December 1, 2015 (the “**Stockholder Meeting Deadline**”), a proxy statement soliciting each such stockholder’s affirmative vote at the Stockholder Meeting for approval of resolutions (“**Stockholder Resolutions**”) providing for the Company’s (x) issuance of all of the Securities as described in the Transaction Documents in accordance with applicable law and the rules and regulations of the Principal Market and (y) an increase in the number of shares of Common Stock the Company is authorized to issue to 250,000,000 (such affirmative approval being referred to herein as the “**Stockholder Approval**”, and the date such Stockholder Approval is obtained, the “**Stockholder Approval Date**”), and the Company shall use its reasonable best efforts to solicit its stockholders’ approval of such resolutions and to cause the Board of Directors of the Company to recommend to the stockholders that they approve such resolutions. The Company shall be obligated to seek to obtain the Stockholder Approval by the Stockholder Meeting Deadline. If, despite the Company’s reasonable best efforts the Stockholder Approval is not obtained on or prior to the Stockholder Meeting Deadline, the Company shall cause an additional Stockholder Meeting to be held once in each of the three subsequent calendar quarters thereafter until such Stockholder Approval is obtained. If, despite the Company’s reasonable best efforts the Stockholder Approval is not obtained after such subsequent stockholder meetings, the Company shall cause an additional Stockholder Meeting to be held semi-annually thereafter until such Stockholder Approval is obtained.

(x) Conversion and Exercise Procedures. Each of the form of Exercise Notice included in the Warrants and the form of Conversion Notice included in the Notes set forth the totality of the procedures required of the Buyers in order to exercise the Warrants or convert the Notes. No additional legal opinion, other information or instructions shall be required of the Buyers to exercise their Warrants or convert their Notes. The Company shall honor exercises of the Warrants and conversions of the Notes and shall deliver the Conversion Shares, Interest Shares and Warrant Shares in accordance with the terms, conditions and time periods set forth in the Notes and Warrants.

## 5. REGISTER; TRANSFER AGENT INSTRUCTIONS; LEGENDS.

(a) Register. The Company shall maintain at its principal executive offices (or such other office or agency of the Company as it may designate by notice to each holder of Securities), a register for the Notes and the Warrants in which the Company shall record the name and address of the Person in whose name the Notes and the Warrants have been issued (including the name and address of each transferee), the principal amount of the Notes held by such Person, the number of Conversion Shares issuable upon conversion of the Notes held by such Person, the number of Interest Shares issuable with respect to the Notes held by such Person and the number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants held by such Person. The Company shall keep the register open and available at all times during business hours for inspection of any Buyer or its legal representatives.

(b) Transfer Agent Instructions. The Company shall issue irrevocable instructions to its transfer agent and any subsequent transfer agent in a form acceptable to each of the Buyers (the “**Irrevocable Transfer Agent Instructions**”) to issue certificates or credit shares to the applicable balance accounts at The Depository Trust Company (“**DTC**”), registered in the name of each Buyer or its respective nominee(s), for the Conversion Shares, the Interest Shares and the Warrant Shares in such amounts as specified from time to time by each Buyer to the Company upon conversion of the Notes or other issuance pursuant to the terms of the Notes or the exercise of the Warrants (as the case may be). The Company represents and warrants that no instruction other than the Irrevocable Transfer Agent Instructions referred to in this Section 5(b) will be given by the Company to its transfer agent with respect to the Securities, and that the Securities shall otherwise be freely transferable on the books and records of the Company. If a Buyer effects a sale, assignment or transfer of the Securities, the Company shall permit the transfer and, to the extent applicable, shall promptly instruct its transfer agent to issue one or more certificates or credit shares to the applicable balance accounts at DTC in such name and in such denominations as specified by such Buyer to effect such sale, transfer or assignment. The Company acknowledges that a breach by it of its obligations hereunder will cause irreparable harm to each Buyer. Accordingly, the Company acknowledges that the remedy at law for a breach of its obligations under this Section 5(b) will be inadequate and agrees, in the event of a breach or threatened breach by the Company of the provisions of this Section 5(b), that each Buyer shall be entitled, in addition to all other available remedies, to an order and/or injunction restraining any breach and requiring immediate issuance and transfer, without the necessity of showing economic loss and without any bond or other security being required. The Company shall cause its counsel to issue the legal opinion referred to in the Irrevocable Transfer Agent Instructions to the Company’s transfer agent to the extent requested by such transfer agent. Any fees (with respect to the transfer agent, counsel to the Company or otherwise) associated with the issuance of such opinion shall be borne by the Company.

(c) Legends. Certificates and any other instruments evidencing the Securities shall not bear any restrictive or other legend.

## 6. CONDITIONS TO THE COMPANY’S OBLIGATION TO SELL.

(a) The obligation of the Company hereunder to issue and sell the Notes and Warrants to each Buyer at the Closing is subject to the satisfaction, at or before the Closing Date, of each of the following conditions, provided that these conditions are for the Company’s sole benefit and may be waived by the Company at any time in its sole discretion by providing each Buyer with prior written notice thereof:



(i) Such Buyer shall have executed each of the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party and delivered the same to the Company.

(ii) Such Buyer and each other Buyer shall have delivered to the Company the Purchase Price (less, in the case of Iroquois, the amounts withheld pursuant to Section 4(j)) for the Notes and Warrants being purchased by such Buyer at the Closing by wire transfer of immediately available funds pursuant to the wire instructions provided by the Company.

(iii) The representations and warranties of such Buyer shall be true and correct in all material respects as of the date when made and as of the Closing Date as though originally made at that time (except for representations and warranties that speak as of a specific date, which shall be true and correct as of such date), and such Buyer shall have performed, satisfied and complied in all material respects with the covenants, agreements and conditions required by this Agreement to be performed, satisfied or complied with by such Buyer at or prior to the Closing Date.

## 7. **CONDITIONS TO EACH BUYER'S OBLIGATION TO PURCHASE.**

(a) The obligation of each Buyer hereunder to purchase its Note and Warrants at the Closing is subject to the satisfaction, at or before the Closing Date, of each of the following conditions, provided that these conditions are for each Buyer's sole benefit and may be waived by such Buyer at any time in its sole discretion by providing the Company with prior written notice thereof:

(i) The Company and each Borrower Subsidiary (as the case may be) shall have duly executed and delivered to such Buyer each of the Transaction Documents to which it is a party and the Company shall have duly executed and delivered to such Buyer a Note (in such original principal amount as is set forth across from such Buyer's name in column (3) on the Schedule of Buyers) and the related Warrants as is set forth across from such Buyer's name in column (4) on the Schedule of Buyers, respectively), in each case, being purchased by such Buyer at the Closing pursuant to this Agreement.

(ii) Such Buyer shall have received the opinion of Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C., the Company's counsel, dated as of the Closing Date, in the form previously provided to the Company.

(iii) The Trustee shall have duly executed and delivered to the Company and such Buyer the Indenture and the Supplemental Indenture. The Indenture and the Supplemental Indenture shall be qualified under the TIA.

(iv) The Company shall have delivered to such Buyer a copy of the Irrevocable Transfer Agent Instructions, in the form acceptable to such Buyer, which instructions shall have been delivered to and acknowledged in writing by the Company's transfer agent.

(v) The Company shall have delivered to such Buyer a certificate evidencing the formation and good standing of the Company and each of its Subsidiaries in each such entity's jurisdiction of formation issued by the Secretary of State (or comparable office) of such jurisdiction of formation as of a date within ten (10) days of the Closing Date.

(vi) The Company shall have delivered to such Buyer a certificate evidencing the Company's and each Borrower Subsidiary's qualification as a foreign corporation and good standing issued by the Secretary of State (or comparable office) of each jurisdiction in which the Company and each Borrower Subsidiary conducts business and is required to so qualify, as of a date within ten (10) days of the Closing Date.

(vii) The Company shall have delivered to such Buyer a certified copy of the Certificate of Incorporation as certified by the Secretary of State of Delaware within ten (10) days of the Closing Date.

(viii) The Company and each Borrower Subsidiary shall have delivered to such Buyer a certificate, in the form acceptable to such Buyer, executed by the Secretary of the Company and each Borrower Subsidiary and dated as of the Closing Date, as to (i) the resolutions consistent with Section 3(b) as adopted by the Company's and each Borrower Subsidiary's board of directors in a form reasonably acceptable to such Buyer, (ii) the Certificate of Incorporation of the Company and the organizational documents of each Borrower Subsidiary and (iii) the Bylaws of the Company and the bylaws of each Borrower Subsidiary, each as in effect at the Closing.

(ix) Each and every representation and warranty of the Company shall be true and correct in all material respects (other than representations and warranties that are already qualified by materiality or Material Adverse Effect which shall be true and correct in all respects) as of the date when made and as of the Closing Date as though originally made at that time (except for representations and warranties that speak as of a specific date, which shall be true and correct as of such specific date) and the Company shall have performed, satisfied and complied in all respects with the covenants, agreements and conditions required to be performed, satisfied or complied with by the Company at or prior to the Closing Date. Such Buyer shall have received a certificate, duly executed by the Chief Executive Officer of the Company, dated as of the Closing Date, to the foregoing effect and as to such other matters as may be reasonably requested by such Buyer in the form acceptable to such Buyer.

(x) The Company shall have delivered to such Buyer a letter from the Company's transfer agent certifying the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding on the Business Day immediately prior to the Closing Date.

(xi) The Common Stock (I) shall be designated for quotation or listed on the Principal Market and (II) shall not have been suspended, as of the Closing Date, by the SEC or the Principal Market from trading on the Principal Market nor shall suspension by the SEC or the Principal Market have been threatened as of the Closing Date, either (A) in writing by the SEC or the Principal Market or (B) by falling below the minimum maintenance requirements of the Principal Market.

(xii) The Company shall have obtained all governmental, regulatory or third party consents and approvals, if any, necessary for the sale of the Securities, including without limitation, those required by the Principal Market.

(xiii) No statute, rule, regulation, executive order, decree, ruling or injunction shall have been enacted, entered, promulgated or endorsed by any court or governmental authority of competent jurisdiction that prohibits the consummation of any of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents.

(xiv) Since the date of execution of this Agreement, no event or series of events shall have occurred that reasonably would have or result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(xv) In accordance with the terms of the Security Documents, the Company shall have delivered to such Buyer (i) the Subsidiary Notes, together with executed blank bond or other transfer powers, (ii) certificates representing the shares of capital stock or other equity ownership interests of each Subsidiary (other than the Borrower Subsidiaries) to the extent such subsidiary is a corporation or otherwise has certificated capital stock or other equity ownership interests, along with duly executed blank stock or other transfer powers, and (iii) appropriate financing statements on Form UCC-1 to be duly filed in such office or offices as may be necessary or, in the opinion of the Buyers, desirable to perfect the security interests purported to be created by the Subsidiary Notes and each Security Document.

(xvi) The Company shall have delivered or caused to be delivered to each Buyer true copies of UCC search results, listing all effective financing statements which name as debtor the Company or any of its Subsidiaries filed in the prior five years to perfect an interest in any assets thereof, together with copies of such financing statements, none of which, except as otherwise agreed in writing by the Buyers, shall cover any of the Collateral (as defined in the Security Documents) and the results of searches for any tax lien and judgment lien filed against such Person or its property, which results, except as otherwise agreed to in writing by the Buyers shall not show any such Liens (as defined in the Security Documents).

(xvii) The Principal Market shall not have objected to the notification of additional listing provided by the Company with respect to the Conversion Shares and Interest Shares issuable pursuant to the Notes.

(xviii) Such Buyer shall have received a letter on the letterhead of the Company, duly executed by an officer of the Company, setting forth the wire instructions of the Company.

(xix) From the date hereof to the Closing Date, (i) trading in the Common Stock shall not have been suspended by the SEC or the Principal Market, and, (ii) at any time prior to the Closing Date, trading in securities generally as reported by Bloomberg L.P. shall not have been suspended or limited, or minimum prices shall not have been established on securities whose trades are reported by such service, or on the Principal Market, nor shall a banking moratorium have been declared either by the United States or New York State authorities nor shall there have occurred any material outbreak or escalation of hostilities or other national or international calamity of such magnitude in its effect on, or any material adverse change in, any financial market which, in each case, in the reasonable judgment of each Buyer, makes it impracticable or inadvisable to purchase the Securities at the Closing.

(xx) The Registration Statement shall be effective and available for the issuance and sale of the Securities to be issued at the Closing hereunder and pursuant to the terms of the Notes and the Warrants and the Company shall have delivered to such Buyer the Prospectus and the Prospectus Supplement as required thereunder.

(xxi) The Company and its Subsidiaries shall have delivered to such Buyer such other documents, instruments or certificates relating to the transactions contemplated by this Agreement as such Buyer or its counsel may reasonably request.

## 8. TERMINATION.

In the event that the Closing shall not have occurred with respect to a Buyer within five (5) days after the date hereof, then such Buyer shall have the right to terminate its obligations under this Agreement with respect to itself at any time on or after the close of business on such date without liability of such Buyer to any other party; provided, however, (i) the right to terminate this Agreement under this Section 8 shall not be available to such Buyer if the failure of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement to have been consummated by such date is the result of such Buyer's breach of this Agreement and (ii) the abandonment of the sale and purchase of the Notes and the Warrants shall be applicable only to such Buyer providing such written notice, provided further that no such termination shall affect any obligation of the Company under this Agreement to reimburse such Buyer for the expenses described in Section 4(j) above. Nothing contained in this Section 8 shall be deemed to release any party from any liability for any breach by such party of the terms and provisions of this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents or to impair the right of any party to compel specific performance by any other party of its obligations under this Agreement or the other Transaction Documents.

## 9. MISCELLANEOUS.

(a) **Governing Law; Jurisdiction; Jury Trial.** All questions concerning the construction, validity, enforcement and interpretation of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents shall be governed by the internal laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to any choice of law or conflict of law provision or rule (whether of the State of New York or any other jurisdictions) that would cause the application of the laws of any jurisdictions other than the State of New York. Each party hereby irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the state and federal courts sitting in The City of New York, Borough of Manhattan, for the adjudication of any dispute hereunder or under any of the other Transaction Documents or in connection herewith or therewith or with any transaction contemplated hereby or thereby or discussed herein or therein, and hereby irrevocably waives, and agrees not to assert in any suit, action or proceeding, any claim that it is not personally subject to the jurisdiction of any such court, that such suit, action or proceeding is brought in an inconvenient forum or that the venue of such suit, action or proceeding is improper. Each party hereby irrevocably waives personal service of process and consents to process being served in any such suit, action or proceeding by mailing a copy thereof to such party at the address for such notices to it under this Agreement and agrees that such service shall constitute good and sufficient service of process and notice thereof. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to limit in any way any right to serve process in any manner permitted by law. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed or operate to preclude any Buyer from bringing suit or taking other legal action against the Company in any other jurisdiction to collect on the Company's obligations to such Buyer or to enforce a judgment or other court ruling in favor of such Buyer. **EACH PARTY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO, AND AGREES NOT TO REQUEST, A JURY TRIAL FOR THE ADJUDICATION OF ANY DISPUTE HEREUNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH OR ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT OR ANY TRANSACTION CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.**

(b) Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in two or more identical counterparts, all of which shall be considered one and the same agreement and shall become effective when counterparts have been signed by each party and delivered to the other party. In the event that any signature is delivered by electronic mail which contains a portable document format (.pdf) file of an executed signature page, such signature page shall create a valid and binding obligation of the party executing (or on whose behalf such signature is executed) with the same force and effect as if such signature page were an original thereof.

(c) Headings; Gender. The headings of this Agreement are for convenience of reference and shall not form part of, or affect the interpretation of, this Agreement. Unless the context clearly indicates otherwise, each pronoun herein shall be deemed to include the masculine, feminine, neuter, singular and plural forms thereof. The terms “including,” “includes,” “include” and words of like import shall be construed broadly as if followed by the words “without limitation.” The terms “herein,” “hereunder,” “hereof” and words of like import refer to this entire Agreement instead of just the provision in which they are found.

(d) Severability. If any provision of this Agreement is prohibited by law or otherwise determined to be invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction, the provision that would otherwise be prohibited, invalid or unenforceable shall be deemed amended to apply to the broadest extent that it would be valid and enforceable, and the invalidity or unenforceability of such provision shall not affect the validity of the remaining provisions of this Agreement so long as this Agreement as so modified continues to express, without material change, the original intentions of the parties as to the subject matter hereof and the prohibited nature, invalidity or unenforceability of the provision(s) in question does not substantially impair the respective expectations or reciprocal obligations of the parties or the practical realization of the benefits that would otherwise be conferred upon the parties. The parties will endeavor in good faith negotiations to replace the prohibited, invalid or unenforceable provision(s) with a valid provision(s), the effect of which comes as close as possible to that of the prohibited, invalid or unenforceable provision(s). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Agreement or any other Transaction Document (and without implication that the following is required or applicable), it is the intention of the parties that in no event shall amounts and value paid by the Company and/or any of its Subsidiaries (as the case may be), or payable to or received by any of the Buyers, under the Transaction Documents (including without limitation, any amounts that would be characterized as “interest” under applicable law) exceed amounts permitted under any applicable law. Accordingly, if any obligation to pay, payment made to any Buyer, or collection by any Buyer pursuant the Transaction Documents is finally judicially determined to be contrary to any such applicable law, such obligation to pay, payment or collection shall be deemed to have been made by mutual mistake of such Buyer, the Company and its Subsidiaries and such amount shall be deemed to have been adjusted with retroactive effect to the maximum amount or rate of interest, as the case may be, as would not be so prohibited by the applicable law. Such adjustment shall be effected, to the extent necessary, by reducing or refunding, at the option of such Buyer, the amount of interest or any other amounts which would constitute unlawful amounts required to be paid or actually paid to such Buyer under the Transaction Documents. For greater certainty, to the extent that any interest, charges, fees, expenses or other amounts required to be paid to or received by such Buyer under any of the Transaction Documents or related thereto are held to be within the meaning of “interest” or another applicable term to otherwise be violative of applicable law, such amounts shall be pro-rated over the period of time to which they relate.

(e) Entire Agreement; Amendments. This Agreement, the other Transaction Documents and the schedules and exhibits attached hereto and thereto and the instruments referenced herein and therein supersede all other prior oral or written agreements between the Buyers, the Company, its Subsidiaries, their affiliates and Persons acting on their behalf solely with respect to the matters contained herein and therein, and this Agreement, the other Transaction Documents, the schedules and exhibits attached hereto and thereto and the instruments referenced herein and therein contain the entire understanding of the parties solely with respect to the matters covered herein and therein; provided, however, nothing contained in this Agreement or any other Transaction Document shall (or shall be deemed to) (i) have any effect on any agreements any Buyer has entered into with, or any instruments any Buyer has received from, the Company or any of its Subsidiaries prior to the date hereof with respect to any prior investment made by such Buyer in the Company or (ii) waive, alter, modify or amend in any respect any obligations of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, or any rights of or benefits to any Buyer or any other Person, in any agreement entered into prior to the date hereof between or among the Company and/or any of its Subsidiaries and any Buyer, or any instruments any Buyer received from the Company and/or any of its Subsidiaries prior to the date hereof, and all such agreements and instruments shall continue in full force and effect. Except as specifically set forth herein or therein, neither the Company nor any Buyer makes any representation, warranty, covenant or undertaking with respect to such matters. For clarification purposes, the Recitals are part of this Agreement. No provision of this Agreement may be amended other than by an instrument in writing signed by the Company and each of the Buyers. No waiver shall be effective unless it is in writing and signed by an authorized representative of the waiving party. No consideration shall be offered or paid to any Person to amend or consent to a waiver or modification of any provision of any of the Transaction Documents unless the same consideration also is offered to all of the parties to the Transaction Documents, all holders of the Notes or all holders of the Warrants (as the case may be). The Company has not, directly or indirectly, made any agreements with any Buyers relating to the terms or conditions of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents except as set forth in the Transaction Documents. Without limiting the foregoing, the Company confirms that, except as set forth in this Agreement, no Buyer has made any commitment or promise or has any other obligation to provide any financing to the Company, any Subsidiary or otherwise. As a material inducement for each Buyer to enter into this Agreement, the Company expressly acknowledges and agrees that (i) no due diligence or other investigation or inquiry conducted by a Buyer, any of its advisors or any of its representatives shall affect such Buyer's right to rely on, or shall modify or qualify in any manner or be an exception to any of, the Company's representations and warranties contained in this Agreement or any other Transaction Document and (ii) unless a provision of this Agreement or any other Transaction Document is expressly preceded by the phrase "except as disclosed in the SEC Documents," nothing contained in any of the SEC Documents shall affect such Buyer's right to rely on, or shall modify or qualify in any manner or be an exception to any of, the Company's representations and warranties contained in this Agreement or any other Transaction Document.

(f) Notices. Any notices, consents, waivers or other communications required or permitted to be given under the terms of this Agreement must be in writing and will be deemed to have been delivered: (i) upon receipt, when delivered personally; (ii) upon receipt, when sent by electronic mail; or (iii) one (1) Business Day after deposit with an overnight courier service with next day delivery specified, in each case, properly addressed to the party to receive the same. The mailing addresses and electronic mail addresses for such communications shall be:

If to the Company:

Vringo, Inc.  
780 Third Avenue, 12th Floor  
New York, NY 10017  
Telephone: (646) 532-6778  
E-mail: Exec@vringo.com  
Attention: Andrew Perlman

With a copy (for informational purposes only) to:

Mintz, Levin, Cohn, Ferris, Glovsky and Popeo, P.C.  
Chrysler Center  
666 Third Avenue  
New York, NY 10017  
Telephone: 212-692-6768  
E-mail: krkoch@mintz.com  
Attention: Kenneth R. Koch

If to the Transfer Agent:

American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC  
6201 15th Avenue  
Brooklyn, NY 11219  
Telephone: 718-921-8210  
E-mail: admin5@amstock.com  
Attention: Joe Alicia

If to a Buyer, to its mailing address and electronic mail address set forth on the Schedule of Buyers, with copies to such Buyer's representatives as set forth on the Schedule of Buyers,

with a copy (for informational purposes only) to:

Lowenstein Sandler LLP  
1251 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, New York 10020  
Telephone: (973) 597-2382  
E-mail: jhogoboom@lowenstein.com  
Attention: John. D. Hogoboom

or to such other mailing address and/or electronic mail address and/or to the attention of such other Person as the recipient party has specified by written notice given to each other party five (5) days prior to the effectiveness of such change, provided that Lowenstein Sandler LLP shall only be provided copies of notices sent to Iroquois. Written or electronic mail confirmation of receipt (A) given by the recipient of such notice, consent, waiver or other communication, or (B) provided by an overnight courier service shall be rebuttable evidence of personal service or receipt from an overnight courier service in accordance with clause (i), (ii) or (iii) above, respectively.

(g) Successors and Assigns. This Agreement shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties and their respective successors and assigns, including any assignee of any of the Securities. The Company shall not assign this Agreement or any rights or obligations hereunder without the prior written consent of each of the Buyers, including, without limitation, by way of a Fundamental Transaction (as defined in the Warrants) (unless the Company is in compliance with the applicable provisions governing Fundamental Transactions set forth in the Warrants) or a Fundamental Transaction (as defined in the Notes) (unless the Company is in compliance with the applicable provisions governing Fundamental Transactions set forth in the Notes). A Buyer may assign some or all of its rights hereunder in connection with any transfer of any of its Securities without the consent of the Company, in which event such assignee shall be deemed to be a Buyer hereunder with respect to such assigned rights.

(h) No Third Party Beneficiaries. This Agreement is intended for the benefit of the parties hereto and their respective permitted successors and assigns, and is not for the benefit of, nor may any provision hereof be enforced by, any other Person, other than the Indemnitees referred to in Section 9(k).

(i) Survival. The representations, warranties, agreements and covenants shall survive the Closing. Each Buyer shall be responsible only for its own representations, warranties, agreements and covenants hereunder.

(j) Further Assurances. Each party shall do and perform, or cause to be done and performed, all such further acts and things, and shall execute and deliver all such other agreements, certificates, instruments and documents, as any other party may reasonably request in order to carry out the intent and accomplish the purposes of this Agreement and the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby.



(k) Indemnification.

(i) In consideration of each Buyer's execution and delivery of the Transaction Documents and acquiring the Securities thereunder and in addition to all of the Company's other obligations under the Transaction Documents, the Company shall defend, protect, indemnify and hold harmless each Buyer and each holder of any Securities and all of their stockholders, partners, members, officers, directors, employees and direct or indirect investors and any of the foregoing Persons' agents or other representatives (including, without limitation, those retained in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement) (collectively, the "**Indemnitees**") from and against any and all actions, causes of action, suits, claims, losses, costs, penalties, fees, liabilities and damages, and expenses in connection therewith (irrespective of whether any such Indemnitee is a party to the action for which indemnification hereunder is sought), and including reasonable attorneys' fees and disbursements (the "**Indemnified Liabilities**"), incurred by any Indemnitee as a result of, or arising out of, or relating to (a) any misrepresentation or breach of any representation or warranty made by the Company or any Subsidiary in any of the Transaction Documents, (b) any breach of any covenant, agreement or obligation of the Company or any Subsidiary contained in any of the Transaction Documents, (c) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained, or incorporated by reference, in the Registration Statement or any amendment thereto or any omission or alleged omission to state therein, or in any document incorporated by reference therein, a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading, (d) any untrue statement or alleged untrue statement of a material fact contained, or incorporated by reference, in the Prospectus, any Issuer Free Writing Prospectus, or in any amendment thereof or supplement thereto, or in any "issuer information" (as defined in Rule 433 under the Securities Act) of the Company, which "issuer information" is required to be, or is, filed with the Commission or otherwise contained in any Free Writing Prospectus, or any amendment or supplement thereto, or any omission or alleged omission to state therein, or in any document incorporated by reference therein, a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading, (e) any violation of United States federal or state securities laws or the rules and regulations of the Principal Market or any Eligible Market in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, the Warrants, the Indenture and the Notes by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, affiliates, officers, directors or employees or (f) any cause of action, suit, proceeding or claim brought or made against such Indemnitee by a third party (including for these purposes a derivative action brought on behalf of the Company or any Subsidiary) or which otherwise involves such Indemnitee that arises out of or results from (i) the execution, delivery, performance or enforcement of any of the Transaction Documents, (ii) any transaction financed or to be financed in whole or in part, directly or indirectly, with the proceeds of the issuance of the Securities, (iii) any disclosure properly made by such Buyer pursuant to Section 4(1), or (iv) the status of such Buyer or holder of the Securities either as an investor in the Company pursuant to the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents or as a party to this Agreement (including, without limitation, as a party in interest or otherwise in any action or proceeding for injunctive or other equitable relief). To the extent that the foregoing undertaking by the Company may be unenforceable for any reason, the Company shall make the maximum contribution to the payment and satisfaction of each of the Indemnified Liabilities which is permissible under applicable law.

(ii) Promptly after receipt by an Indemnitee under this Section 9(k) of notice of the commencement of any action or proceeding (including any governmental action or proceeding) involving an Indemnified Liability, such Indemnitee shall, if a claim in respect thereof is to be made against the Company under this Section 9(k), deliver to the Company a written notice of the commencement thereof, and the Company shall have the right to participate in, and, to the extent the Company so desires, to assume control of the defense thereof with counsel mutually satisfactory to the Company and the Indemnitee; provided, however, that an Indemnitee shall have the right to retain its own counsel with the fees and expenses of such counsel to be paid by the Company if: (i) the Company has agreed in writing to pay such fees and expenses; (ii) the Company shall have failed promptly to assume the defense of such Indemnified Liability and to employ counsel reasonably satisfactory to such Indemnitee in any such Indemnified Liability; or (iii) the named parties to any such Indemnified Liability (including any impleaded parties) include both such Indemnitee and the Company, and such Indemnitee shall have been advised by counsel that a conflict of interest is likely to exist if the same counsel were to represent such Indemnitee and the Company (in which case, if such Indemnitee notifies the Company in writing that it elects to employ separate counsel at the expense of the Company, then the Company shall not have the right to assume the defense thereof and such counsel shall be at the expense of the Company), provided further, that in the case of clause (iii) above the Company shall not be responsible for the reasonable fees and expenses of more than one (1) separate legal counsel for such Indemnitee. The Indemnitee shall reasonably cooperate with the Company in connection with any negotiation or defense of any such action or Indemnified Liability by the Company and shall furnish to the Company all information reasonably available to the Indemnitee which relates to such action or Indemnified Liability. The Company shall keep the Indemnitee reasonably apprised at all times as to the status of the defense or any settlement negotiations with respect thereto. The Company shall not be liable for any settlement of any action, claim or proceeding effected without its prior written consent, provided, however, that the Company shall not unreasonably withhold, delay or condition its consent. The Company shall not, without the prior written consent of the Indemnitee, consent to entry of any judgment or enter into any settlement or other compromise which does not include as an unconditional term thereof the giving by the claimant or plaintiff to such Indemnitee of a release from all liability in respect to such Indemnified Liability or litigation, and such settlement shall not include any admission as to fault on the part of the Indemnitee. Following indemnification as provided for hereunder, the Company shall be subrogated to all rights of the Indemnitee with respect to all third parties, firms or corporations relating to the matter for which indemnification has been made. The failure to deliver written notice to the Company within a reasonable time of the commencement of any such action shall not relieve the Company of any liability to the Indemnitee under this Section 9(k), except to the extent that the Company is materially and adversely prejudiced in its ability to defend such action.

(iii) The indemnification required by this Section 9(k) shall be made by periodic payments of the amount thereof during the course of the investigation or defense, as and when bills are received or Indemnified Liabilities are incurred.

(iv) The indemnity agreement contained herein shall be in addition to (A) any cause of action or similar right of the Indemnitee against the Company or others, and (B) any liabilities the Company may be subject to pursuant to applicable law.

(l) Construction. The language used in this Agreement will be deemed to be the language chosen by the parties to express their mutual intent, and no rules of strict construction will be applied against any party. No specific representation or warranty shall limit the generality or applicability of a more general representation or warranty. Each and every reference to share prices, shares of Common Stock and any other numbers in this Agreement that relate to the Common Stock shall be automatically adjusted for any stock splits, stock dividends, stock combinations, recapitalizations or other similar transactions that occur with respect to the Common Stock after the date of this Agreement.

(m) Remedies. Each Buyer and each holder of any Securities shall have all rights and remedies set forth in the Transaction Documents and all rights and remedies which such holders have been granted at any time under any other agreement or contract and all of the rights which such holders have under any law. Any Person having any rights under any provision of this Agreement shall be entitled to enforce such rights specifically (without posting a bond or other security), to recover damages by reason of any breach of any provision of this Agreement and to exercise all other rights granted by law. Furthermore, the Company recognizes that in the event that it or any Subsidiary fails to perform, observe, or discharge any or all of its or such Subsidiary's (as the case may be) obligations under the Transaction Documents, any remedy at law may prove to be inadequate relief to the Buyers. The Company therefore agrees that the Buyers shall be entitled to seek specific performance and/or temporary, preliminary and permanent injunctive or other equitable relief from any court of competent jurisdiction in any such case without the necessity of proving actual damages and without posting a bond or other security.

(n) Withdrawal Right. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in (and without limiting any similar provisions of) the Transaction Documents, whenever any Buyer exercises a right, election, demand or option under a Transaction Document and the Company or any Subsidiary does not timely perform its related obligations within the periods therein provided, then such Buyer may rescind or withdraw, in its sole discretion from time to time upon written notice to the Company or such Subsidiary (as the case may be), any relevant notice, demand or election in whole or in part without prejudice to its future actions and rights.

(o) Payment Set Aside; Currency. To the extent that the Company makes a payment or payments to any Buyer hereunder or pursuant to any of the other Transaction Documents or any of the Buyers enforce or exercise their rights hereunder or thereunder, and such payment or payments or the proceeds of such enforcement or exercise or any part thereof are subsequently invalidated, declared to be fraudulent or preferential, set aside, recovered from, disgorged by or are required to be refunded, repaid or otherwise restored to the Company, a trustee, receiver or any other Person under any law (including, without limitation, any bankruptcy law, foreign, state or federal law, common law or equitable cause of action), then to the extent of any such restoration the obligation or part thereof originally intended to be satisfied shall be revived and continued in full force and effect as if such payment had not been made or such enforcement or setoff had not occurred. Unless otherwise expressly indicated, all dollar amounts referred to in this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents are in United States Dollars ("**U.S. Dollars**"), and all amounts owing under this Agreement and all other Transaction Documents shall be paid in U.S. Dollars. All amounts denominated in other currencies (if any) shall be converted into the U.S. Dollar equivalent amount in accordance with the Exchange Rate on the date of calculation. "**Exchange Rate**" means, in relation to any amount of currency to be converted into U.S. Dollars pursuant to this Agreement, the U.S. Dollar exchange rate as published in the Wall Street Journal on the relevant date of calculation.

(p) Maximum Payments. Nothing contained in the Indenture, the Supplemental Indenture or any of the Notes shall be deemed to establish or require the payment of a rate of interest or other charges in excess of the maximum permitted by applicable law. In the event that the rate of interest required to be paid or other charges under any of the Notes exceeds the maximum permitted by such law, such rate and such charges, to the extent applicable, shall be automatically reduced to the maximum rate and charges, as applicable, permitted by applicable law, without further action by the parties hereto, and any payments or amounts actually received by the holder thereof in excess of such maximum shall be refunded to the Company, which refund may be accomplished, at the option of the Company, by credit against amounts owed by the Company to such holder or by actual return to the Company by such holder.

(q) Independent Nature of Buyers' Obligations and Rights. The obligations of each Buyer under the Transaction Documents are several and not joint with the obligations of any other Buyer, and no Buyer shall be responsible in any way for the performance of the obligations of any other Buyer under any Transaction Document. Nothing contained herein or in any other Transaction Document, and no action taken by any Buyer pursuant hereto or thereto, shall be deemed to constitute the Buyers as, and the Company acknowledges that the Buyers do not so constitute, a partnership, an association, a joint venture or any other kind of group or entity, or create a presumption that the Buyers are in any way acting in concert or as a group or entity with respect to such obligations or the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents or any matters, and the Company acknowledges that the Buyers are not acting in concert or as a group, and the Company shall not assert any such claim, with respect to such obligations or the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents. The decision of each Buyer to purchase Securities pursuant to the Transaction Documents has been made by such Buyer independently of any other Buyer. Each Buyer acknowledges that no other Buyer has acted as agent for such Buyer in connection with such Buyer making its investment hereunder and that no other Buyer will be acting as agent of such Buyer in connection with monitoring such Buyer's investment in the Securities or enforcing its rights under the Transaction Documents. The Company and each Buyer confirms that each Buyer has independently participated with the Company and its Subsidiaries in the negotiation of the transaction contemplated hereby with the advice of its own counsel and advisors. Each Buyer shall be entitled to independently protect and enforce its rights, including, without limitation, the rights arising out of this Agreement or out of any other Transaction Documents, and it shall not be necessary for any other Buyer to be joined as an additional party in any proceeding for such purpose. The use of a single agreement to effectuate the purchase and sale of the Securities contemplated hereby was solely in the control of the Company, not the action or decision of any Buyer, and was done solely for the convenience of the Company and its Subsidiaries and not because it was required or requested to do so by any Buyer. It is expressly understood and agreed that each provision contained in this Agreement and in each other Transaction Document is between the Company, each Subsidiary and a Buyer, solely, and not between the Company, its Subsidiaries and the Buyers collectively and not between and among the Buyers.

(r) Judgment Currency.

(i) If for the purpose of obtaining or enforcing judgment against the Company in any court in any jurisdiction it becomes necessary to convert into any other currency (such other currency being hereinafter in this Section 9(r) referred to as the "**Judgment Currency**") an amount due in U.S. Dollars under this Agreement or any other Transaction Document, the conversion shall be made at the Exchange Rate prevailing on the Trading Day immediately preceding: (1) the date actual payment of the amount due, in the case of any proceeding in the courts of Illinois or in the courts of any other jurisdiction that will give effect to such conversion being made on such date or (2) the date on which the foreign court determines, in the case of any proceeding in the courts of any other jurisdiction (the date as of which such conversion is made pursuant to this Section 9(r)(i) being hereinafter referred to as the "**Judgment Conversion Date**").

(ii) If in the case of any proceeding in the court of any jurisdiction referred to in Section 9(r)(i) above, there is a change in the Exchange Rate prevailing between the Judgment Conversion Date and the date of actual payment of the amount due, the applicable party shall pay such adjusted amount as may be necessary to ensure that the amount paid in the Judgment Currency, when converted at the Exchange Rate prevailing on the date of payment, will produce the amount of U.S. Dollars which could have been purchased with the amount of Judgment Currency stipulated in the judgment or judicial order at the Exchange Rate prevailing on the Judgment Conversion Date.

(iii) Any amount due from the Company under this provision shall be due as a separate debt and shall not be affected by judgment being obtained for any other amounts due under or in respect of this Agreement or any other Transaction Document.

*[signature pages follow]*

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, each Buyer and the Company have caused their respective signature page to this Agreement to be duly executed as of the date first written above.

**COMPANY:**

**VRINGO, INC.**

By: /s/ Andrew Perlman  
Name: Andrew Perlman  
Title: Chief Executive Officer

---

ANNEX I - 45

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, each Buyer and the Company have caused their respective signature page to this Agreement to be duly executed as of the date first written above.

**BUYER:**

**IROQUOIS MASTER FUND LTD.**

/s/ Joshua Silverman

By: Joshua Silverman, Authorized Signatory

---

ANNEX I - 46

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, each Buyer and the Company have caused their respective signature page to this Agreement to be duly executed as of the date first written above.

**BUYER:**

**IROQUOIS CAPITAL INVESTMENT  
GROUP LLC**

/s/ Joshua Silverman

By: Joshua Silverman, Authorized Signatory

---

ANNEX I - 47

---



**SCHEDULE OF BUYERS**

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
<b>Buyer</b>	<b>Address and E-mail Address</b>	<b>Principal Amount of Notes</b>	<b>Number of Warrant Shares</b>	<b>Purchase Price</b>
<b>Iroquois Master Fund Ltd.</b>	205 East 42nd St- 20th Fl. New York NY 10017 E-mail: JSilverman@icfund.com	\$ 10,000,000	4,300,000	\$ 10,000,000
<b>Iroquois Capital Investment Group LLC</b>	205 East 42nd St- 20th Fl. New York NY 10017 E-mail: JSilverman@icfund.com	\$ 2,500,000	1,075,000	\$ 2,500,000
<b>Totals:</b>		\$ 12,500,000	5,375,000	\$ 12,500,000

## FORM OF SENIOR SECURED CONVERTIBLE NOTE

ANY TRANSFEREE OF THIS NOTE SHOULD CAREFULLY REVIEW THE TERMS OF THIS NOTE, INCLUDING SECTIONS 3(c)(iii) AND 18(a) HEREOF. THE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT REPRESENTED BY THIS NOTE AND, ACCORDINGLY, THE SECURITIES ISSUABLE UPON CONVERSION HEREOF MAY BE LESS THAN THE AMOUNTS SET FORTH ON THE FACE HEREOF PURSUANT TO SECTION 3(c)(iii) OF THIS NOTE.

VRINGO, INC.

## SENIOR SECURED CONVERTIBLE NOTE

Issuance Date: May 4, 2015

Original Principal Amount: U.S. \$[\_\_\_\_\_]

**FOR VALUE RECEIVED**, Vringo, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), hereby promises to pay to the order of [\_\_\_\_\_] or its registered assigns (“**Holder**”) the amount set forth above as the Original Principal Amount (as reduced pursuant to the terms hereof pursuant to redemption, conversion or otherwise, the “**Principal**”) when due, whether upon the Maturity Date (as defined below), on any Installment Date with respect to the Installment Amount due on such Installment Date (each as defined below), or upon acceleration, redemption or otherwise (in each case in accordance with the terms hereof) and to pay interest (“**Interest**”) on any outstanding Principal at the applicable Interest Rate (as defined below) from the date set forth above as the Issuance Date (the “**Issuance Date**”) until the same becomes due and payable, whether upon the Maturity Date, any Installment Date with respect to the Installment Amount due on such Installment Date, or upon acceleration, conversion, redemption or otherwise (in each case in accordance with the terms hereof). This Senior Secured Convertible Note (including all Senior Secured Convertible Notes issued in exchange, transfer or replacement hereof, this “**Note**”) is one of an issue of Senior Secured Convertible Notes (collectively, the “**Notes**”) issued pursuant to (i) the Indenture, (ii) the Supplemental Indenture, (iii) the Securities Purchase Agreement and (iv) the Company’s Registration Statement on Form S-3 (File number 333-182823). Certain capitalized terms used herein are defined in Section 28.

1. **PAYMENTS OF PRINCIPAL**. On each Installment Date (which includes the Maturity Date), the Company shall pay to the Holder an amount equal to the Installment Amount due on such Installment Date in accordance with Section 8. On the Maturity Date, the Company shall pay to the Holder an amount in cash, shares of Common Stock, or a combination thereof, representing all outstanding Principal, accrued and unpaid Interest and accrued and unpaid Late Charges (as defined below), if any, on such Principal and Interest. Other than as specifically permitted by this Note, the Company may not prepay any portion of the outstanding Principal, accrued and unpaid Interest or accrued and unpaid Late Charges on Principal and Interest, if any.

2. INTEREST; INTEREST RATE.

(a) Interest on this Note shall commence accruing on the Issuance Date and shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year and twelve 30-day months, shall compound on each Interest Date, and shall be payable in arrears quarterly on each Interest Date with the first Interest Date being July 1, 2015. Interest shall be payable on each Interest Date, to the record holder of this Note on the applicable Interest Date, in shares of Common Stock ("**Interest Shares**", and each such Interest Date in which Interest Shares are to be paid hereunder, an "**Interest Share Delivery Deadline**") so long as there has been no Equity Conditions Failure; provided however, that the Company may, at its option following written notice to the Holder, pay Interest on any Interest Date in cash ("**Cash Interest**") or in a combination of Cash Interest and Interest Shares. The Company shall deliver a written notice (each, an "**Interest Election Notice**") to each holder of the Notes on or prior to the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Trading Day prior to the applicable Interest Date (the "**Interest Notice Due Date**", and the date such notice is delivered to all of the holders of Notes, the "**Interest Notice Date**") which notice (i) either (A) confirms that Interest to be paid on such Interest Date shall be paid entirely in Interest Shares or (B) elects to pay Interest as Cash Interest or a combination of Cash Interest and Interest Shares and specifies the amount of Interest that shall be paid as Cash Interest and the amount of Interest, if any, that shall be paid in Interest Shares and (ii) certifies that there has been no Equity Conditions Failure. If an Equity Conditions Failure has occurred as of the Interest Notice Date, then the applicable Interest Notice shall state either (x) the Company has elected to pay such Interest as Cash Interest or (y) the Company is seeking the consent of the Holder to waive the Equity Conditions Failure to permit the payment of such Interest, in whole or in part, as specified by the Company in such Interest Notice, in Interest Shares; provided, that if the Holder does not waive such Equity Conditions Failure, such Interest shall be paid as Cash Interest. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, if no Equity Conditions Failure has occurred as of the Interest Notice Date but an Equity Conditions Failure occurs at any time prior to the Interest Date, (A) the Company shall provide the Holder a subsequent notice to that effect and (B) unless the Holder waives the Equity Conditions Failure, the Interest shall be paid in cash. Interest to be paid on an Interest Date in Interest Shares shall be paid in a number of fully paid and nonassessable shares (rounded to the nearest whole share in accordance with Section 3(a)) of Common Stock equal to the quotient of (1) the amount of Interest payable on such Interest Date less any Cash Interest paid and (2) the Interest Conversion Price in effect on the applicable Interest Date. If the Company fails to deliver an Interest Election Notice with respect to an Interest Date on or prior to the applicable Interest Notice Due Date, the Company shall be deemed to have delivered an Interest Election Notice confirming that Interest to be paid on such Interest Date shall be paid entirely in Interest Shares and certifying that no Equity Conditions Failure then exists.

(b) When any Interest Shares are to be paid on an Interest Date, the Company shall (i) (A) provided that the Company's Transfer Agent (as defined below) is participating in the DTC (as defined below) Fast Automated Securities Transfer Program, credit such aggregate number of Interest Shares to which the Holder shall be entitled to the Holder's or its designee's balance account with DTC through its Deposit/Withdrawal at Custodian system, or (B) if the Transfer Agent is not participating in the DTC Fast Automated Securities Transfer Program, issue and deliver on the applicable Interest Date, to the address set forth in the register maintained by the Company for such purpose pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement or to such address as specified by the Holder in writing to the Company at least three (3) Business Days prior to the applicable Interest Date, a certificate, registered in the name of the Holder or its designee, for the number of Interest Shares to which the Holder shall be entitled and (ii) with respect to each Interest Date, pay to the Holder, in cash by wire transfer of immediately available funds, the amount of any Cash Interest. The Company shall not issue any fraction of a share of Common Stock upon any issuance of Interest Shares on any Interest Date. If the issuance would result in the issuance of a fraction of a share of Common Stock, the Company shall round such fraction of a share of Common Stock up to the nearest whole share. In addition to Holder's right to pursue any remedies available to it hereunder, at law or in equity, including, without limitation, a decree of specific performance and/or injunctive relief with respect to the Company's failure to timely deliver certificates representing Interest Shares (or to electronically deliver such Interest Shares), any failure by the Company to timely deliver Interest Shares to the Holder (or its designee) on an Interest Date shall be subject to the provisions of Section 3(c)(ii) below. When any Interest Shares are to be paid on an Interest Date, notwithstanding anything in the Indenture or the Supplemental Indenture to the contrary, such Interest Shares shall be delivered directly to, or to the account of, the Holder as provided above and the Company shall provide written notice to the Trustee that such Interest Shares have been delivered in full or partial satisfaction of the Company's obligation to pay interest on this Note for the relevant interest period. The Trustee shall be entitled to absolutely rely on such notice without further inquiry or investigation.

(c) Prior to the payment of Interest on an Interest Date, the Maturity Date or any applicable Redemption Date, Interest on this Note shall accrue at the Interest Rate and be payable by way of inclusion of the Interest in the Conversion Amount on each Conversion Date in accordance with Section 3(b)(i) or upon any redemption in accordance with Section 13 or any required payment upon any Bankruptcy Event of Default (as defined below). From and after the occurrence and during the continuance of any Event of Default, the Interest Rate shall automatically be increased to sixteen and on-half percent (16.5%) per annum. In the event that such Event of Default is subsequently cured, the adjustment referred to in the preceding sentence shall cease to be effective as of the calendar day immediately following the date of such cure; provided that the Interest as calculated and unpaid at such increased rate during the continuance of such Event of Default shall continue to apply to the extent relating to the days after the occurrence of such Event of Default through and including the date of such cure of such Event of Default. The Company shall pay any and all transfer, stamp, issuance and similar taxes, costs and expenses (including, without limitation, fees and expenses of the Transfer Agent (as defined below) and the Trustee) that may be payable with respect to the issuance and delivery of shares of Common Stock issuable hereunder.

3. CONVERSION OF NOTES. This Note shall be convertible into validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable shares of Common Stock (as defined below), on the terms and conditions set forth in this Section 3.

(a) Conversion Right. Subject to the provisions of Section 3(d), at any time or times on or after the Issuance Date, the Holder shall be entitled to convert any portion of the outstanding and unpaid Conversion Amount (as defined below) into validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable shares of Common Stock in accordance with Section 3(c), at the Conversion Rate (as defined below). The Company shall not issue any fraction of a share of Common Stock upon any conversion. If the issuance would result in the issuance of a fraction of a share of Common Stock, the Company shall round such fraction of a share of Common Stock up to the nearest whole share. The Company shall pay any and all transfer, stamp, issuance and similar taxes, costs and expenses (including, without limitation, fees and expenses of the Transfer Agent (as defined below) and the Trustee) that may be payable with respect to the issuance and delivery of Common Stock upon conversion of any Conversion Amount.

(b) Conversion Rate.

(i) The number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion of any Conversion Amount pursuant to Section 3(a) shall be determined by dividing (x) such Conversion Amount by (y) the Conversion Price (the “**Conversion Rate**”).

(1) “**Conversion Amount**” means the portion of the Principal to be converted, redeemed or otherwise with respect to which this determination is being made, plus all accrued and unpaid Interest with respect to such portion of the Principal amount and accrued and unpaid Late Charges with respect to such portion of such Principal and such Interest.

(2) “**Conversion Price**” means, as of any Conversion Date or other date of determination, \$1.00, subject to adjustment as provided herein.

(c) Mechanics of Conversion.

(i) Optional Conversion Prior to Maturity Date. To convert any Conversion Amount into shares of Common Stock on any date (a “**Conversion Date**”), the Holder shall deliver (whether via electronic mail or otherwise), for receipt on or prior to 11:59 p.m., New York time, on such date, a copy of an executed notice of conversion in the form attached hereto as Exhibit I (the “**Conversion Notice**”) to the Company and the Trustee. If required by Section 3(c)(iii), within three (3) Trading Days following a conversion of this Note as aforesaid, the Holder shall surrender this Note to a nationally recognized overnight delivery service for delivery to the Company (or an indemnification undertaking with respect to this Note in the case of its loss, theft or destruction as contemplated by Section 18(b)). On or before 5:00 p.m, New York time, on the first (1<sup>st</sup>) Trading Day following the date of receipt of a Conversion Notice, the Company shall transmit by electronic mail an acknowledgment of confirmation, in the form attached hereto as Exhibit II, of receipt of such Conversion Notice to the Holder, the Trustee and the Company’s transfer agent (the “**Transfer Agent**”). On or before the third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Trading Day following the date of receipt of a Conversion Notice, the Company shall (1) provided that the Transfer Agent is participating in The Depository Trust Company’s (“**DTC**”) Fast Automated Securities Transfer Program, credit such aggregate number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder shall be entitled to the Holder’s or its designee’s balance account with DTC through its Deposit/Withdrawal at Custodian system or (2) if the Transfer Agent is not participating in the DTC Fast Automated Securities Transfer Program, issue and deliver (via reputable overnight courier) to the address as specified in the Conversion Notice, a certificate, registered in the name of the Holder or its designee, for the number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder shall be entitled. If this Note is physically surrendered for conversion pursuant to Section 3(c)(iii) and the outstanding Principal of this Note is greater than the Principal portion of the Conversion Amount being converted, then the Company shall as soon as practicable and in no event later than five (5) Business Days after receipt of this Note and at its own expense, issue and, following authentication of such new Note, deliver to the Holder (or its designee) a new Note (in accordance with Section 18(d)) representing the outstanding Principal not converted. The Person or Persons entitled to receive the shares of Common Stock issuable upon a conversion of this Note shall be treated for all purposes as the record holder or holders of such shares of Common Stock on the Conversion Date. In the event of a partial conversion of this Note pursuant hereto, the Principal amount converted shall be deducted from the Installment Amount(s) relating to the Installment Date(s) as set forth in the applicable Conversion Notice.

(ii) Company's Failure to Timely Convert. If the Company shall fail, for any reason or for no reason, to issue to the Holder within three (3) Trading Days after the Company's receipt of a Conversion Notice (whether via electronic mail or otherwise), a certificate for the number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled and register such shares of Common Stock on the Company's share register or to credit the Holder's or its designee's balance account with DTC for such number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled upon the Holder's conversion of any Conversion Amount (as the case may be) (a "**Conversion Failure**"), then, in addition to all other remedies available to the Holder, (1) the Company shall pay in cash to the Holder on each day after such third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Trading Day that the issuance of such shares of Common Stock is not timely effected an amount equal to 2% of the product of (A) the sum of the number of shares of Common Stock not issued to the Holder on a timely basis and to which the Holder is entitled multiplied by (B) the Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on the Trading Day immediately preceding the last possible date which the Company could have issued such shares of Common Stock to the Holder without violating Section 3(c)(i) and (2) the Holder, upon written notice to the Company, may void its Conversion Notice with respect to, and retain or have returned (as the case may be) any portion of this Note that has not been converted pursuant to such Conversion Notice, provided that the voiding of a Conversion Notice shall not affect the Company's obligations to make any payments which have accrued prior to the date of such notice pursuant to this Section 3(c)(ii) or otherwise. In addition to the foregoing, if within three (3) Trading Days after the Company's receipt of a Conversion Notice (whether via electronic mail or otherwise), the Company shall fail to issue and deliver to the Holder (or its designee) a certificate and register such shares of Common Stock on the Company's share register or credit the Holder's or its designee's balance account with DTC for the number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled upon the Holder's conversion hereunder (as the case may be), and if on or after such third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Trading Day the Holder (or any other Person in respect, or on behalf, of the Holder) purchases (in an open market transaction or otherwise) shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by the Holder of all or any portion of the number of shares of Common Stock, or a sale of a number of shares of Common Stock equal to all or any portion of the number of shares of Common Stock, issuable upon such conversion that the Holder so anticipated receiving from the Company, then, in addition to all other remedies available to the Holder, the Company shall, within three (3) Business Days after the Holder's request and in the Holder's discretion, either (i) pay cash to the Holder in an amount equal to the Holder's total purchase price (including brokerage commissions and other out-of-pocket expenses, if any) for the shares of Common Stock so purchased (including, without limitation, by any other Person in respect, or on behalf, of the Holder) (the "**Buy-In Price**"), at which point the Company's obligation to so issue and deliver such certificate or credit the Holder's balance account with DTC for the number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled upon the Holder's conversion hereunder (as the case may be) (and to issue such shares of Common Stock) shall terminate, or (ii) promptly honor its obligation to so issue and deliver to the Holder a certificate or certificates representing such shares of Common Stock or credit the Holder's balance account with DTC for the number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled upon the Holder's conversion hereunder (as the case may be) and pay cash to the Holder in an amount equal to the excess (if any) of the Buy-In Price over the product of (A) such number of shares of Common Stock multiplied by (B) the lowest Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on any Trading Day during the period commencing on the date of the applicable Conversion Notice and ending on the date of such issuance and payment under this clause (ii).

(iii) Registration; Book-Entry. The Trustee shall maintain a register (the “**Register**”) for the recordation of the names and addresses of the holders of each Note and the principal amount of the Notes held by such holders (the “**Registered Notes**”) as provided in Section 2.05 of the Indenture. No later than the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Trading Day after the delivery of the Conversion Notice or any redemption of this Note, the Company shall deliver written confirmation to the Trustee that such conversion or redemption, as applicable, has been completed in full, which confirmation shall set forth the aggregate Principal of this Note then converted or redeemed, as applicable, and the remaining aggregate principal of this Note then outstanding. The Trustee shall be entitled to conclusively rely on such confirmation by the Company, as authorization to adjust the Register in accordance with such confirmation. The entries in the Register shall be conclusive and binding for all purposes absent manifest error. The Company, the Trustee and the holders of the Notes shall treat each Person whose name is recorded in the Register as the owner of a Note for all purposes (including, without limitation, the right to receive payments of Principal and Interest hereunder) notwithstanding notice to the contrary. A Registered Note may be assigned, transferred or sold in whole or in part only by registration of such assignment or sale on the Register. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary set forth in this Section 3 or in the Indenture or in the Supplemental Indenture, following conversion of any portion of this Note in accordance with the terms hereof, the Holder shall not be required to physically surrender this Note to the Company unless (A) the full Conversion Amount represented by this Note is being converted (in which event this Note shall be delivered to the Company as contemplated by Section 3(c)(i)) or (B) the Holder has provided the Company with prior written notice (which notice may be included in a Conversion Notice) requesting reissuance of this Note upon physical surrender of this Note. The Holder and the Company shall maintain records showing the Principal, Interest and Late Charges, if any, converted and/or paid (as the case may be) and the dates of such conversions and/or payments (as the case may be) or shall use such other method, reasonably satisfactory to the Holder and the Company, so as not to require physical surrender of this Note upon conversion. Other than adjusting the Register to reflect the conversion of Notes, the Trustee shall have no duty to calculate the Conversion Rate or any other calculations under this Section 3, nor shall the Trustee have any duty or obligation to monitor, confirm or verify any of the activities relating to the conversion of the Notes or the permissibility of any such conversion.

(iv) Pro Rata Conversion; Disputes. In the event that the Company receives a Conversion Notice from more than one holder of Notes for the same Conversion Date and the Company can convert some, but not all, of such portions of the Notes submitted for conversion, the Company, subject to Section 3(d), shall convert from each holder of Notes electing to have Notes converted on such date a pro rata amount of such holder's portion of its Notes submitted for conversion based on the principal amount of Notes submitted for conversion on such date by such holder relative to the aggregate principal amount of all Notes submitted for conversion on such date. In the event of a dispute as to the number of shares of Common Stock issuable to the Holder in connection with a conversion of this Note, the Company shall issue to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock not in dispute and resolve such dispute in accordance with Section 23.

(d) Limitations on Conversions.

(i) Beneficial Ownership. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Note, this Note shall not be convertible by the Holder hereof, and the Company shall not effect any conversion of this Note or otherwise issue any shares of Common Stock pursuant to Section 8 hereof, to the extent (but only to the extent) that the Holder or any of its affiliates would beneficially own in excess of 9.99% (the "**Maximum Percentage**") of the Common Stock. To the extent the above limitation applies, the determination of whether this Note shall be convertible (vis-à-vis other convertible, exercisable or exchangeable securities owned by the Holder or any of its affiliates) and of which such securities shall be convertible, exercisable or exchangeable (as among all such securities owned by the Holder and its affiliates) shall, subject to such Maximum Percentage limitation, be determined on the basis of the first submission to the Company for conversion, exercise or exchange (as the case may be). No prior inability to convert this Note, or to issue shares of Common Stock, pursuant to this paragraph shall have any effect on the applicability of the provisions of this paragraph with respect to any subsequent determination of convertibility. For purposes of this paragraph, beneficial ownership and all determinations and calculations (including, without limitation, with respect to calculations of percentage ownership) shall be determined in accordance with Section 13(d) of the 1934 Act (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. The provisions of this paragraph shall be implemented in a manner otherwise than in strict conformity with the terms of this paragraph to correct this paragraph (or any portion hereof) which may be defective or inconsistent with the intended Maximum Percentage beneficial ownership limitation herein contained or to make changes or supplements necessary or desirable to properly give effect to such Maximum Percentage limitation. The limitations contained in this paragraph shall apply to a successor Holder of this Note. The holders of Common Stock shall be third party beneficiaries of this paragraph and the Company may not waive this paragraph without the consent of holders of a majority of its Common Stock. For any reason at any time, upon the written or oral request of the Holder, the Company shall within one (1) Business Day confirm orally and in writing to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock then outstanding, including by virtue of any prior conversion or exercise of convertible or exercisable securities into Common Stock, including, without limitation, pursuant to this Note or securities issued pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement. By written notice to the Company, any Holder may increase or decrease the Maximum Percentage to any other percentage not in excess of 9.99% specified in such notice; provided that (i) any such increase will not be effective until the 61<sup>st</sup> day after such notice is delivered to the Company, and (ii) any such increase or decrease shall apply only to the Holder sending such notice and not to any other holder of Notes.



(ii) Principal Market Regulation. The Company shall not issue any shares of Common Stock upon conversion or otherwise pursuant to the terms of this Note if the issuance of such shares of Common Stock would exceed the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock which the Company may issue upon conversion or exercise (as the case may be) of the Notes and the Warrants or otherwise pursuant to the terms of this Note without breaching the Company's obligations under the rules or regulations of the Principal Market (the number of shares which may be issued without violating such rules and regulations, the "**Exchange Cap**"), except that such limitation shall not apply in the event that the Company (A) obtains the approval of its stockholders as required by the applicable rules of the Principal Market for issuances of shares of Common Stock upon conversion or exercise (as the case may be) of the Notes and the Warrants or otherwise pursuant to the terms of this Note in excess of such amount or (B) obtains a written opinion from outside counsel to the Company that such approval is not required, which opinion shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Holder. Until such approval or such written opinion is obtained, no Buyer (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) shall be issued in the aggregate, upon conversion or exercise (as the case may be) of any of Notes or any of the Warrants or otherwise pursuant to the terms of this Note, shares of Common Stock in an amount greater than the product of (i) the Exchange Cap multiplied by (ii) the quotient of (1) the aggregate original principal amount of Notes issued to such Buyer pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement on the Closing Date (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) divided by (2) the aggregate original principal amount of all Notes issued to all the Buyers (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement on the Closing Date (with respect to each Buyer, the "**Exchange Cap Allocation**"). In the event that any Buyer shall sell or otherwise transfer any of such Buyer's Notes, the transferee shall be allocated a pro rata portion of such Buyer's Exchange Cap Allocation with respect to such portion of such Notes so transferred, and the restrictions of the prior sentence shall apply to such transferee with respect to the portion of the Exchange Cap Allocation so allocated to such transferee. Upon conversion and exercise in full of a holder's Notes and Warrants, the difference (if any) between such holder's Exchange Cap Allocation and the number of shares of Common Stock actually issued to such holder upon such holder's conversion in full of such holder's Notes and exercise in full of such Warrants shall be allocated to the respective Exchange Cap Allocations of the remaining holders of Notes and Warrants on a pro rata basis in proportion to the shares of Common Stock underlying the Notes and Warrants then held by each such holder. In the event that the Company is prohibited from issuing shares of Common Stock pursuant to this Section 3(d) (ii) (the "**Exchange Cap Shares**"), the Company shall pay cash (each, an "**Exchange Cap Share Cancellation Amount**") in exchange for the cancellation of such shares of Common Stock at a price equal to the sum of (i) the product of (x) such number of Exchange Cap Shares and (y) the greatest Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on any Trading Day during the period commencing on the date the Holder delivers the applicable Conversion Notice with respect to such Exchange Cap Shares to the Company and ending on the date of such issuance and payment under this Section 3(d)(ii) and (ii) to the extent the Holder purchases (in an open market transaction or otherwise) shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by the Holder of Exchange Cap Shares, any brokerage commissions and other out-of-pocket expenses, if any, of the Holder incurred in connection therewith.

4. RIGHTS UPON EVENT OF DEFAULT.

(a) Event of Default. Each of the following events shall constitute an “**Event of Default**”:

(i) the suspension from trading or the failure of the Common Stock to be trading or listed (as applicable) on an Eligible Market for a period of five (5) consecutive Trading Days or for more than an aggregate of ten (10) Trading Days in any 365-day period;

(ii) the Company’s (A) failure to cure a Conversion Failure or a Delivery Failure (as defined in the Warrants) by delivery of the required number of shares of Common Stock within five (5) Trading Days after the applicable Conversion Date or exercise date (as the case may be) or (B) notice, written or oral, to any holder of the Notes or Warrants, including, without limitation, by way of public announcement or through any of its agents, at any time, of its intention not to comply, as required, with a request for conversion of any Notes into shares of Common Stock that is requested in accordance with the provisions of the Notes, other than pursuant to Section 3(d), or a request for exercise of any Warrants for Warrant Shares (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) in accordance with the provisions of the Warrants;

(iii) if at any time after the one-year anniversary of the Issuance Date the Holder's Authorized Share Allocation (as defined below) is less than the number of shares of Common Stock that the Holder would be entitled to receive upon a conversion of the full Conversion Amount of this Note for a period of ten (10) consecutive days (without regard to any limitations on conversion set forth in Section 3(d) or otherwise) unless the Lockbox Balance is sufficient to repay the Principal, Interest, Late Charges, if any, on this Note in full;

(iv) the Company's failure to pay to the Holder any amount of Principal, Interest, Late Charges or other amounts when and as due under this Note (including, without limitation, the Company's failure to pay any redemption payments or amounts hereunder) or any other Transaction Document (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) or any other agreement, document, certificate or other instrument delivered in connection with the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby, except, in the case of a failure to pay Interest and Late Charges when and as due, in which case only if such failure remains uncured for a period of at least five (5) days;

(v) the occurrence of any default under, redemption of or acceleration prior to maturity of any Subsidiary Note (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement);

(vi) the occurrence of any default under, redemption of or acceleration prior to maturity of any Indebtedness (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries in an aggregate amount in excess of \$250,000;

(vii) bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or liquidation proceedings or other proceedings for the relief of debtors shall be instituted by or against the Company or any Subsidiary and, if instituted against the Company or any Subsidiary by a third party, shall not be dismissed within forty-five (45) days of their initiation;

(viii) the commencement by the Company or any Subsidiary of a voluntary case or proceeding under any applicable federal, state or foreign bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or of any other case or proceeding to be adjudicated a bankrupt or insolvent, or the consent by it to the entry of a decree, order, judgment or other similar document in respect of the Company or any Subsidiary in an involuntary case or proceeding under any applicable federal, state or foreign bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other similar law or to the commencement of any bankruptcy or insolvency case or proceeding against it, or the filing by it of a petition or answer or consent seeking reorganization or relief under any applicable federal, state or foreign law, or the consent by it to the filing of such petition or to the appointment of or taking possession by a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or any Subsidiary or of any substantial part of its property, or the making by it of an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or the execution of a composition of debts, or the occurrence of any other similar federal, state or foreign proceeding, or the admission by the Company or any Subsidiary of its inability to pay its debts generally as they become due, the taking of corporate action by the Company or any Subsidiary in furtherance of any such action or the commencement by any Person of a UCC foreclosure sale of a material portion of the Company's or any Subsidiary's assets or any other similar action under federal, state or foreign law;

(ix) the entry by a court of (i) a decree, order, judgment or other similar document adjudging the Company or any Subsidiary as bankrupt or insolvent, or approving as properly filed a petition seeking liquidation, reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition of or in respect of the Company or any Subsidiary under any applicable federal, state or foreign law or (ii) a decree, order, judgment or other similar document appointing a custodian, receiver, liquidator, assignee, trustee, sequestrator or other similar official of the Company or any Subsidiary or of any substantial part of its property, or ordering the winding up or liquidation of its affairs, and the continuance of any such decree, order, judgment or other similar document or any such other decree, order, judgment or other similar document unstayed and in effect for a period of forty-five (45) consecutive days;

(x) a final judgment, judgments, any arbitration or mediation award or any settlement of any litigation or any other satisfaction of any claim made by any Person pursuant to any litigation, as applicable, in the United States, its territories or possessions (other than in the ordinary course of the Company's business of enforcing and licensing intellectual property rights, consistent with past practice) (each a "**Judgment**," and collectively, the "**Judgments**") with respect to the payment of cash, securities and/or other assets with an aggregate fair value (determined as provided below) in excess of \$250,000 are rendered against, agreed to or otherwise accepted by, the Company and/or any of its Subsidiaries and which Judgments are not, within forty-five (45) days after the entry thereof, bonded, discharged or stayed pending appeal, or are not discharged within forty-five (45) days after the expiration of such stay; provided, however, any Judgment which is covered by insurance or an indemnity from a credit worthy party shall not be included in calculating the \$250,000 amount set forth above so long as the Company provides the Holder a written statement from such insurer or indemnity provider (which written statement shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Holder) to the effect that such Judgment is covered by insurance or an indemnity and the Company or such Subsidiary (as the case may be) will receive the proceeds of such insurance or indemnity within forty-five (45) days of the issuance of such Judgment. The fair value of any assets other than cash or publicly traded securities will be determined jointly by the Company and the Holder. If such parties are unable to reach agreement within ten (10) days after the occurrence of an event requiring valuation (the "**Valuation Event**"), the fair value of such consideration will be determined within five (5) Trading Days after the tenth (10<sup>th</sup>) day following such Valuation Event by an independent, reputable appraiser jointly selected by the Company and the Holder. The determination of such appraiser shall be final and binding upon all parties absent manifest error and the fees and expenses of such appraiser shall be borne by the Company;

(xi) the Company and/or any Subsidiary, individually or in the aggregate, either (i) fails to pay, when due, or within any applicable grace period, any payment with respect to any Indebtedness in excess of \$250,000 in the aggregate (other than, with respect to unsecured Indebtedness only, payments contested by the Company and/or such Subsidiary (as the case may be) in good faith by proper proceedings and with respect to which adequate reserves have been set aside for the payment thereof in accordance with GAAP) or is otherwise in breach or violation of any agreement for monies owed or owing in an amount in excess of \$250,000 in the aggregate, which breach or violation permits the other party thereto to declare a default or otherwise accelerate amounts due thereunder, or (ii) suffer to exist any other circumstance or event that would, with or without the passage of time or the giving of notice, result in a default or event of default under any agreement binding the Company or any Subsidiary, which default or event of default would or is likely to have a material adverse effect on the business, assets, operations (including results thereof), liabilities, properties, condition (including financial condition) or prospects of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, individually or in the aggregate;

(xii) other than as specifically set forth in another clause of this Section 4(a), the Company or any Subsidiary breaches in any material respect any representation, warranty, covenant or other term or condition of any Transaction Document (including, without limitation, the Security Documents), except, in the case of a breach of a covenant or other term or condition that is curable, only if such breach remains uncured for a period of five (5) days;

(xiii) any breach or failure in any respect by the Company or any Subsidiary to comply in any material respect with any provision of either of Sections 8 or 14 of this Note;

(xiv) a false or inaccurate certification (including a false or inaccurate deemed certification) by the Company that the Equity Conditions are satisfied, that there has been no Equity Conditions Failure or as to whether any Event of Default has occurred;

(xv) any Material Adverse Effect (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) occurs;

(xvi) any provision of any Transaction Document (including, without limitation, the Subsidiary Notes and the Security Documents) shall at any time for any reason (other than pursuant to the express terms thereof) cease to be valid and binding on or enforceable against the parties thereto in any material respect, or the validity or enforceability thereof shall be contested by any party thereto, or a proceeding shall be commenced by the Company or any Subsidiary or any governmental authority having jurisdiction over any of them, seeking to establish the invalidity or unenforceability thereof, or the Company or any Subsidiary shall deny in writing that it has any liability or obligation purported to be created under any Transaction Document (including, without limitation, the Subsidiary Notes and the Security Documents);

(xvii) the Subsidiary Notes shall for any reason fail or cease to create a separate valid and perfected and, except to the extent permitted by the terms hereof or thereof, first priority Lien on the Collateral (as defined in the Subsidiary Notes) in favor of each of the Secured Parties (as defined in the Subsidiary Notes);

(xviii) the Security Documents shall for any reason fail or cease to create a separate valid and perfected and, except to the extent permitted by the terms hereof or thereof, first priority Lien on the Collateral (as defined in the Security Agreement) in favor of each of the Secured Parties (as defined in the Security Agreement); or

(xix) any material damage to, or loss, theft or destruction of, any Collateral, whether or not insured, or any strike, lockout, labor dispute, embargo, condemnation, act of God or public enemy, or other casualty which causes, for more than fifteen (15) consecutive days, the cessation or substantial curtailment of revenue producing activities at any facility of the Company or any Subsidiary, if any such event or circumstance could have a Material Adverse Effect.

(b) Notice of an Event of Default; Redemption Right. Upon the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to this Note, the Company shall within two (2) Business Days deliver written notice thereof via electronic mail and overnight courier (with next day delivery specified) (an “**Event of Default Notice**”) to the Holder and the Trustee. At any time after the earlier of the Holder’s receipt of an Event of Default Notice and the Holder becoming aware of an Event of Default and ending (such ending date, the “**Event of Default Right Expiration Date**”) on the tenth (10<sup>th</sup>) Trading Day after the later of (x) the date such Event of Default is cured and (y) the Holder’s receipt of an Event of Default Notice that includes (I) a reasonable description of the applicable Event of Default, (II) a certification as to whether, in the opinion of the Company, such Event of Default is capable of being cured and, if applicable, a reasonable description of any existing plan of the Company to cure such Event of Default and (III) a certification as to the date the Event of Default occurred and the applicable Event of Default Right Expiration Date, the Holder may require the Company to redeem all or any portion of this Note by delivering written notice thereof (the “**Event of Default Redemption Notice**”) to the Company and the Trustee, which Event of Default Redemption Notice shall indicate the portion of this Note the Holder is electing to redeem. Each portion of this Note subject to redemption by the Company pursuant to this Section 4(b) shall be redeemed by the Company at a price equal to the greater of (i) the product of (A) the Conversion Amount to be redeemed multiplied by (B) the Redemption Premium and (ii) the product of (X) the Conversion Rate with respect to the Conversion Amount in effect at such time as the Holder delivers an Event of Default Redemption Notice multiplied by (Y) the product of (1) the Equity Value Redemption Premium multiplied by (2) the greatest Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on any Trading Day during the period commencing on the date immediately preceding such Event of Default and ending on the date the Company makes the entire payment required to be made under this Section 4(b) (the “**Event of Default Redemption Price**”). Redemptions required by this Section 4(b) shall be made in accordance with the provisions of Section 11. To the extent redemptions required by this Section 4(b) are deemed or determined by a court of competent jurisdiction to be prepayments of this Note by the Company, such redemptions shall be deemed to be voluntary prepayments. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Section 4, but subject to Section 3(d), until the Event of Default Redemption Price (together with any Late Charges thereon) is paid in full, the Conversion Amount submitted for redemption under this Section 4(b) (together with any Late Charges thereon) may be converted, in whole or in part, by the Holder into Common Stock pursuant to the terms of this Note. In the event of a partial redemption of this Note pursuant hereto, the Principal amount redeemed shall be deducted from the Installment Amount(s) relating to the applicable Installment Date(s) as set forth in the Event of Default Redemption Notice. In the event of the Company’s redemption of any portion of this Note under this Section 4(b), the Holder’s damages would be uncertain and difficult to estimate because of the parties’ inability to predict future interest rates and the uncertainty of the availability of a suitable substitute investment opportunity for the Holder. Accordingly, any redemption premium due under this Section 4(b) is intended by the parties to be, and shall be deemed, a reasonable estimate of the Holder’s actual loss of its investment opportunity and not as a penalty.

5. RIGHTS UPON FUNDAMENTAL TRANSACTION.

(a) Assumption. The Company shall not enter into or be party to a Fundamental Transaction unless the Successor Entity assumes in writing all of the obligations of the Company under this Note and the other Transaction Documents in accordance with the provisions of this Section 5(a) pursuant to written agreements in form and substance satisfactory to the Holder and approved by the Holder prior to such Fundamental Transaction, including agreements to deliver to each holder of Notes in exchange for such Notes a security of the Successor Entity evidenced by a written instrument substantially similar in form and substance to the Notes, including, without limitation, having a principal amount and interest rate equal to the principal amounts then outstanding and the interest rates of the Notes held by such holder, having similar conversion rights as the Notes and having similar ranking to the Notes, and satisfactory to the Holder. Upon the occurrence of any Fundamental Transaction, the Successor Entity shall succeed to, and be substituted for (so that from and after the date of such Fundamental Transaction, the provisions of this Note and the other Transaction Documents referring to the "Company" shall refer instead to the Successor Entity), and may exercise every right and power of the Company and shall assume all of the obligations of the Company under this Note and the other Transaction Documents with the same effect as if such Successor Entity had been named as the Company herein. Upon consummation of a Fundamental Transaction, the Successor Entity shall deliver to the Holder confirmation that there shall be issued upon conversion or redemption of this Note at any time after the consummation of such Fundamental Transaction, in lieu of the shares of the Company's Common Stock (or other securities, cash, assets or other property (except such items still issuable under Sections 6 and 15, which shall continue to be receivable thereafter) issuable upon the conversion or redemption of the Notes prior to such Fundamental Transaction, such shares of the publicly traded common stock (or their equivalent) of the Successor Entity (including its Parent Entity) which the Holder would have been entitled to receive upon the happening of such Fundamental Transaction had this Note been converted immediately prior to such Fundamental Transaction (without regard to any limitations on the conversion of this Note), as adjusted in accordance with the provisions of this Note. The provisions of this Section 5 shall apply similarly and equally to successive Fundamental Transactions and shall be applied without regard to any limitations on the conversion of this Note.

(b) Notice of a Change of Control; Redemption Right. No sooner than twenty (20) Trading Days nor later than ten (10) Trading Days prior to the consummation of a Change of Control, but not prior to the public announcement of such Fundamental Transaction, the Company shall deliver written notice thereof via electronic mail and overnight courier to the Holder (a “**Change of Control Notice**”). At any time during the period beginning after the Holder’s receipt of a Change of Control Notice or the Holder becoming aware of a Change of Control if a Change of Control Notice is not delivered to the Holder in accordance with the immediately preceding sentence (as applicable) and ending on the later of twenty (20) Trading Days after (A) consummation of such Change of Control or (B) the date of receipt of such Change of Control Notice, the Holder may require the Company to redeem all or any portion of this Note by delivering written notice thereof (“**Change of Control Redemption Notice**”) to the Company and the Trustee, which Change of Control Redemption Notice shall indicate the Conversion Amount the Holder is electing to redeem. The portion of this Note subject to redemption pursuant to this Section 5 shall be redeemed by the Company in cash at a price equal to the product of (w) the Change of Control Redemption Premium multiplied by (x) the Conversion Amount being redeemed (the “**Change of Control Redemption Price**”). Redemptions required by this Section 5 shall be made in accordance with the provisions of Section 11 and shall have priority to payments to stockholders in connection with such Change of Control. To the extent redemptions required by this Section 5(b) are deemed or determined by a court of competent jurisdiction to be prepayments of this Note by the Company, such redemptions shall be deemed to be voluntary prepayments. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Section 5, but subject to Section 3(d), until the Change of Control Redemption Price (together with any Late Charges thereon) is paid in full, the Conversion Amount submitted for redemption under this Section 5(b) (together with any Late Charges thereon) may be converted, in whole or in part, by the Holder into Common Stock pursuant to Section 3. In the event of a partial redemption of this Note pursuant hereto, the Principal amount redeemed shall be deducted from the Installment Amount(s) relating to the applicable Installment Date(s) as set forth in the Fundamental Transaction Redemption Notice. In the event of the Company’s redemption of any portion of this Note under this Section 5(b), the Holder’s damages would be uncertain and difficult to estimate because of the parties’ inability to predict future interest rates and the uncertainty of the availability of a suitable substitute investment opportunity for the Holder. Accordingly, any redemption premium due under this Section 5(b) is intended by the parties to be, and shall be deemed, a reasonable estimate of the Holder’s actual loss of its investment opportunity and not as a penalty.



6. RIGHTS UPON ISSUANCE OF PURCHASE RIGHTS AND OTHER CORPORATE EVENTS.

(a) Purchase Rights. In addition to any adjustments pursuant to Section 7 below, if at any time the Company grants, issues or sells any Options, Convertible Securities or rights to purchase stock, warrants, securities or other property pro rata to all of the record holders of any class of Common Stock (the “**Purchase Rights**”), then the Holder will be entitled to acquire, upon the terms applicable to such Purchase Rights, the aggregate Purchase Rights which the Holder could have acquired if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete conversion of this Note (without taking into account any limitations or restrictions on the convertibility of this Note) immediately before the date on which a record is taken for the grant, issuance or sale of such Purchase Rights, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of Common Stock are to be determined for the grant, issue or sale of such Purchase Rights (provided, however, to the extent that the Holder’s right to participate in any such Purchase Right would result in the Holder exceeding the Maximum Percentage, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Purchase Right to such extent (or beneficial ownership of such shares of Common Stock as a result of such Purchase Right to such extent) and such Purchase Right to such extent shall be held in abeyance for the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Maximum Percentage).

(b) Other Corporate Events. In addition to and not in substitution for any other rights hereunder, prior to the consummation of any Fundamental Transaction pursuant to which holders of shares of Common Stock are entitled to receive securities or other assets with respect to or in exchange for shares of Common Stock (a “**Corporate Event**”), the Company shall make appropriate provision to ensure that the Holder will thereafter have the right to receive upon a conversion of this Note (i) in addition to the shares of Common Stock receivable upon such conversion, such securities or other assets to which the Holder would have been entitled with respect to such shares of Common Stock had such shares of Common Stock been held by the Holder upon the consummation of such Corporate Event (without taking into account any limitations or restrictions on the convertibility of this Note) or (ii) in lieu of the shares of Common Stock otherwise receivable upon such conversion, such securities or other assets received by the holders of shares of Common Stock in connection with the consummation of such Corporate Event in such amounts as the Holder would have been entitled to receive had this Note initially been issued with conversion rights for the form of such consideration (as opposed to shares of Common Stock) at a conversion rate for such consideration commensurate with the Conversion Rate. Provision made pursuant to the preceding sentence shall be in a form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Holder. The provisions of this Section 6 shall apply similarly and equally to successive Corporate Events and shall be applied without regard to any limitations on the conversion or redemption of this Note.

7. RIGHTS UPON ISSUANCE OF OTHER SECURITIES.

(a) Adjustment of Conversion Price upon Subdivision or Combination of Common Stock. Without limiting any provision of Section 5, if the Company at any time on or after the Subscription Date subdivides (by any stock split, stock dividend, stock combination, recapitalization or otherwise) one or more classes of its outstanding shares of Common Stock into a greater number of shares, the Conversion Price in effect immediately prior to such subdivision will be proportionately reduced. Without limiting any provision of Section 5, if the Company at any time on or after the Subscription Date combines (by any stock split, stock dividend, combination, recapitalization or otherwise) one or more classes of its outstanding shares of Common Stock into a smaller number of shares, the Conversion Price in effect immediately prior to such combination will be proportionately increased. Any adjustment pursuant to this Section 7(a) shall become effective immediately after the effective date of such subdivision or combination. If any event requiring an adjustment under this Section 7(a) occurs during the period that a Conversion Price is calculated hereunder, then the calculation of such Conversion Price shall be adjusted appropriately to reflect such event.

(b) Holder's Right of Adjusted Conversion Price. In addition to and not in limitation of the other provisions of this Section 7 or Section 4(q) of the Securities Purchase Agreement, if the Company in any manner issues or sells or enters into any agreement to issue or sell, any Common Stock, Options or Convertible Securities (any such securities, "**Variable Price Securities**") that are issuable pursuant to such agreement or convertible into or exchangeable or exercisable for shares of Common Stock pursuant to such Options or Convertible Securities, as applicable, at a price which varies or may vary with the market price of the shares of Common Stock, including by way of one or more reset(s) to a fixed price, but exclusive of such formulations reflecting customary anti-dilution provisions (such as share splits, share combinations, share dividends and similar transactions) (each of the formulations for such variable price being herein referred to as, the "**Variable Price**"), the Company shall provide written notice thereof via electronic mail and overnight courier to the Holder on the date of such agreement and/or the issuance of such Convertible Securities or Options, as applicable. From and after the date the Company enters into such agreement or issues any such Variable Price Securities, the Holder shall have the right, but not the obligation, in its sole discretion to substitute the Variable Price for the Conversion Price upon conversion of this Note by designating in the Conversion Notice delivered upon any conversion of this Note that solely for purposes of such conversion the Holder is relying on the Variable Price rather than the Conversion Price then in effect. The Holder's election to rely on a Variable Price for a particular conversion of this Note shall not obligate the Holder to rely on a Variable Price for any future conversion of this Note.

(c) Other Events. In the event that the Company (or any Subsidiary) shall take any action to which the provisions hereof are not strictly applicable, or, if applicable, would not operate to protect the Holder from dilution or if any event occurs of the type contemplated by the provisions of this Section 7 but not expressly provided for by such provisions (including, without limitation, the granting of stock appreciation rights, phantom stock rights or other rights with equity features), then the Company's board of directors shall in good faith determine and implement an appropriate adjustment in the Conversion Price so as to protect the rights of the Holder, provided that no such adjustment pursuant to this Section 7(b) will increase the Conversion Price as otherwise determined pursuant to this Section 7, provided further that if the Holder does not accept such adjustments as appropriately protecting its interests hereunder against such dilution, then the Company's board of directors and the Holder shall agree, in good faith, upon an independent investment bank of nationally recognized standing to make such appropriate adjustments, whose determination shall be final and binding and whose fees and expenses shall be borne by the Company.

8. COMPANY INSTALLMENT CONVERSION OR REDEMPTION.

(a) General. On each applicable Installment Date, the Company shall pay to the Holder of this Note the applicable Installment Amount due on such date by converting such Installment Amount in accordance with this Section 8 (a “**Company Conversion**”); provided, however, the Company may, at its option as described below, pay all or any part of such Installment Amount by redeeming such Installment Amount in cash (a “**Company Redemption**”) or by any combination of a Company Conversion and a Company Redemption so long as the entire amount of such Installment Amount due shall be converted and/or redeemed by the Company on the applicable Installment Date, subject to the provisions of this Section 8, provided further that the Company shall not be entitled to effect a Company Conversion with respect to any portion of such Installment Amount and shall be required to elect and to pay the entire amount of such Installment Amount in cash pursuant to a Company Redemption if on the applicable Installment Notice Due Date or on the applicable Installment Date (as the case may be) there is an Equity Conditions Failure.

(b) Mechanics of Company Installment Payments. Except in the case of the first Installment Amount, on or prior to the date which is the twenty-second (22<sup>nd</sup>) Trading Day prior to each Installment Date (each, an “**Installment Notice Due Date**”), the Company shall deliver written notice (each, a “**Company Installment Notice**” and the date the Trustee and all of the holders receive such notice is referred to as to the “**Company Installment Notice Date**”), to the Trustee and each holder of Notes and such Company Installment Notice shall (i) either (A) confirm that the applicable Installment Amount of such holder’s Note shall be converted in whole pursuant to a Company Conversion or (B) (1) state that the Company elects to redeem, or is required to elect and redeem in accordance with the provisions of the Notes, in whole or in part, the applicable Installment Amount pursuant to a Company Redemption and (2) specify the portion of the applicable Installment Amount which the Company elects, or is required to elect and redeem, pursuant to a Company Redemption (such amount to be redeemed in cash, the “**Company Redemption Amount**”) and the portion of the applicable Installment Amount, if any, with respect to which the Company will, and is permitted to, effect a Company Conversion (such amount of the applicable Installment Amount so specified to be so converted pursuant to this Section 8 is referred to herein as the “**Company Conversion Amount**”), which amounts when added together, must equal the entire applicable Installment Amount and (ii) if the applicable Installment Amount is to be paid, in whole or in part, pursuant to a Company Conversion, certify that there is not an Equity Conditions Failure as of the date of the applicable Company Installment Notice. Each Company Installment Notice shall be irrevocable. For purposes of the first Installment Amount, the Company Conversion Amount shall be deemed to be the entire Installment Amount. Except in the case of the first Installment Amount, if the Company does not timely deliver a Company Installment Notice in accordance with this Section 8 with respect to a particular Installment Date, then the Company shall be deemed to have delivered an irrevocable Company Installment Notice confirming a Company Conversion of the entire Installment Amount payable on such Installment Date and shall be deemed to have certified that there is not an Equity Conditions Failure on the applicable Installment Notice Due Date and the applicable Installment Date. No later than (i) one (1) Trading Day after the Issuance Date, in the case of the first Installment Amount, and (ii) with respect to all Installment Amounts other than the first Installment Amount, one (1) Trading Day after delivery or deemed delivery (as applicable) of the applicable Company Installment Notice setting forth a Company Conversion Amount, the Company shall deliver to the Holder’s account with DTC such number of shares of Common Stock (the “**Pre-Installment Conversion Shares**”) equal to the quotient of (x) such Company Conversion Amount divided by (y) the Pre-Installment Conversion Price, and as to which the Holder shall be the owner thereof as of such time of delivery or deemed delivery (as the case may be) of such Company Installment Notice. Except as expressly provided in this Section 8(a), the Company shall convert and/or redeem the applicable Installment Amount of this Note pursuant to this Section 8 and the corresponding Installment Amounts of the other Notes pursuant to the corresponding provisions of the other Notes in the same ratio of the applicable Installment Amount being converted and/or redeemed hereunder. The applicable Company Conversion Amount (whether set forth in the applicable Company Installment Notice or by operation of this Section 8) shall be converted in accordance with Section 8(c) and the applicable Company Redemption Amount shall be redeemed in accordance with Section 8(d).

(c) Mechanics of Company Conversion. Subject to Section 3(d), if the Company delivers a Company Installment Notice and elects, or is deemed to have delivered a Company Installment Notice and deemed to have elected, in whole or in part, a Company Conversion in accordance with Section 8(a), then the remainder of this Section 8(c) shall apply. The applicable Company Conversion Amount, if any, which remains outstanding as of the applicable Installment Date shall be converted as of the applicable Installment Date by converting on such Installment Date such Company Conversion Amount at the Company Conversion Price, and the Company shall, on the applicable Installment Date, deliver to the Holder's account with DTC such shares of Common Stock issued upon such conversion (subject to the reduction contemplated by the immediately following sentence and, if applicable, the last sentence of this Section 8(c)), provided that there is no Equity Conditions Failure as of such Installment Date and a Company Conversion is not otherwise prohibited under any other provision of this Note. The number of shares of Common Stock to be delivered upon such Company Conversion shall be reduced by the number of any Pre-Installment Conversion Shares delivered in connection with such Installment Date. If an Event of Default occurs during any applicable Company Conversion Measuring Period, then either (i) the Holder shall return any Pre-Installment Conversion Shares delivered in connection with the applicable Installment Date or (ii) the Conversion Amount used to calculate the Event of Default Redemption Price shall be reduced by the product of (x) the Company Conversion Amount applicable to such Installment Date multiplied by (y) the Conversion Share Ratio (as defined below). If there is an Equity Conditions Failure as of such Installment Date or a Company Conversion is not otherwise permitted under any other provision of this Note, then, at the option of the Holder designated in writing to the Company, the Holder may require the Company to do any one or more of the following: (i) the Company shall redeem all or any part designated by the Holder of the unconverted Company Conversion Amount (such designated amount is referred to as the "**Designated Redemption Amount**") and the Company shall pay to the Holder within three (3) Business Days of such Installment Date, by wire transfer of immediately available funds, an amount in cash equal to 110% of such Designated Redemption Amount, and/or (ii) the Company Conversion shall be null and void with respect to all or any part designated by the Holder of the unconverted Company Conversion Amount and the Holder shall be entitled to all the rights of a holder of this Note with respect to such designated part of the Company Conversion Amount; provided, however, the Conversion Price for such designated part of such unconverted Company Conversion Amount shall thereafter be adjusted to equal the lesser of (A) the Company Conversion Price as in effect on the date on which the Holder voided the Company Conversion and (B) the Company Conversion Price that would be in effect on the date on which the Holder delivers a Conversion Notice relating thereto as if such date was an Installment Date. In addition, if there is an Equity Conditions Failure as of such Installment Date or a Company Conversion is not otherwise permitted under any other provision of this Note, then, at the Holder's option, either (I) the Holder shall return any Pre-Installment Conversion Shares delivered in connection with the applicable Installment Date or (II) the applicable Designated Redemption Amount shall be reduced by the product of (X) the Company Conversion Amount applicable to such Installment Date multiplied by (Y) the Conversion Share Ratio. If the Company fails to redeem any Designated Redemption Amount by the third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Trading Day following the applicable Installment Date by payment of such amount on the applicable Installment Date, then the Holder shall have the rights set forth in Section 11 as if the Company failed to pay the applicable Company Installment Redemption Price (as defined below) and all other rights under this Note (including, without limitation, such failure constituting an Event of Default described in Section 4(a)(xiii)). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Section 8(c), but subject to Section 3(d), until the Company delivers Common Stock representing the Company Conversion Amount to the Holder, the Company Conversion Amount may be converted by the Holder into Common Stock pursuant to Section 3. In the event that the Holder elects to convert the Company Conversion Amount prior to the applicable Installment Date as set forth in the immediately preceding sentence, the Company Conversion Amount so converted shall be deducted from the Installment Amount(s) relating to the applicable Installment Date(s) as set forth in the applicable Conversion Notice. If, with respect to an Installment Date, the number of Pre-Installment Conversion Shares delivered to the Holder exceeds the number of Post-Installment Conversion Shares with respect to such Installment Date, then the number of shares of Common Stock equal to such excess shall constitute a credit against the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued to such Holder pursuant to Sections 3 and 8(b) hereof and shall reduce the number of shares of Common Stock required to be actually issued by the Company to the Holder under such sections on a share-for-share basis until such time as the number of shares that would have been issued by the Company to such Holder (not taking account of such credit) equals the amount of such excess.

(d) Mechanics of Company Redemption. If the Company elects, or is required to elect, a Company Redemption, in whole or in part, in accordance with Section 8(a), then the Company Redemption Amount, if any, which is to be paid to the Holder on the applicable Installment Date shall be redeemed by the Company on such Installment Date in an amount of cash, and the Company shall pay to the Holder on such Installment Date, by wire transfer of immediately available funds an amount, equal to 102.5% of the applicable Company Redemption Amount (the “**Company Installment Redemption Price**”). If the Company fails to redeem the applicable Company Redemption Amount on the applicable Installment Date by payment of the Company Installment Redemption Price on such date, then, at the option of the Holder designated in writing to the Company (any such designation shall be a “Conversion Notice” for purposes of this Note), the Holder may require the Company to convert all or any part of the Company Redemption Amount at the Company Conversion Price (determined as of the date of such designation as if such date were an Installment Date). Conversions required by this Section 8(d) shall be made in accordance with the provisions of Section 3(c). Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Section 8(d), but subject to Section 3(d), until the Company Installment Redemption Price (together with any Late Charges thereon) is paid in full, the Company Redemption Amount (together with any Late Charges thereon) may be converted, in whole or in part, by the Holder into Common Stock pursuant to Section 3. In the event the Holder elects to convert all or any portion of the Company Redemption Amount prior to the applicable Installment Date as set forth in the immediately preceding sentence, the Company Redemption Amount so converted shall be deducted from the Installment Amounts relating to the applicable Installment Date(s) as set forth in the applicable Conversion Notice.

(e) Acceleration of Installment Amounts. Notwithstanding any provision of this Section 8, during the period commencing on an Installment Date (a “**Current Installment Date**”) and ending on the Trading Day immediately prior to the next Installment Date (each, an “**Installment Period**”), at the option of the Holder, at one or more times, the Holder may convert one or more other Installment Amounts (each, an “**Acceleration**”), in whole or in part, at the Company Conversion Price of such Current Installment Date in accordance with the conversion procedures set forth in Section 3 hereunder, *mutatis mutandis*. In the event that the Holder elects to effect any Acceleration pursuant to this Section 8(e), the Holder shall notify the Company and the Trustee as to the Installment Amounts subject to such Acceleration. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Holder may not elect to effect the Acceleration of more than an aggregate of six (6) Installment Amounts pursuant to this Section 8(e). The amount of any other Installment Amount accelerated pursuant to this Section 8(e) is referred to as the “**Acceleration Amount**.”

(f) Blocker Notice; Designated Specified Amounts. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if (i) the Company has elected to effect a Company Conversion pursuant to this Section 8 with respect to the applicable Installment Date, (ii) the Company is permitted pursuant to this Section 8 to effect such Company Conversion on such Installment Date and (iii) prior to such Installment Date the Holder has delivered (via electronic mail or otherwise) to the Company and the Trustee a written notice (a “**Blocker Notice**”) (A) stating that such Company Conversion would result in a violation of Section 3(d)(i) and (B) specifying the portion of the applicable Installment Amount with respect to which such Company Conversion would result in a violation of Section 3(d)(i) if such Company Conversion were effected (such amount so specified is referred to herein as the “**Designated Specified Amount**”), the Installment Amount of the Holder for such Installment Date shall be automatically reduced by such Designated Specified Amount; provided, that (x) at the Holder’s option, at any time prior to the applicable Installment Date, the Holder may reduce the Designated Specified Amount of shares of Common Stock covered by such Blocker Notice, in whole or in part, by delivery of one or more written notices to the Company and the Trustee (each, a “**Withdrawal Notice**”, and each date, a “**Withdrawal Notice Date**”) and elect to convert the Designated Specified Amount (or such lesser amount as set forth in the Withdrawal Notice) in accordance with this Section 8 (each a “**Withdrawn Designated Specified Amount**”) and (B) the Installment Amount with respect to such Installment Date shall be automatically increased by an amount equal to the sum of any Withdrawn Designated Specified Amounts set forth in Withdrawal Notices of the Holder with respect to such Installment Date delivered to the Company prior to such Installment Date and (y) either (A) if such Installment Date is prior to the Maturity Date, the Installment Amount of the immediately subsequent Installment Date shall be automatically increased by the Designated Specified Amount (less an amount equal to the sum of any Withdrawn Designated Specified Amounts set forth in Withdrawal Notices of the Holder delivered with respect to such Installment Date) or (Y) if such Installment Date is the Maturity Date, such Designated Specified Amount shall automatically increase the Company Redemption Amount to be paid in cash on the Maturity Date.

9. NONCIRCUMVENTION. The Company hereby covenants and agrees that the Company will not, by amendment of its Certificate of Incorporation (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement), Bylaws (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) or through any reorganization, transfer of assets, consolidation, merger, scheme of arrangement, dissolution, issue or sale of securities, or any other voluntary action, avoid or seek to avoid the observance or performance of any of the terms of this Note, and will at all times in good faith carry out all of the provisions of this Note and take all action as may be required to protect the rights of the Holder of this Note. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Company (i) shall not increase the par value of any shares of Common Stock receivable upon conversion of this Note above the Conversion Price then in effect, (ii) shall take all such actions as may be necessary or appropriate in order that the Company may validly and legally issue fully paid and nonassessable shares of Common Stock upon the conversion of this Note, and (iii) shall, so long as any of the Notes are outstanding, take all action necessary to reserve and keep available out of its authorized and unissued shares of Common Stock, solely for the purpose of effecting the conversion of the Notes, the maximum number of shares of Common Stock as shall from time to time be necessary to effect the conversion of the Notes then outstanding (without regard to any limitations on conversion).

10. RESERVATION OF AUTHORIZED SHARES.

(a) Reservation. The Company shall initially reserve out of its authorized and unissued Common Stock a number of shares of Common Stock for each of the Notes equal to 100% of the entire Conversion Rate with respect to the entire Conversion Amount of each such Note as of the Issuance Date. So long as any of the Notes are outstanding, the Company shall take all action necessary to reserve and keep available out of its authorized and unissued Common Stock, solely for the purpose of effecting the conversion of the Notes, 100% of the number of shares of Common Stock as shall from time to time be necessary to effect the conversion of all of the Notes then outstanding pursuant to the terms hereof, provided that at no time shall the number of shares of Common Stock so reserved be less than the number of shares required to be reserved by the previous sentence (without regard to any limitations on conversions) (the “**Required Reserve Amount**”). The initial number of shares of Common Stock reserved for conversions of the Notes and each increase in the number of shares so reserved shall be allocated pro rata among the holders of the Notes based on the original principal amount of the Notes held by each holder on the Closing Date or increase in the number of reserved shares (as the case may be) (the “**Authorized Share Allocation**”). In the event that the Holder shall sell or otherwise transfer any of this Note, each transferee shall be allocated a pro rata portion of the Holder’s Authorized Share Allocation. Any shares of Common Stock reserved and allocated to any Person which ceases to hold any Notes shall be allocated to the remaining holders of Notes, pro rata based on the principal amount of the Notes then held by such holders.

(b) Insufficient Authorized Shares. If, notwithstanding Section 10(a), and not in limitation thereof, at any time while any of the Notes remain outstanding the Company does not have a sufficient number of authorized and unreserved shares of Common Stock to satisfy its obligation to reserve for issuance upon conversion of the Notes at least a number of shares of Common Stock equal to the Required Reserve Amount (an “**Authorized Share Failure**”), then the Company shall immediately take all action necessary to increase the Company’s authorized shares of Common Stock to an amount sufficient to allow the Company to reserve the Required Reserve Amount for the Notes then outstanding. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing sentence, as soon as practicable after the date of the occurrence of an Authorized Share Failure, but in no event later than ninety (90) days after the occurrence of such Authorized Share Failure, the Company shall hold a meeting of its stockholders for the approval of an increase in the number of authorized shares of Common Stock. In connection with such meeting, the Company shall provide each stockholder with a proxy statement and shall use its best efforts to solicit its stockholders’ approval of such increase in authorized shares of Common Stock and to cause its board of directors to recommend to the stockholders that they approve such proposal. In the event that the Company is prohibited from issuing shares of Common Stock upon any conversion due to the failure by the Company to have sufficient shares of Common Stock available out of the authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock (such unavailable number of shares of Common Stock, the “**Authorization Failure Shares**”), in lieu of delivering such Authorization Failure Shares to the Holder, the Company shall pay cash (each, an “**Authorized Failure Share Cancellation Amount**”) in exchange for the redemption of such portion of the Conversion Amount convertible into such Authorized Failure Shares at an amount equal to the sum of (i) the product of (x) such number of Authorization Failure Shares and (y) the greatest Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on any Trading Day during the period commencing on the date the Holder delivers the applicable Conversion Notice with respect to such Authorization Failure Shares to the Company and ending on the date of such issuance and payment under this Section 10(b) and (ii) to the extent the Holder purchases (in an open market transaction or otherwise) shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by the Holder of Authorization Failure Shares, any brokerage commissions and other out-of-pocket expenses, if any, of the Holder incurred in connection therewith. Nothing contained in Section 10(a) or this Section 10(b) shall limit any obligations of the Company under any provision of the Securities Purchase Agreement.

11. HOLDER'S REDEMPTIONS. The Company, or at the Company's direction, the Trustee, shall deliver the applicable Event of Default Redemption Price to the Holder in cash within three (3) Business Days after the Company's receipt of the Holder's Event of Default Redemption Notice. The Trustee shall not have any payment obligation under this Section 11 unless and until it has received sufficient cash from the Company to make any of the payments set forth in this Section 11. If the Holder has submitted a Fundamental Transaction Redemption Notice in accordance with Section 5(b), the Company, or at the Company's directions, the Trustee, shall deliver the applicable Fundamental Transaction Redemption Price to the Holder in cash concurrently with the consummation of such Fundamental Transaction if such notice is received prior to the consummation of such Fundamental Transaction and within three (3) Business Days after the Company's receipt of such notice otherwise. The Company, or at the Company's direction, the Trustee, shall deliver the applicable Company Installment Redemption Price to the Holder in cash on the applicable Installment Date. In the event of a redemption of less than all of the Conversion Amount of this Note, the Company shall promptly cause to be issued and, following authentication of such new Note, delivered to the Holder a new Note (in accordance with Section 18(d)) representing the outstanding Principal which has not been redeemed. In the event that the Company does not pay the applicable Redemption Price to the Holder within the time period required, at any time thereafter and until the Company pays such unpaid Redemption Price in full, the Holder shall have the option, in lieu of redemption, to require the Company to promptly return to the Holder all or any portion of this Note representing the Conversion Amount that was submitted for redemption and for which the applicable Redemption Price (together with any Late Charges thereon) has not been paid. Upon the Company's receipt of such notice, (x) the applicable Redemption Notice shall be null and void with respect to such Conversion Amount, (y) the Company shall immediately return this Note, or issue a new, duly authenticated Note (in accordance with Section 18(d)), to the Holder, and in each case the principal amount of this Note or such new Note (as the case may be) shall be increased by an amount equal to the difference between (1) the applicable Event of Default Redemption Price, Fundamental Transaction Redemption Price or Company Installment Redemption Price (as the case may be) minus (2) the Principal portion of the Conversion Amount submitted for redemption and (z) the Conversion Price of this Note or such new Notes (as the case may be) shall be automatically adjusted with respect to each conversion effected thereafter by the Holder to the lowest of (A) the lowest Company Conversion Price of the Installment Dates occurring during the period commencing on the date the Holder delivers the applicable Redemption Notice and ending on the date the applicable Redemption Notice is voided, (B) 85% of the lowest Closing Bid Price of the Common Stock during the period beginning on and including the date on which the applicable Redemption Notice is delivered to the Company and ending on and including the date on which the applicable Redemption Notice is voided and (C) 85% of the VWAP of the Common Stock for the five (5) Trading Day period immediately preceding the Conversion Date of the applicable conversion. The Holder's delivery of a notice voiding a Redemption Notice and exercise of its rights following such notice shall not affect the Company's obligations to make any payments of Late Charges which have accrued prior to the date of such notice with respect to the Conversion Amount subject to such notice.



12. **COMPANY OPTIONAL REDEMPTION.** If at any time after the four (4) month anniversary of the Issuance Date (the “**Company Redemption Eligibility Date**”), no Equity Conditions Failure exists, the Company shall have the right to redeem all but not less than all (except in accordance with a Company Optional Redemption Blocker Notice (as defined below)) or a portion, of the Conversion Amount then remaining under this Note (the “**Company Optional Redemption Amount**”) on the Company Optional Redemption Date (each as defined below) (a “**Company Optional Redemption**”); provided that, notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Company Optional Redemption Amount for such Company Optional Redemption exceeds such portion of the Conversion Amount remaining under this Note that the Holder would be permitted to convert into Common Stock pursuant to Section 3 on the Company Optional Redemption Notice Date (as defined below) without violating Section 3(d) (the “**Permitted Company Optional Redemption Amount**”), the Holder, at its sole option, may deliver a written notice to the Company (a “**Company Optional Redemption Blocker Notice**”) stating that such Company Optional Redemption Amount set forth in the applicable Company Optional Redemption Notice (as defined below) exceeds the Permitted Company Optional Redemption Amount and, thereafter, the applicable Company Optional Redemption Amount shall be automatically reduced to the Permitted Company Optional Redemption Amount set forth in the applicable Company Optional Redemption Blocker Notice. The portion of this Note subject to redemption pursuant to this Section 12 shall be redeemed by the Company in cash at a price (the “**Company Optional Redemption Price**”) equal to (i) 100% of the Principal amount being redeemed, *plus* (ii) a premium equal to 20% of the Principal amount being redeemed during the period between the Company Redemption Eligibility Date and the one-year anniversary date of the Issuance Date and 15% of the Principal amount being redeemed thereafter, *plus* (iii) all accrued and unpaid Interest with respect to such portion of the Principal amount and accrued and unpaid Late Charges, if any, with respect to such portion of such Principal and such Interest. The Company may exercise its right to require redemption under this Section 12 by delivering an irrevocable written notice thereof by electronic mail and overnight courier to all, but not less than all, of the holders of Notes (the “**Company Optional Redemption Notice**” and the date all of the holders of Notes received such notice is referred to as the “**Company Optional Redemption Notice Date**”). The Company may deliver only one Company Optional Redemption Notice during any thirty-day period hereunder. The Company Optional Redemption Notice shall (x) state the date on which the Company Optional Redemption shall occur (the “**Company Optional Redemption Date**”) which date shall not be less than twenty (20) Trading Days nor more than thirty (30) Trading Days following the Company Optional Redemption Notice Date, (y) certify that no Equity Conditions Failure exists as of the date of the Company Optional Redemption Notice, and (z) state the aggregate Conversion Amount of the Notes which is being redeemed in such Company Optional Redemption from the Holder and all of the other holders of the Notes pursuant to this Section 12 on the Company Optional Redemption Date. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, (i) if an Equity Conditions Failure occurs at any time prior to the Company Optional Redemption Date, (A) the Company shall provide the Holder a subsequent notice to that effect and (B) unless the Holder waives the applicable Equity Conditions Failure occurrence, the Company Optional Redemption shall be cancelled and the applicable Company Optional Redemption Notice shall be null and void and (ii) at any time prior to the date the Company Optional Redemption Price is paid, in full, the Company Optional Redemption Amount may be converted, in whole or in part, by the Holders into Common Stock pursuant to Section 3. All Conversion Amounts converted by the Holder after the Company Optional Redemption Notice Date shall reduce the Company Optional Redemption Amount of this Note required to be redeemed on the Company Optional Redemption Date. Redemptions made pursuant to this Section 12 shall be made in accordance with Section 11.

13. VOTING RIGHTS. The Holder shall have no voting rights as the holder of this Note, except as required by law (including, without limitation, the Delaware General Corporation Law) and as expressly provided in this Note.

14. COVENANTS. Until all of the Notes have been converted, redeemed or otherwise satisfied in accordance with their terms:

(a) Rank. All payments due under this Note shall be senior to all other Indebtedness of the Company.

(b) Incurrence of Indebtedness. The Company shall not, directly or indirectly, incur or guarantee, assume or suffer to exist any Indebtedness (other than (i) the Indebtedness evidenced by the Notes and (ii) Permitted Indebtedness).

(c) Incurrence of Indebtedness by Subsidiaries. The Company shall cause each of its Subsidiaries to not, directly or indirectly, incur or guarantee, assume or suffer to exist any Indebtedness other than the Subsidiary Notes.

(d) Existence of Liens. The Company shall not, directly or indirectly, allow or suffer to exist any mortgage, lien, pledge, charge, security interest or other encumbrance upon or in any property or assets (including accounts and contract rights) owned by the Company (collectively, "**Liens**") other than Permitted Liens.

(e) Existence of Subsidiary Liens. The Company shall cause each of its Subsidiaries to not, directly or indirectly, allow or suffer to exist any Lien upon or in any property or assets (including accounts and contract rights) owned by any of its Subsidiaries other than (i) Liens created pursuant to the Subsidiary Notes and (ii) Liens specified in clauses (i) through (iii) of the definition of Permitted Liens.

(f) Restricted Payments. The Company shall not, directly or indirectly, redeem, defease, repurchase, repay or make any payments in respect of, by the payment of cash or cash equivalents (in whole or in part, whether by way of open market purchases, tender offers, private transactions or otherwise), all or any portion of any Indebtedness, whether by way of payment in respect of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on, such Indebtedness if at the time such payment is due or is otherwise made or, after giving effect to such payment, (i) an event constituting an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing or (ii) an event that with the passage of time and without being cured would constitute an Event of Default has occurred and is continuing.

(g) Restricted Payments. The Company shall cause each of its Subsidiaries to not, directly or indirectly, redeem, defease, repurchase, repay or make any payments in respect of, by the payment of cash or cash equivalents (in whole or in part, whether by way of open market purchases, tender offers, private transactions or otherwise), all or any portion of any Indebtedness, whether by way of payment in respect of principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on, such Indebtedness, other than in accordance with the terms of the Subsidiary Notes.

(h) Restriction on Redemption and Cash Dividends. The Company shall not, and the Company shall cause each of its Subsidiaries to not, directly or indirectly, redeem, repurchase or declare or pay any cash dividend or distribution on any of its capital stock (other than dividends paid by wholly-owned Subsidiaries to the Company or to other wholly-owned Subsidiaries if either (i) such Subsidiary is a Borrower Subsidiary or (ii) the equity interests of such Subsidiary have been pledged to the Collateral Agent as provided in the Security Documents).

(i) Restriction on Transfer of Assets. The Company shall not, and the Company shall cause each of its Subsidiaries to not, directly or indirectly, sell, lease, license, assign, transfer, spin-off, split-off, close, convey or otherwise dispose of any assets or rights of the Company or any Subsidiary owned or hereafter acquired whether in a single transaction or a series of related transactions, other than sales, leases, licenses, assignments, transfers, conveyances and other dispositions of intellectual property rights by the Company and its Subsidiaries in the ordinary course of the Company's business of enforcing and licensing intellectual property rights. For the avoidance of doubt, this clause shall prevent (i) the Company from transferring any of its assets to any Subsidiary except pursuant to the Subsidiary Notes, and (ii) any Subsidiary from transferring any of its assets to any other Subsidiary.

(j) Maturity of Indebtedness. The Company shall not, and the Company shall cause each of its Subsidiaries to not, directly or indirectly, permit any Indebtedness of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries to mature or accelerate prior to the Maturity Date.

(k) Change in Nature of Business. The Company shall not, and the Company shall cause each of its Subsidiaries to not, directly or indirectly, engage in any material line of business substantially different from those lines of business conducted by or publicly contemplated to be conducted by the Company and each of its Subsidiaries on the Issuance Date or any business substantially related or incidental thereto. The Company shall not, and the Company shall cause each of its Subsidiaries to not, directly or indirectly, modify its or their corporate structure or purpose provided that an acquisition of intellectual property and related assets which can be used in other industries shall be permitted.

(l) Preservation of Existence, Etc. The Company shall maintain and preserve, and cause each of its Subsidiaries to maintain and preserve, its existence, rights and privileges, and become or remain, and cause each of its Subsidiaries to become or remain, duly qualified and in good standing in each jurisdiction in which the character of the properties owned or leased by it or in which the transaction of its business makes such qualification necessary. The Company shall take all action necessary to prevent any Borrower Subsidiary from becoming Insolvent (as such term is defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement). The Company shall cause each Borrower Subsidiary to pay all accounts payable and other amounts owed by such Borrower Subsidiary (other than Indebtedness) when due, except for such amounts as are being contested in good faith and for which adequate reserves have been established and are being maintained by such Borrower Subsidiary in accordance with GAAP (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement).

(m) Maintenance of Properties, Etc. The Company shall maintain and preserve, and cause each of its Subsidiaries to maintain and preserve, all of its properties which are necessary or useful in the proper conduct of its business in good working order and condition, ordinary wear and tear excepted, and comply, and cause each of its Subsidiaries to comply, at all times in all material respects with the provisions of all leases to which it is a party as lessee or under which it occupies property, so as to prevent any loss or forfeiture thereof or thereunder.

(n) Maintenance of Intellectual Property. The Company will, and will cause each of its Subsidiaries to, take all action necessary or advisable to maintain all of the Intellectual Property Rights (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) of the Company and/or any of its Subsidiaries that the Board of Directors of the Company, in the good faith exercise of its business judgment, determines are necessary or material to the conduct of its business in full force and effect.

(o) Maintenance of Insurance. The Company shall maintain, and cause each of its Subsidiaries to maintain, insurance with responsible and reputable insurance companies or associations (including, without limitation, comprehensive general liability, hazard, rent and business interruption insurance) with respect to its properties (including all real properties leased or owned by it) and business, in such amounts and covering such risks as is required by any governmental authority having jurisdiction with respect thereto or as is carried generally in accordance with sound business practice by companies in similar businesses similarly situated.

(p) Investments. The Company shall not, and the Company shall cause each of its Subsidiaries to not, directly or indirectly, without the prior written express consent of the Holder, lend money or credit (by way of guarantee or otherwise) or make advances to any Subsidiary, or purchase or acquire any stock, bonds, notes, debentures or other obligations or securities of, or any other interest in, or make any capital contribution to, any Subsidiary (other than (A) a wholly-owned Subsidiary (i) that is a Borrower Subsidiary or (ii) the equity interests of which have been pledged to the Collateral Agent as provided in the Security Documents or (B) pursuant to the Subsidiary Notes).

(q) Transactions with Affiliates. The Company shall not, nor shall it permit any of its Subsidiaries to, enter into, renew, extend or be a party to, any transaction or series of related transactions (including, without limitation, the purchase, sale, lease, transfer or exchange of property or assets of any kind or the rendering of services of any kind) with any affiliate, except transactions necessary or desirable for the prudent operation of its business, for fair consideration and on terms no less favorable to it or its Subsidiaries than would be obtainable in a comparable arm's length transaction with a Person that is not an affiliate thereof.

(r) Restricted Issuances. The Company shall not, directly or indirectly, without the prior written consent of the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Notes then outstanding, (i) issue any Notes (other than as contemplated by the Securities Purchase Agreement, the Indenture, the Supplemental Indenture and the Notes) or (ii) issue any other securities that would cause a breach or default under the Notes or the Warrants.

(s) New Subsidiaries. Simultaneously with the acquisition or formation of any new Subsidiary (a “**New Subsidiary**”), the Company shall deliver, or cause the applicable Subsidiary to deliver to the Collateral Agent, each of the physical stock certificates or other ownership certificates representing all of the equity ownership interest in such New Subsidiary, along with undated stock powers (or the equivalent) for each such certificates, executed in blank (or, if any such shares or other ownership interests are uncertificated, confirmation and evidence reasonably satisfactory to the Collateral Agent that the security interest in such uncertificated securities has been transferred to and perfected by the Collateral Agent, in accordance with Sections 8-313, 8-321 and 9-115 of the Code or any other similar or local or foreign law that may be applicable); provided, however no certificates shall be delivered or required to be delivered by the Company to the extent such delivery results in the New Subsidiary being required to file separate financial statements with the SEC (or any other governmental agency) pursuant to Rule 3-16 of Regulation S-X under the Securities Act, in which case, the Company shall at the time of the formation of the New Subsidiary (i) lend to the New Subsidiary pursuant to a Subsidiary Note an amount equal to the fair market value of the assets to be contributed to or to be acquired by such New Subsidiary minus \$1.00, (ii) cause the New Subsidiary to execute a Subsidiary Note in the amount specified in clause (i), (iii) file a UCC-1 in the appropriate jurisdiction (or the analog thereof if such Subsidiary is outside the United States) in the name of the Company listing the Collateral Agent as the assignee thereof, (iv) if applicable, cause the New Subsidiary to enter into a patent assignment in favor of the Company in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Collateral Agent assigning all of the New Subsidiary’s patent rights to the Company, (v) if applicable, file with the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office the patent assignment referenced in (iv) along with a patent assignment in favor of the Collateral Agent in a form reasonably satisfactory to the Collateral Agent assigning all of the Company’s rights in the patent assignment referenced in (iv) to the Collateral Agent, and (vi) deliver to the Collateral Agent (A) the Subsidiary Note, endorsed to the order of the Collateral Agent, (B) a Collateral Assignment Agreement assigning the Company’s right, title and interest in the Subsidiary Note to the Collateral Agent, (C) evidence of the filing of the UCC-1 (or any foreign analog), and (D) if applicable, filed copies of the patent assignments referenced in clauses (iv) and (v).

(t) Lockbox Balance; Lockbox Account.

(i) Commencing on the date that the Closing Bid Price of the Common Stock is less than \$0.25 (appropriately adjusted for any stock dividend, stock split, stock combination, recapitalizations or other similar transaction occurring after the Issuance Date) and continuing until the average VWAP of the Common Stock for a period of ten (10) consecutive Trading Days is greater than \$0.25 (appropriately adjusted for any stock dividend, stock split, stock combination, recapitalizations or other similar transaction occurring after the Issuance Date), the Company shall at all times cause the Lockbox Balance in a bank account controlled by the Collateral Agent (as defined in the Security Agreement) and otherwise reasonably satisfactory to the Holder to exceed the sum of 50% of the principal and accrued and unpaid interest, Late Charges, if any, and other amounts owed under this Note and the other Transaction Documents at such time (collectively, the “**Adjusted Note Obligations**”). The Company shall establish and maintain a Controlled Account Agreement with the Collateral Agent and the bank each bank at which the Controlled Account is maintained in form and substance reasonably acceptable to the Collateral Agent.

(ii) If on any day, the Adjusted Note Obligations exceeds the Lockbox Balance, the Company shall, within three (3) Business Days, cause an amount equal to such excess to be deposited into the Controlled Account.

15. PARTICIPATION. In addition to any adjustments pursuant to Section 7, the Holder, as the holder of this Note, shall be entitled to receive such dividends paid and distributions made to the holders of Common Stock to the same extent as if the Holder had converted this Note into Common Stock (without regard to any limitations on conversion herein or elsewhere) and had held such shares of Common Stock on the record date for such dividends and distributions. Payments under the preceding sentence shall be made concurrently with the dividend or distribution to the holders of Common Stock (provided, however, to the extent that the Holder's right to participate in any such dividend or distribution would result in the Holder exceeding the Maximum Percentage, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such dividend or distribution to such extent (or the beneficial ownership of any such shares of Common Stock as a result of such dividend or distribution to such extent) and such dividend or distribution to such extent shall be held in abeyance for the benefit of the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Maximum Percentage).

16. AMENDING THE TERMS OF THIS NOTE. The prior written consent of the Holder and the Trustee (if such amendment adversely affects the rights, privileges and immunities of the Trustee) shall be required for any change or amendment to this Note. No consideration shall be offered or paid to the Holder to amend or consent to a waiver or modification of any provision of this Note unless the same consideration is also offered to all of the holders of the Notes.

17. TRANSFER. This Note and any shares of Common Stock issued upon conversion of this Note may be offered, sold, assigned or transferred by the Holder without restriction and without the consent of the Company; provided, that this Note may not be transferred to more than five (5) transferees.

18. REISSUANCE OF THIS NOTE.

(a) Transfer. If this Note is to be transferred, the Holder shall surrender this Note to the Company, whereupon the Company will forthwith issue and, following authentication of such new Note, deliver upon the order of the Holder a new Note (in accordance with Section 18(d)), registered as the Holder may request, representing the outstanding Principal being transferred by the Holder and, if less than the entire outstanding Principal is being transferred, a new, duly authenticated Note (in accordance with Section 18(d)) to the Holder representing the outstanding Principal not being transferred. The Holder and any assignee, by acceptance of this Note, acknowledge and agree that, by reason of the provisions of Section 3(c)(iii) following conversion or redemption of any portion of this Note, the outstanding Principal represented by this Note may be less than the Principal stated on the face of this Note.

(b) Lost, Stolen or Mutilated Note. Upon compliance with Section 2.07 of the Indenture, the Company shall execute and, following authentication of such new Note, deliver to the Holder a new Note (in accordance with Section 18(d)) representing the outstanding Principal.

(c) Note Exchangeable for Different Denominations. This Note is exchangeable, upon the surrender hereof by the Holder at the principal office of the Company, for a new, duly authenticated Note or Notes (in accordance with Section 18(d) and in principal amounts of at least \$1,000) representing in the aggregate the outstanding Principal of this Note, and each such new Note will represent such portion of such outstanding Principal as is designated by the Holder at the time of such surrender.

(d) Issuance of New Notes. Whenever the Company is required to issue a new duly authenticated Note pursuant to the terms of this Note, such new Note (i) shall be of like tenor with this Note, (ii) shall represent, as indicated on the face of such new Note, the Principal remaining outstanding (or in the case of a new Note being issued pursuant to Section 18(a) or Section 18(c), the Principal designated by the Holder which, when added to the principal represented by the other new Notes issued in connection with such issuance, does not exceed the Principal remaining outstanding under this Note immediately prior to such issuance of new Notes), (iii) shall have an issuance date, as indicated on the face of such new Note, which is the same as the Issuance Date of this Note, (iv) shall have the same rights and conditions as this Note, (v) shall represent accrued and unpaid Interest and Late Charges on the Principal and Interest of this Note, from the Issuance Date and (vi) shall be duly authenticated by the Trustee in accordance with the Indenture.

19. REMEDIES, CHARACTERIZATIONS, OTHER OBLIGATIONS, BREACHES AND INJUNCTIVE RELIEF. The remedies provided in this Note shall be cumulative and in addition to all other remedies available under this Note and any of the other Transaction Documents at law or in equity (including a decree of specific performance and/or other injunctive relief), and nothing herein shall limit the Holder's right to pursue actual and consequential damages for any failure by the Company to comply with the terms of this Note. The Company covenants to the Holder that there shall be no characterization concerning this instrument other than as expressly provided herein. Amounts set forth or provided for herein with respect to payments, conversion and the like (and the computation thereof) shall be the amounts to be received by the Holder and shall not, except as expressly provided herein, be subject to any other obligation of the Company (or the performance thereof). The Company acknowledges that a breach by it of its obligations hereunder will cause irreparable harm to the Holder and that the remedy at law for any such breach may be inadequate. The Company therefore agrees that, in the event of any such breach or threatened breach, the Holder shall be entitled, in addition to all other available remedies, to an injunction restraining any such breach or any such threatened breach, without the necessity of showing economic loss and without any bond or other security being required. The Company shall provide all information and documentation to the Holder and the Trustee that is requested by the Holder to enable the Holder to confirm the Company's compliance with the terms and conditions of this Note (including, without limitation, compliance with Section 7).

20. PAYMENT OF COLLECTION, ENFORCEMENT AND OTHER COSTS. If (a) this Note is placed in the hands of an attorney for collection or enforcement or is collected or enforced through any legal proceeding or the Holder otherwise takes action to collect amounts due under this Note or to enforce the provisions of this Note or (b) there occurs any bankruptcy, reorganization, receivership of the Company or other proceedings affecting Company creditors' rights and involving a claim under this Note, then the Company shall pay the costs incurred by the Holder for such collection, enforcement or action or in connection with such bankruptcy, reorganization, receivership or other proceeding, including, without limitation, attorneys' fees and disbursements. The Company expressly acknowledges and agrees that no amounts due under this Note shall be affected, or limited, by the fact that the purchase price paid for this Note was less than the original Principal amount hereof. The Trustee shall have no duty under the Notes to confirm or verify or monitor the Company's compliance with the terms or its obligations under the Notes.

21. CONSTRUCTION; HEADINGS. This Note shall be deemed to be jointly drafted by the Company and the Holder and shall not be construed against any Person as the drafter hereof. The headings of this Note are for convenience of reference and shall not form part of, or affect the interpretation of, this Note. Terms used in this Note but defined in the other Transaction Documents shall have the meanings ascribed to such terms on the Closing Date in such other Transaction Documents unless otherwise consented to in writing by the Holder.

22. FAILURE OR INDULGENCE NOT WAIVER. No failure or delay on the part of the Holder in the exercise of any power, right or privilege hereunder shall operate as a waiver thereof, nor shall any single or partial exercise of any such power, right or privilege preclude other or further exercise thereof or of any other right, power or privilege. No waiver shall be effective unless it is in writing and signed by an authorized representative of the waiving party.

23. DISPUTE RESOLUTION. In the case of a dispute as to the determination of the Conversion Price, the Closing Bid Price, the Closing Sale Price or fair market value (as the case may be) or the arithmetic calculation of the Conversion Rate or the applicable Redemption Price (as the case may be), the Company or the Holder (as the case may be) shall submit the disputed determinations or arithmetic calculations (as the case may be) via electronic mail (i) within three (3) Business Days after receipt of the applicable notice giving rise to such dispute to the Company or the Holder (as the case may be) or (ii) if no notice gave rise to such dispute, at any time after the Holder learned of the circumstances giving rise to such dispute. If the Holder and the Company are unable to agree upon such determination or calculation within three (3) Business Days of such disputed determination or arithmetic calculation (as the case may be) being submitted to the Company or the Holder (as the case may be), then the Company shall, within two (2) Business Days, submit via electronic mail (a) the disputed determination of the Conversion Price, the Closing Bid Price, the Closing Sale Price or fair market value (as the case may be) to an independent, reputable investment bank selected by the Holder and reasonably acceptable to the Company or (b) the disputed arithmetic calculation of the Conversion Rate or any Redemption Price (as the case may be) to the Company's independent, outside accountant. The Company shall cause at its expense the investment bank or the accountant (as the case may be) to perform the determinations or calculations (as the case may be) and notify the Company and the Holder of the results no later than ten (10) Business Days from the time it receives such disputed determinations or calculations (as the case may be). Such investment bank's or accountant's determination or calculation (as the case may be) shall be binding upon all parties absent demonstrable error.



24. NOTICES; PAYMENTS.

(a) Notices. Whenever notice is required to be given under this Note, unless otherwise provided herein, such notice shall be given in accordance with Section 9(f) of the Securities Purchase Agreement. The Company will give written notice to the Holder and the Trustee (i) immediately upon any adjustment of the Conversion Price, setting forth in reasonable detail, and certifying, the calculation of such adjustment and (ii) at least fifteen (15) days prior to the date on which the Company closes its books or takes a record (A) with respect to any dividend or distribution upon the Common Stock, (B) with respect to any grant, issuances, or sales of any Options, Convertible Securities or rights to purchase stock, warrants, securities or other property to holders of shares of Common Stock or (C) for determining rights to vote with respect to any Fundamental Transaction, dissolution or liquidation, provided in each case that such information shall be made known to the public prior to or in conjunction with such notice being provided to the Holder. All notices to be provided to the Trustee hereunder shall be delivered to the Trustee by facsimile (303-262-0608) or via hard copy to the Trustee at its Corporate Trust Office (as defined in the Indenture) located in Highlands Ranch, Colorado.

(b) Currency. All dollar amounts referred to in this Note are in United States Dollars (“**U.S. Dollars**”), and all amounts owing under this Note shall be paid in U.S. Dollars. All amounts denominated in other currencies (if any) shall be converted into the U.S. Dollar equivalent amount in accordance with the Exchange Rate on the date of calculation. “**Exchange Rate**” means, in relation to any amount of currency to be converted into U.S. Dollars pursuant to this Note, the U.S. Dollar exchange rate as published in the Wall Street Journal on the relevant date of calculation (it being understood and agreed that where an amount is calculated with reference to, or over, a period of time, the date of calculation shall be the final date of such period of time).

(c) Payments. Whenever any payment of cash is to be made by the Company to any Person pursuant to this Note, unless otherwise expressly set forth herein, such payment shall be made in lawful money of the United States of America by a certified check drawn on the account of the Company and sent via overnight courier service to such Person at such address as previously provided to the Company in writing (which address, in the case of each of the Buyers, shall initially be as set forth on the Schedule of Buyers attached to the Securities Purchase Agreement), provided that the Holder may elect to receive a payment of cash via wire transfer of immediately available funds by providing the Company with prior written notice setting out such request and the Holder’s wire transfer instructions. Whenever any amount expressed to be due by the terms of this Note is due on any day which is not a Business Day, the same shall instead be due on the next succeeding day which is a Business Day. Any amount of Principal or other amounts due under the Transaction Documents which is not paid when due shall result in a late charge being incurred and payable by the Company in an amount equal to interest on such amount at the rate of sixteen and one-half percent (16.5%) per annum from the date such amount was due until the same is paid in full (“**Late Charge**”).

25. CANCELLATION. After all Principal, accrued Interest, Late Charges and other amounts at any time owed on this Note have been paid in full, this Note shall automatically be deemed canceled, shall be surrendered to the Company for cancellation and shall not be reissued.

26. WAIVER OF NOTICE. To the extent permitted by law, the Company hereby irrevocably waives demand, notice, presentment, protest and all other demands and notices in connection with the delivery, acceptance, performance, default or enforcement of this Note and the Securities Purchase Agreement.

27. GOVERNING LAW. This Note shall be construed and enforced in accordance with, and all questions concerning the construction, validity, interpretation and performance of this Note shall be governed by, the internal laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to any choice of law or conflict of law provision or rule (whether of the State of New York or any other jurisdictions) that would cause the application of the laws of any jurisdictions other than the State of New York. The Company hereby irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the state and federal courts sitting in The City of New York, Borough of Manhattan, for the adjudication of any dispute hereunder or in connection herewith or with any transaction contemplated hereby or discussed herein, and hereby irrevocably waives, and agrees not to assert in any suit, action or proceeding, any claim that it is not personally subject to the jurisdiction of any such court, that such suit, action or proceeding is brought in an inconvenient forum or that the venue of such suit, action or proceeding is improper. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to limit in any way any right to serve process in any manner permitted by law. In the event that any provision of this Note is invalid or unenforceable under any applicable statute or rule of law, then such provision shall be deemed inoperative to the extent that it may conflict therewith and shall be deemed modified to conform with such statute or rule of law. Any such provision which may prove invalid or unenforceable under any law shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other provision of this Note. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed or operate to preclude the Holder from bringing suit or taking other legal action against the Company in any other jurisdiction to collect on the Company's obligations to the Holder, to realize on any collateral or any other security for such obligations, or to enforce a judgment or other court ruling in favor of the Holder. **THE COMPANY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO, AND AGREES NOT TO REQUEST, A JURY TRIAL FOR THE ADJUDICATION OF ANY DISPUTE HEREUNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH OR ARISING OUT OF THIS NOTE OR ANY TRANSACTION CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.**

28. CERTAIN DEFINITIONS. For purposes of this Note, the following terms shall have the following meanings:

(a) **"Bloomberg"** means Bloomberg, L.P.

(b) **"Business Day"** means any day other than (i) a Saturday or a Sunday, or (ii) a day on which Federal or State banking institutions in the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York or in the State in which the Corporate Trust Office (as defined in the Indenture) may be located from time to time, are authorized or obligated by law, executive order or regulation to close.

(c) **“Change of Control”** means any Fundamental Transaction other than (i) any merger of the Company or any of its, direct or indirect, wholly-owned Subsidiaries with or into any of the foregoing, (ii) any reorganization, recapitalization or reclassification of the shares of Common Stock in which holders of a majority of the Company’s voting power immediately prior to such reorganization, recapitalization or reclassification continue after such reorganization, recapitalization or reclassification to hold publicly traded securities and, directly or indirectly, are, in all material respects, the holders of a majority of the voting power of the surviving entity (or entities with the authority or voting power to elect the members of the board of directors (or their equivalent if other than a corporation) of such entity or entities) after such reorganization, recapitalization or reclassification, or (iii) pursuant to a migratory merger effected solely for the purpose of changing the jurisdiction of incorporation of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

(d) **“Change of Control Redemption Premium”** means 120% during the period from the Issuance Date to the one-year anniversary of the Issuance Date and 115% thereafter.

(e) **“Closing Bid Price”** and **“Closing Sale Price”** means, for any security as of any date, the last closing bid price and last closing trade price, respectively, for such security on the Principal Market, as reported by Bloomberg, or, if the Principal Market begins to operate on an extended hours basis and does not designate the closing bid price or the closing trade price (as the case may be) then the last bid price or last trade price, respectively, of such security prior to 4:00:00 p.m., New York time, as reported by Bloomberg, or, if the Principal Market is not the principal securities exchange or trading market for such security, the last closing bid price or last trade price, respectively, of such security on the principal securities exchange or trading market where such security is listed or traded as reported by Bloomberg, or if the foregoing do not apply, the last closing bid price or last trade price, respectively, of such security in the over-the-counter market on the electronic bulletin board for such security as reported by Bloomberg, or, if no closing bid price or last trade price, respectively, is reported for such security by Bloomberg, the average of the bid prices, or the ask prices, respectively, of any market makers for such security as reported in the “pink sheets” by OTC Markets Inc.(formerly Pink Sheets LLC). If the Closing Bid Price or the Closing Sale Price cannot be calculated for a security on a particular date on any of the foregoing bases, the Closing Bid Price or the Closing Sale Price (as the case may be) of such security on such date shall be the fair market value as mutually determined by the Company and the Holder. If the Company and the Holder are unable to agree upon the fair market value of such security, then such dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures in Section 23. All such determinations shall be appropriately adjusted for any stock dividend, stock split, stock combination, recapitalizations or other similar transaction during such period.

(f) **“Code”** means the Uniform Commercial Code as in effect from time to time in the State of New York.

(g) **“Collateral Assignment Agreement”** means the Collateral Assignment Agreement, the form of which is included in the Security Documents.

(h) **“Common Stock”** means (i) the Company’s shares of common stock, \$0.01 par value per share, and (ii) any capital stock into which such common stock shall have been changed or any share capital resulting from a reclassification of such common stock.

(i) **“Company Conversion Price”** means, with respect to a particular date of determination, the price which is equal to the product of (1) 85% multiplied by (2) the quotient of (A) the sum of each of the three (3) lowest Closing Sale Prices of the Common Stock during the period of (X) with respect to the first Installment Amount, the number of Trading Days between the Issuance Date and the Installment Date of the first Installment Amount and (Y) with respect to any Installment Amount other than the first Installment Amount, twenty (20) consecutive Trading Day immediately preceding the applicable Installment Date (each such period, a **“Company Conversion Measuring Period”**) divided by (B) three (3). All such determinations to be appropriately adjusted for any stock split, stock dividend, stock combination or other similar transaction during any such Company Conversion Measuring Period.

(j) **“Conversion Share Ratio”** means as to any applicable Installment Date, the quotient of (i) the number of Pre-Installment Conversion Shares delivered in connection with such Installment Date divided by (ii) the number of Post-Installment Conversion Shares applicable to such Installment Date.

(k) **“Convertible Securities”** means any stock or other security (other than Options) that is at any time and under any circumstances, directly or indirectly, convertible into, exercisable or exchangeable for, or which otherwise entitles the holder thereof to acquire, any shares of Common Stock.

(l) **“Eligible Market”** means The New York Stock Exchange, the Nasdaq Global Select Market, the Nasdaq Global Market, the NYSE MKT, the OTCQB or the Principal Market.

(m) **“Equity Conditions”** means: (i) on each day during the period beginning one month prior to the applicable date of determination and ending on and including the applicable date of determination (the **“Equity Conditions Measuring Period”**), the Common Stock (including all of the Registrable Securities) is listed or designated for quotation (as applicable) on an Eligible Market and shall not have been suspended from trading on an Eligible Market (other than suspensions of not more than two (2) Trading Days and occurring prior to the applicable date of determination due to business announcements by the Company); (ii) on each day during the Equity Conditions Measuring Period, the Company shall have delivered all shares of Common Stock issuable upon conversion of this Note on a timely basis as set forth in Section 3 hereof and all other shares of capital stock required to be delivered by the Company on a timely basis as set forth in the other Transaction Documents; (iii) any shares of Common Stock to be issued in connection with the event requiring determination may be issued in full without violating Section 3(d)(i)(i) hereof; (iv) any shares of Common Stock to be issued in connection with the event requiring determination may be issued in full without violating the rules or regulations of the Eligible Market on which the Common Stock is then listed or designated for quotation (as applicable); (v) on each day during the Equity Conditions Measuring Period, no public announcement of a pending, proposed or intended Fundamental Transaction shall have occurred which has not been abandoned, terminated or consummated; (vi) the Holder shall not be in (and no other Buyer shall be in) possession of any material, non-public information provided to any of them by the Company, any of its Subsidiaries or any of their respective affiliates, employees, officers, representatives, agents or the like; (vii) on each day during the Equity Conditions Measuring Period, the Company otherwise shall have been in material compliance with each, and shall not have breached any representation or warranty in any material respect (other than representations or warranties subject to material adverse effect or materiality, which may not be breached in any respect) or any covenant or other term or condition of any Transaction Document in any material respect, including, without limitation, the Company shall not have failed to timely make any payment pursuant to any Transaction Document; and (viii) without limiting clause (viii) above, on each day during the Equity Conditions Measuring Period, there shall not have occurred an Event of Default or an event that with the passage of time or giving of notice would constitute an Event of Default; and (viii) no Material Adverse Change then exists.

(n) **“Equity Conditions Failure”** means, with respect to a particular date of determination, that on any day during the period commencing twenty (20) Trading Days immediately prior to such date of determination, the Equity Conditions have not been satisfied (or waived in writing by the Holder).

(o) **“Equity Value Redemption Premium”** means 120% during the period from the Issuance Date to the one-year anniversary of the Issuance Date and 115% thereafter.

(p) **“Fundamental Transaction”** means that (i) (1) the Company shall, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions, consolidate or merge with or into (whether or not the Company is the surviving corporation) any other Person, or (2) the Company shall, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions, sell, lease, license, assign, transfer, convey or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its respective properties or assets to any other Person, or (3) the Company shall, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions, allow any other Person to make a purchase, tender or exchange offer that is accepted by the holders of more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Voting Stock of the Company (not including any shares of Voting Stock of the Company held by the Person or Persons making or party to, or associated or affiliated with the Persons making or party to, such purchase, tender or exchange offer), or (4) the Company shall, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions, consummate a stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination (including, without limitation, a reorganization, recapitalization, spin-off or scheme of arrangement) with any other Person whereby such other Person acquires more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Voting Stock of the Company (not including any shares of Voting Stock of the Company held by the other Person or other Persons making or party to, or associated or affiliated with the other Persons making or party to, such stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination), or (5) the Company shall, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions, reorganize, recapitalize or reclassify the Common Stock (which shall not include a reverse stock split), or (ii) any “person” or “group” (as these terms are used for purposes of Sections 13(d) and 14(d) of the 1934 Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder) is or shall become the “beneficial owner” (as defined in Rule 13d-3 under the 1934 Act), directly or indirectly, of 50% of the aggregate ordinary voting power represented by issued and outstanding Voting Stock of the Company, excluding Iroquois (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement).

(q) “GAAP” means United States generally accepted accounting principles, consistently applied.

(r) “**Holder Pro Rata Amount**” means a fraction (i) the numerator of which is the original Principal amount of this Note on the Closing Date and (ii) the denominator of which is the aggregate original principal amount of all Notes issued to the initial purchasers pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement on the Closing Date.

(s) “**Indenture**” means that certain Indenture, dated as of the Issuance Date, by and between the Company and the Trustee, as may be amended or supplemented from time to time, including without limitation, by any Supplemental Indenture (as defined below).

(t) “**Installment Amount**” means, with respect to any Installment Date, the sum of (A) (I) with respect to any Installment Date other than the Maturity Date, lesser of (X) the product of (I) \$595,238.10, multiplied by (II) the Holder Pro Rata Amount and (Y) the Principal amount then outstanding under this Note as of such Installment Date, and (II) with respect to the Installment Date that is the Maturity Date, the Principal amount then outstanding under this Note as of such Installment Date (in each case, as any such Installment Amount may be reduced pursuant to the terms of this Note, whether upon conversion, redemption or otherwise), (B) any Acceleration Amount accelerated pursuant to Section 8(e) and included in such Installment Amount in accordance therewith, (C) any Designated Specified Amount deferred pursuant to Section 8(f) and included in such Installment Amount in accordance therewith and (D) in each case of clauses (A) through (C) above, the sum of any accrued and unpaid Interest as of such Installment Date under this Note and accrued and unpaid Late Charges, if any, under this Note as of such Installment Date. In the event the Holder shall sell or otherwise transfer any portion of this Note, the transferee shall be allocated a pro rata portion of each unpaid Installment Amount hereunder.

(u) “**Installment Date**” means the first (1<sup>st</sup>) Trading Day of every calendar month after the Issuance Date until the Maturity Date.

(v) “**Interest Conversion Price**” means, for any Interest Date, the sum of the VWAP of the Common Stock for each of the five (5) consecutive Trading Days immediately preceding such Interest Date, divided by (y) five (5). All such determinations to be appropriately adjusted for any stock split, stock dividend, stock combination or other similar transaction during any such measuring period.

- (w) “**Interest Date**” means January 1, April 1, July 1 and October 1 of each year (each, an “**Interest Date**”).
- (x) “**Interest Rate**” means eight percent (8%) per annum, as may be adjusted from time to time in accordance with Section 2.
- (y) “**Lockbox Balance**” means, as of any given time, the cash balance held in the Controlled Account.

(z) “**Market Price**” means, for any given date, the lesser of (x) the VWAP of the Common Stock on the Trading Day immediately preceding such given date and (y) quotient of (I) the sum of the three (3) lowest VWAPs of the Common Stock during the ten (10) consecutive Trading Day period ending and including the Trading Day immediately prior to such given date, divided by (II) three (3) (such period, the “**Market Price Measuring Period**”). All such determinations to be appropriately adjusted for any stock dividend, stock split, stock combination, reclassification or similar transactions during such Market Price Measuring Period.

(aa) “**Material Adverse Change**” shall mean, as of any time of determination, during the period commencing on the Subscription Date and ending on such time of determination, a material adverse change and/or a material adverse development in the business, assets, liabilities, properties, operations (including results thereof), condition (financial or otherwise) or prospects of the Company and its Subsidiaries, taken as a whole; provided that none of the following will constitute, or be considered in determining whether there has been, a Material Adverse Change: any event, change, circumstance, effect or other matter resulting from or related to (i) any outbreak or escalation of war or major hostilities or any act of terrorism, (ii) changes in laws, GAAP or enforcement or interpretation thereof, (iii) changes that generally affect the industries and markets in which the Company operates which do not have a disproportionate effect on the Company and its Subsidiaries, (iv) changes in financial markets, general economic conditions (including prevailing interest rates, exchange rates, commodity prices and fuel costs) or political conditions, or (v) any action taken or failed to be taken pursuant to or in accordance with any Transaction Document at the written request of, or consented to in writing by, the Holder.

(bb) “**Maturity Date**” shall mean February 4, 2017; provided, however, the Maturity Date may be extended at the option of the Holder (i) in the event that, and for so long as, an Event of Default shall have occurred and be continuing or any event shall have occurred and be continuing that with the passage of time and the failure to cure would result in an Event of Default or (ii) through the date that is twenty (20) Business Days after the consummation of a Fundamental Transaction in the event that a Fundamental Transaction is publicly announced or a Fundamental Transaction Notice is delivered prior to the Maturity Date, provided further that if a Holder elects to convert some or all of this Note pursuant to Section 3 hereof, and the Conversion Amount would be limited pursuant to Section 3(d) hereunder, the Maturity Date shall automatically be extended until such time as such provision shall not limit the conversion of this Note.

(cc) **“Options”** means any rights, warrants or options to subscribe for or purchase shares of Common Stock or Convertible Securities.

(dd) **“Parent Entity”** of a Person means an entity that, directly or indirectly, controls the applicable Person and whose common stock or equivalent equity security is quoted or listed on an Eligible Market, or, if there is more than one such Person or Parent Entity, the Person or Parent Entity with the largest public market capitalization as of the date of consummation of the Fundamental Transaction.

(ee) **“Permitted Indebtedness”** means (i) Indebtedness evidenced by this Note and the other Notes; (ii) other Indebtedness of the Company (other than as expressly specified in, and permitted by, clause (iii) below) not to exceed \$250,000 in the aggregate outstanding at any time; provided, however, such Indebtedness shall be made expressly subordinate in right of payment to the Indebtedness evidenced by the Notes, as reflected in a written agreement acceptable to the Holder and approved by the Holder in writing, and which Indebtedness does not provide at any time for (A) the payment, prepayment, repayment, repurchase or defeasance, directly or indirectly, of any principal or premium, if any, thereon until ninety-one (91) days after the Maturity Date or later and (B) total interest and fees at a rate in excess of the Interest Rate; and (iii) equipment leases and purchase money obligations of the Company not to exceed \$250,000 in the aggregate outstanding at any time.

(ff) **“Permitted Liens”** means (i) any Lien for taxes not yet due or delinquent or being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings for which adequate reserves have been established in accordance with GAAP, (ii) any statutory Lien arising in the ordinary course of business by operation of law with respect to a liability that is not yet due or delinquent; (iii) any Lien created by operation of law, such as materialmen’s liens, mechanics’ liens and other similar liens, arising in the ordinary course of business with respect to a liability that is not yet due or delinquent or that are being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings; (iv) Liens securing the Indebtedness expressly permitted by clause (iii) of the definition of Permitted Indebtedness; provided such Liens are limited only to the assets financed by such Indebtedness; and (iv) Liens securing the Company’s obligations under the Transaction Documents.

(gg) **“Person”** means an individual, a limited liability company, a partnership, a joint venture, a corporation, a trust, an unincorporated organization, any other entity or a government or any department or agency thereof.

(hh) **“Pre-Installment Conversion Price”** means, with respect to a particular date of determination, the price which is equal to the product of (1) 85% multiplied by (2) the quotient of (A) the sum of each of the three (3) lowest Closing Sale Prices of the Common Stock during the twenty (20) consecutive Trading Day period immediately preceding (i) the Issuance Date (with respect to the first Installment Amount only) and (ii) with respect to any Installment Amount other than the first Installment Amount, the delivery or deemed delivery of the applicable Company Installment Notice divided by (B) three (3). All such determinations to be appropriately adjusted for any stock split, stock dividend, stock combination or other similar transaction during any such measuring period.



(ii) “**Principal Market**” means the Nasdaq Capital Market.

(jj) “**Post-Installment Conversion Shares**” means that number of shares of Common Stock that would be required to be delivered pursuant to Section 8 on an applicable Installment Date without taking into account the delivery of any Pre-Installment Conversion Shares.

(kk) “**Quarter**” means each of: (i) the period beginning on and including January 1 and ending on and including March 31; (ii) the period beginning on and including April 1 and ending on and including June 30; (iii) the period beginning on and including July 1 and ending on and including September 30; and (iv) the period beginning on and including October 1 and ending on and including December 31.

(ll) “**Redemption Notices**” means, collectively, Event of Default Redemption Notices and Change of Control Redemption Notices, and each of the foregoing, individually, a “**Redemption Notice**.”

(mm) “**Redemption Premium**” means 120% during the period from the Issuance Date to the one-year anniversary of the Issuance Date and 115% thereafter.

(nn) “**Redemption Prices**” means, collectively, Event of Default Redemption Prices, the Change of Control Redemption Prices and the Company Installment Redemption Prices, and each of the foregoing, individually, a “**Redemption Price**.”

(oo) “**SEC**” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission or the successor thereto.

(pp) “**Securities Purchase Agreement**” means that certain securities purchase agreement, dated as of the Subscription Date, by and among the Company and the initial holders of Notes pursuant to which the Company issued Notes and Warrants, as may be amended from time to time.

(qq) “**Securities Act**” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and the rules and regulations of the SEC promulgated thereunder.

(rr) “**Security Agreement**” means that certain security agreement, dated as of the Closing Date, by and among the Company, its Subsidiaries and the initial holders of the Notes, as may be amended from time to time.

(ss) “**Security Documents**” has the meaning set forth in the Securities Purchase Agreement.

(tt) “**Subscription Date**” means May 4, 2015.

(uu) “**Subsidiaries**” means any Person in which the Company, directly or indirectly, (i) owns any of the outstanding capital stock or holds any equity or similar interest of such Person or (ii) controls or operates all or any part of the business, operations or administration of such Person, and all of the foregoing.

(vv) “**Successor Entity**” means the Person (or, if so elected by the Holder, the Parent Entity) formed by, resulting from or surviving any Fundamental Transaction or the Person (or, if so elected by the Holder, the Parent Entity) with which such Fundamental Transaction shall have been entered into.

(ww) “**Supplemental Indenture**” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in the Securities Purchase Agreement, as such supplemental indenture may be amended, modified or supplemented from time to time.

(xx) “**Trading Day**” means any day on which the Common Stock is traded on the Principal Market, or, if the Principal Market is not the principal trading market for the Common Stock, then on the principal securities exchange or securities market on which the Common Stock is then traded, provided that “Trading Day” shall not include any day on which the Common Stock is scheduled to trade on such exchange or market for less than 4.5 hours or any day that the Common Stock is suspended from trading during the final hour of trading on such exchange or market (or if such exchange or market does not designate in advance the closing time of trading on such exchange or market, then during the hour ending at 4:00:00 p.m., New York time) unless such day is otherwise designated as a Trading Day in writing by the Holder.

(yy) “**Trustee**” means Computershare Trust Company, N.A., in its capacity as trustee under the Indenture, or any successor or any additional trustee appointed with respect to the Notes pursuant to the Indenture.

(zz) “**Voting Stock**” of a Person means capital stock of such Person of the class or classes pursuant to which the holders thereof have the general voting power to elect, or the general power to appoint, at least a majority of the board of directors, managers, trustees or other similar governing body of such Person (irrespective of whether or not at the time capital stock of any other class or classes shall have or might have voting power by reason of the happening of any contingency).

(aaa) “**VWAP**” means, for any security as of any date, the dollar volume-weighted average price for such security on the Principal Market (or, if the Principal Market is not the principal trading market for such security, then on the principal securities exchange or securities market on which such security is then traded) during the period beginning at 9:30:01 a.m., New York time, and ending at 4:00:00 p.m., New York time, as reported by Bloomberg through its “Volume at Price” function or, if the foregoing does not apply, the dollar volume-weighted average price of such security in the over-the-counter market on the electronic bulletin board for such security during the period beginning at 9:30:01 a.m., New York time, and ending at 4:00:00 p.m., New York time, as reported by Bloomberg, or, if no dollar volume-weighted average price is reported for such security by Bloomberg for such hours, the average of the highest closing bid price and the lowest closing ask price of any of the market makers for such security as reported in the “pink sheets” by Pink OTC Markets Inc.(formerly Pink Sheets LLC). If the VWAP cannot be calculated for such security on such date on any of the foregoing bases, the VWAP of such security on such date shall be the fair market value as mutually determined by the Company and the Holder. If the Company and the Holder are unable to agree upon the fair market value of such security, then such dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures in Section 23. All such determinations shall be appropriately adjusted for any stock dividend, stock split, stock combination or other similar transaction during such period.

(bbb) “**Warrants**” has the meaning ascribed to such term in the Securities Purchase Agreement, as may be amended from time to time, and shall include all warrants issued in exchange therefor or replacement thereof.

29. **DISCLOSURE.** Upon receipt or delivery by the Company of any notice in accordance with the terms of this Note, unless the Company has in good faith determined that the matters relating to such notice do not constitute material, non-public information relating to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, the Company shall within one (1) Business Day after any such receipt or delivery publicly disclose such material, non-public information on a Current Report on Form 8-K or otherwise. In the event that the Company believes that a notice contains material, non-public information relating to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, the Company so shall indicate to such Holder contemporaneously with delivery of such notice, and in the absence of any such indication, the Holder shall be allowed to presume that all matters relating to such notice do not constitute material, non-public information relating to the Company or its Subsidiaries. Nothing contained in this Section 29 shall limit any obligations of the Company, or any rights of the Holder, under Section 4(j) of the Securities Purchase Agreement.

30. **MAXIMUM PAYMENTS.** Without limiting Section 9(d) of the Securities Purchase Agreement, nothing contained in this Note shall, or shall be deemed to, establish or require the payment of a rate of interest or other charges in excess of the maximum permitted by applicable law. In the event that the rate of interest required to be paid or other charges under this Note exceeds the maximum permitted by such law, any payments in excess of such maximum shall be credited against amounts owed by the Company to the Holder and thus refunded to the Company.

31. **SECURITY.** This Note and the other Notes are secured to the extent and in the manner set forth in the Transaction Documents (including, without limitation, the Security Agreement and the other Security Documents).

32. **TRUSTEE.** The rights, privileges and immunities of the Trustee set forth in Article VII of the Indenture are incorporated herein, *mutatis mutandis*.

[signature page follows]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Note to be duly executed as of the Issuance Date set out above.

**Vringo, Inc.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

**EXHIBIT I**  
**VRINGO, INC.**  
**CONVERSION NOTICE**

Reference is made to the Senior Secured Convertible Note (the “**Note**”) issued to the undersigned by Vringo, Inc. (the “**Company**”). In accordance with and pursuant to the Note, the undersigned hereby elects to convert the Conversion Amount (as defined in the Note) of the Note indicated below into shares of common stock, \$0.01 par value per share (the “**Common Stock**”), of the Company, as of the date specified below.

Date of Conversion: \_\_\_\_\_

Aggregate Conversion Amount to be converted: \_\_\_\_\_

Conversion Price: \_\_\_\_\_

Number of shares of Common Stock to be issued: \_\_\_\_\_

Please issue the Common Stock into which the Note is being converted in the following name and to the following address:

Issue to: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

E-mail Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Holder: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

Account Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
(if electronic book entry transfer)

Transaction Code Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
(if electronic book entry transfer)

Installment Amount(s) to be reduced (and corresponding Installment \_\_\_\_\_  
Date(s)) and amount of reduction:

**EXHIBIT II**

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT**

The Company hereby acknowledges this Conversion Notice and hereby directs American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC to issue the above indicated number of shares of Common Stock in accordance with the Transfer Agent Instructions dated May 4, 2015 from the Company and acknowledged and agreed to by American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC.

**VRINGO, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

VRINGO, INC.

Issuer

AND

COMPUTERSHARE TRUST COMPANY, N.A.

Trustee

INDENTURE

Dated as of May 4, 2015

Senior Debt Securities

ANNEX III - 1

---

**CROSS-REFERENCE TABLE (1)**

<b>Section of Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as Amended</b>	<b>Section of Indenture</b>
310(a).	7.09
310(b).	7.08
	7.10
310(c).	Inapplicable
311(a).	7.13(a)
311(b).	7.13(b)
311(c).	Inapplicable
312(a).	5.02(a)
312(b).	5.02(b)
312(c).	5.02(c)
313(a).	5.04(a)
313(b).	5.04(a)
313(c).	5.04(a)
	5.04(b)
313(d).	5.04(b)
314(a).	5.03
314(b).	Inapplicable
314(c).	13.06
314(d).	Inapplicable
314(e).	13.06
314(f).	Inapplicable
315(a).	7.01(a)
	7.02
315(b).	6.07
315(c).	7.01
315(d).	7.01(b)
	7.01(c)
315(e).	6.07
316(a).	6.06
	8.04
316(b).	6.04
316(c).	8.01
317(a).	6.02
317(b).	4.03
318(a).	13.08

(1) This Cross-Reference Table does not constitute part of the Indenture and shall not have any bearing on the interpretation of any of its terms or provisions.



TABLE OF CONTENTS (2)

		<u>Page</u>
ARTICLE I	DEFINITIONS	1
SECTION 1.01	Definitions of Terms	1
ARTICLE II	ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION, REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES	4
SECTION 2.01	Designation and Terms of Securities	4
SECTION 2.02	Form of Securities and Trustee's Certificate	5
SECTION 2.03	Denominations: Provisions for Payment	6
SECTION 2.04	Execution and Authentications	7
SECTION 2.05	Registration of Transfer and Exchange	7
SECTION 2.06	Temporary Securities	8
SECTION 2.07	Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost or Stolen Securities	9
SECTION 2.08	Cancellation	9
SECTION 2.09	Benefits of Indenture	9
SECTION 2.10	Authenticating Agent	9
SECTION 2.11	Global Securities	10
ARTICLE III	REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING FUND PROVISIONS	11
SECTION 3.01	Redemption	11
SECTION 3.02	Notice of Redemption	11
SECTION 3.03	Payment Upon Redemption	12
SECTION 3.04	Sinking Fund	12
SECTION 3.05	Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities	12
SECTION 3.06	Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund	12
ARTICLE IV	COVENANTS	13
SECTION 4.01	Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest	13
SECTION 4.02	Maintenance of Office or Agency	13
SECTION 4.03	Paying Agents	13
SECTION 4.04	Appointment to Fill Vacancy in Office of Trustee	14
SECTION 4.05	Compliance with Consolidation Provisions	14
ARTICLE V	SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE	14
SECTION 5.01	Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Securityholders	14
SECTION 5.02	Preservation Of Information; Communications With Securityholders	14
SECTION 5.03	Reports by the Company	15
SECTION 5.04	Reports by the Trustee	15
ARTICLE VI	REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS ON EVENT OF DEFAULT	16
SECTION 6.01	Events of Default	16
SECTION 6.02	Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee	17
SECTION 6.03	Application of Moneys Collected	18

SECTION 6.04	Limitation on Suits	18
SECTION 6.05	Rights and Remedies Cumulative; Delay or Omission Not Waiver	19
SECTION 6.06	Control by Securityholders	19
SECTION 6.07	Undertaking to Pay Costs	20
ARTICLE VII	CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE	20
SECTION 7.01	Certain Duties and Responsibilities of Trustee	20
SECTION 7.02	Certain Rights of Trustee	21
SECTION 7.03	Trustee Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities	22
SECTION 7.04	May Hold Securities	22
SECTION 7.05	Moneys Held in Trust	22
SECTION 7.06	Compensation and Reimbursement	22
SECTION 7.07	Reliance on Officers' Certificate	23
SECTION 7.08	Disqualification; Conflicting Interests	23
SECTION 7.09	Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility	23
SECTION 7.10	Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor	23
SECTION 7.11	Acceptance of Appointment By Successor	24
SECTION 7.12	Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business	25
SECTION 7.13	Preferential Collection of Claims Against the Company	26
ARTICLE VIII	CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS	26
SECTION 8.01	Evidence of Action by Securityholders	26
SECTION 8.02	Proof of Execution by Securityholders	26
SECTION 8.03	Who May be Deemed Owners	27
SECTION 8.04	Certain Securities Owned by Company Disregarded	27
SECTION 8.05	Actions Binding on Future Securityholders	27
SECTION 8.06	Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called	27
SECTION 8.07	Call Notice and Place of Meetings	27
SECTION 8.08	Persons Entitled To Vote at Meetings	28
SECTION 8.09	Quorum; Action	28
SECTION 8.10	Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings	28
SECTION 8.11	Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings	29
ARTICLE IX SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES		29
SECTION 9.01	Supplemental Indentures Without the Consent of Securityholders	29
SECTION 9.02	Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders	30
SECTION 9.03	Effect of Supplemental Indentures	31
SECTION 9.04	Securities Affected by Supplemental Indentures	31
SECTION 9.05	Execution of Supplemental Indentures	31
ARTICLE X SUCCESSOR ENTITY		31
SECTION 10.01	Company May Consolidate, Etc	31
SECTION 10.02	Successor Entity Substituted	32

SECTION 10.03	Evidence of Consolidation, Etc. to Trustee	32
ARTICLE XI SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE		32
SECTION 11.01	Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture	32
SECTION 11.02	Discharge of Obligations	33
SECTION 11.03	Deposited Moneys to be Held in Trust	33
SECTION 11.04	Payment of Moneys Held by Paying Agents	33
SECTION 11.05	Repayment to Company	33
ARTICLE XII IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS		34
SECTION 12.01	No Recourse	34
ARTICLE XIII MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS		34
SECTION 13.01	Effect on Successors and Assigns	34
SECTION 13.02	Actions by Successor	34
SECTION 13.03	Surrender of Company Powers	34
SECTION 13.04	Notices	34
SECTION 13.05	Governing Law	35
SECTION 13.06	Treatment of Securities as Debt	35
SECTION 13.07	Compliance Certificates and Opinions	35
SECTION 13.08	Payments on Business Days	35
SECTION 13.09	Conflict with Trust Indenture Act	35
SECTION 13.10	Counterparts	35
SECTION 13.11	Separability	36
SECTION 13.12	Assignment	36

(2) This Table of Contents does not constitute part of the Indenture and shall not have any bearing on the interpretation of any of its terms and provisions.

INDENTURE, dated as of May 4, 2015, by and between Vringo, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), and Computershare Trust Company, N.A., as trustee (the “Trustee”):

WHEREAS, for its lawful corporate purposes, the Company has duly authorized the execution and delivery of this Indenture to provide for the issuance of debt securities (hereinafter referred to as the “Securities”), in an unlimited aggregate principal amount to be issued from time to time in one or more series as in this Indenture provided, as registered Securities without coupons, to be authenticated by the certificate of the Trustee;

WHEREAS, to provide the terms and conditions upon which the Securities are to be authenticated, issued and delivered, the Company has duly authorized the execution of this Indenture; and

WHEREAS, all things necessary to make this Indenture a valid agreement of the Company, in accordance with its terms, have been done.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and the purchase of the Securities by the holders thereof, it is mutually covenanted and agreed as follows for the equal and ratable benefit of the holders of Securities:

## ARTICLE I

### DEFINITIONS

#### SECTION 1.01 Definitions of Terms.

The terms defined in this Section (except as in this Indenture otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires) for all purposes of this Indenture and of any indenture supplemental hereto shall have the respective meanings specified in this Section and shall include the plural as well as the singular. All other terms used in this Indenture that are defined in the Trust Indenture Act of 1939 (as defined below) or that are by reference in the Trust Indenture Act, or are defined in the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (except as herein otherwise expressly provided or unless the context otherwise requires), shall have the meanings assigned to such terms in said Trust Indenture Act and in said Securities Act of 1933, as amended, as in force at the date of the execution of this instrument.

“Authenticating Agent” means an authenticating agent with respect to all or any of the series of Securities appointed with respect to all or any series of the Securities by the Trustee pursuant to Section 2.10.

“Bankruptcy Law” means Title 11, U.S. Code, or any similar federal or state law for the relief of debtors.

“Board of Directors” means the Board of Directors of the Company or any duly authorized committee of such Board.

“Board Resolution” means a copy of a resolution certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company to have been duly adopted by the Board of Directors and to be in full force and effect on the date of such certification.

“Business Day” means, with respect to any series of Securities, any day other than (i) a Saturday or Sunday or (ii) a day on which Federal or State banking institutions in the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York or in the State in which the Corporate Trust Office may be located from time to time, are authorized or obligated by law, executive order or regulation to close.

“Certificate” means a certificate signed by the principal executive officer, the principal financial officer or the principal accounting officer of the Company. The Certificate need not comply with the provisions of Section 13.07.

“Commission” means the Securities and Exchange Commission.

“Company” means the corporation named as the “Company” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor corporation shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Company” shall mean such successor corporation.

“Corporate Trust Office” means the office of the Trustee at which, at any particular time, its corporate trust business shall be principally administered, which office at the date hereof is located at 8742 Lucent Boulevard, Suite 225, Highlands Ranch, CO 80129, except that whenever a provision herein refers to an office or agency of the Trustee in the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York, such office is located, at the date hereof, at 1290 Avenue of the Americas, 9th Floor, New York, NY 10104.

“Custodian” means any receiver, trustee, assignee, liquidator, or similar official under any Bankruptcy Law.

“Default” means an event which is, or after notice or lapse of time, or both, would constitute an Event of Default.

“Depository” means, with respect to Securities of any series, for which the Company shall determine that such Securities will be issued as a Global Security, The Depository Trust Company, New York, New York, another clearing agency, or any successor registered as a clearing agency under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, which, in each case, shall be designated by the Company pursuant to either Section 2.01 or Section 2.11.

“Event of Default” means, with respect to Securities of a particular series, any event specified in Section 6.01, continued for the period of time, if any, therein designated.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.

“Global Security” means, with respect to any series of Securities, a Security executed by the Company and delivered by the Trustee to the Depository or pursuant to the Depository’s instruction, all in accordance with this Indenture, which shall be registered in the name of the Depository or its nominee.

“Governmental Obligations” means securities that are (i) direct obligations of the United States of America for the payment of which its full faith and credit is pledged or (ii) obligations of a Person controlled or supervised by and acting as an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, the payment of which is unconditionally guaranteed as a full faith and credit obligation by the United States of America that, in either case, are non-callable at the option of the issuer thereof, and shall also include a depository receipt issued by a bank (as defined in Section 3(a)(2) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended) as custodian with respect to any such Governmental Obligation or a specific payment of principal of or interest on any such Governmental Obligation held by such custodian for the account of the holder of such depository receipt; provided, however, that (except as required by law) such custodian is not authorized to make any deduction from the amount payable to the holder of such depository receipt from any amount received by the custodian in respect of the Governmental Obligation or the specific payment of principal of or interest on the Governmental Obligation evidenced by such depository receipt.

“herein,” “hereof” and “hereunder,” and other words of similar import, refer to this Indenture as a whole and not to any particular Article, Section or other subdivision.

“Indenture” means this instrument as originally executed or as it may from time to time be supplemented or amended by one or more indentures supplemental hereto entered into in accordance with the terms hereof.

“Interest Payment Date,” when used with respect to any installment of interest on a Security of a particular series, means the date specified in such Security or in a Board Resolution or in an indenture supplemental hereto with respect to such series as the fixed date on which an installment of interest with respect to Securities of that series is due and payable.

“Officers’ Certificate” means a certificate signed by the President, Chief Executive Officer or a Vice President and by the Chief Financial Officer, the Treasurer or an Assistant Treasurer or the Controller or an Assistant Controller or the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company that is delivered to the Trustee in accordance with the terms hereof. An Officers’ Certificate shall include the statements provided for in Section 13.07, if and to the extent required by the provisions thereof.

“Opinion of Counsel” means a written opinion of counsel, who may be counsel to the Company (and may include directors or employees of the Company) and which counsel and which opinion is acceptable to the Trustee which acceptance shall not be unreasonably withheld.

“Outstanding”, when used with reference to Securities of any series, means, subject to the provisions of Section 8.04, as of any particular time, all Securities of that series theretofore authenticated and delivered by the Trustee under this Indenture, except (a) Securities theretofore canceled by the Trustee or any paying agent, or delivered to the Trustee or any paying agent for cancellation or that have previously been canceled; (b) Securities or portions thereof for the payment or redemption of which moneys or Governmental Obligations in the necessary amount shall have been deposited in trust with the Trustee or with any paying agent (other than the Company) or shall have been set aside and segregated in trust by the Company (if the Company shall act as its own paying agent); provided, however, that if such Securities or portions of such Securities are to be redeemed prior to the maturity thereof, notice of such redemption shall have been given as in Article III provided, or provision satisfactory to the Trustee shall have been made for giving such notice; and (c) Securities in lieu of or in substitution for which other Securities shall have been authenticated and delivered pursuant to the terms of Section 2.07.

“Person” means any individual, corporation, limited liability company, partnership, joint-venture, association, joint-stock company, trust, estate, unincorporated organization or government or any agency or political subdivision thereof or any other entity and any successors thereto.

“Predecessor Security” of any particular Security means every previous Security evidencing all or a portion of the same debt as that evidenced by such particular Security; and, for the purposes of this definition, any Security authenticated and delivered under Section 2.07 in lieu of a mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be deemed to evidence the same debt as the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security.

“Responsible Officer,” when used with respect to the Trustee, means any officer of the Trustee (solely in its capacity as Trustee and solely those officers who are engaged in the corporate trust business of the Trustee), including any vice president, assistant vice president, secretary, assistant secretary, the treasurer, any assistant treasurer, the managing director or any other officer of the Trustee customarily performing functions similar to those performed by any of the above designated officers and also means, with respect to a particular corporate trust matter, any other officer to whom such matter is referred because of such officer’s knowledge of and familiarity with the particular subject.

“Securities” means the debt Securities authenticated and delivered under this Indenture.

“Security Register” has the meaning specified in Section 2.05(b).

“Security Registrar” has the meaning specified in Section 2.05(b).

“Securityholder,” “holder of Securities,” “registered holder,” or other similar term, means the Person or Persons in whose name or names a particular Security shall be registered in the Security Register.

“Subsidiary” means, with respect to any Person, (i) any corporation at least a majority of whose outstanding Voting Stock shall at the time be owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person or by one or more of its Subsidiaries or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries, (ii) any general partnership, joint venture or similar entity, at least a majority of whose outstanding partnership or similar interests shall at the time be owned by such Person, or by one or more of its Subsidiaries, or by such Person and one or more of its Subsidiaries and (iii) any limited partnership of which such Person or any of its Subsidiaries is a general partner.

“Trustee” means the Person named as the “Trustee” in the first paragraph of this instrument until a successor Trustee shall have become such pursuant to the applicable provisions of this Indenture, and thereafter “Trustee” shall mean such successor Trustee. The term “Trustee” as used with respect to a particular series of the Securities shall mean the trustee with respect to that series.

“Trust Indenture Act” means the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as amended, subject to the provisions of Sections 9.01, 9.02, and 10.01, and as in effect at the date of execution of this instrument; provided, however, that in the event the Trust Indenture Act is amended after such date, Trust Indenture Act means, to the extent required by such amendment, the Trust Indenture Act of 1939, as so amended, or any successor statute.

“Voting Stock,” as applied to any Person, means shares, interests, participations or other equivalents in the equity interest (however designated) in such Person having ordinary voting power for the election of a majority of the directors (or the equivalent) of such Person, other than shares, interests, participations or other equivalents having such power only by reason of the occurrence of a contingency.

ARTICLE II

ISSUE, DESCRIPTION, TERMS, EXECUTION,  
REGISTRATION AND EXCHANGE OF SECURITIES

SECTION 2.01 Designation and Terms of Securities.

- (a) The aggregate principal amount of Securities that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture is unlimited. The Securities may be issued in one or more series up to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of that series from time to time authorized by or pursuant to a Board Resolution of the Company or pursuant to one or more indentures supplemental hereto. Prior to the initial issuance of Securities of a given series, there shall be established in or pursuant to a Board Resolution of the Company, and set forth in an Officers' Certificate of the Company, or established in one or more indentures supplemental hereto:
- (1) the title of the Security of the series (which shall distinguish the Securities of the series from all other Securities);
  - (2) the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series initially to be issued and any limit upon the aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series that may be authenticated and delivered under this Indenture (except for Securities authenticated and delivered upon registration of transfer of, or in exchange for, or in lieu of, other Securities of that series);
  - (3) the currency or units based on or relating to currencies in which debt securities of such series are denominated and the currency or units in which principal or interest or both will or may be payable;
  - (4) the date or dates on which the principal of the Securities of the series is payable and the place(s) of payment;
  - (5) the rate or rates at which the Securities of the series shall bear interest or the manner of calculation of such rate or rates, if any;
  - (6) the date or dates from which such interest shall accrue, the Interest Payment Dates on which such interest will be payable or the manner of determination of such Interest Payment Dates, the place(s) of payment, and the record date for the determination of holders to whom interest is payable on any such Interest Payment Dates or the method for determining such dates;
  - (7) the right, if any, to extend the interest payment periods or to defer the payment of interest and the duration of such extension;
  - (8) the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which and the terms and conditions upon which, Securities of the series may be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the option of the Company;
  - (9) the obligation, if any, of the Company to redeem or purchase Securities of the series pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous provisions (including payments made in cash in satisfaction of future sinking fund obligations) or at the option of a holder thereof and the period or periods within which, the price or prices at which, and the terms and conditions upon which, Securities of the series shall be redeemed or purchased, in whole or in part, pursuant to such obligation;

- (10) whether or not the debt securities will be secured or unsecured, and the terms of any secured debt;
- (11) the form of the Securities of the series including the form of the Certificate of Authentication for such series;
- (12) if other than denominations of one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof, the denominations in which the Securities of the series shall be issuable;
- (13) any and all other terms with respect to such series (which terms shall not be inconsistent with the terms of this Indenture, as amended by any supplemental indenture) including any terms which may be required by or advisable under United States laws or regulations or advisable in connection with the marketing of Securities of that series;
- (14) whether the Securities are issuable as a Global Security and, in such case, the identity of the Depository for such series;
- (15) whether the Securities will be convertible into shares of common stock or other securities of the Company and, if so, the terms and conditions upon which such Securities will be so convertible, including the conversion price and the conversion period;
- (16) if other than the principal amount thereof, the portion of the principal amount of Securities of the series which shall be payable upon declaration of acceleration of the maturity thereof pursuant to Section 6.01; and
- (17) any additional or different Events of Default or restrictive covenants provided for with respect to the Securities of the series.

All Securities of any one series shall be substantially identical except as to denomination and except as may otherwise be provided in or pursuant to any such Board Resolution or in any indentures supplemental hereto.

If any of the terms of the series are established by action taken pursuant to a Board Resolution of the Company, a copy of an appropriate record of such action shall be certified by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Company and delivered to the Trustee at or prior to the delivery of the Officers' Certificate of the Company setting forth the terms of the series.

Securities of any particular series may be issued at various times, with different dates on which the principal or any installment of principal is payable, with different rates of interest, if any, or different methods by which rates of interest may be determined, with different dates on which such interest may be payable and with different redemption dates.

#### SECTION 2.02 Form of Securities and Trustee's Certificate.

The Securities of any series and the Trustee's certificate of authentication to be borne by such Securities shall be substantially of the tenor and purport as set forth in one or more indentures supplemental hereto or as provided in a Board Resolution of the Company and as set forth in an Officers' Certificate of the Company and the and may have such letters, numbers or other marks of identification or designation and such legends or endorsements printed, lithographed or engraved thereon as the Company may deem appropriate (but which do not affect the rights, duties or immunities of the Trustee) and as are not inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture, or as may be required to comply with any law or with any rule or regulation made pursuant thereto or with any rule or regulation of any stock exchange on which Securities of that series may be listed, or to conform to usage.



SECTION 2.03 Denominations: Provisions for Payment.

The Securities shall be issuable as registered Securities and in the denominations of one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof, subject to Section 2.01(a)(12). The Securities of a particular series shall bear interest payable on the dates and at the rate specified with respect to that series. The principal of and the interest on the Securities of any series, as well as any premium thereon in case of redemption thereof prior to maturity, shall be payable in the coin or currency of the United States of America that at the time is legal tender for public and private debt, at the office or agency of the Company maintained for that purpose in the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication. Interest on the Securities shall be computed on the basis of a 360-day year composed of twelve 30-day months.

The interest installment on any Security that is payable, and is punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of that series shall be paid to the Person in whose name said Security (or one or more Predecessor Securities) is registered at the close of business on the regular record date for such interest installment. In the event that any Security of a particular series or portion thereof is called for redemption and the redemption date is subsequent to a regular record date with respect to any Interest Payment Date and prior to such

Interest Payment Date, interest on such Security will be paid upon presentation and surrender of such Security as provided in Section 3.03.

Any interest on any Security that is payable, but is not punctually paid or duly provided for, on any Interest Payment Date for Securities of the same series (herein called "Defaulted Interest") shall forthwith cease to be payable to the registered holder on the relevant regular record date by virtue of having been such holder; and such Defaulted Interest shall be paid by the Company, at its election, as provided in clause (1) or clause (2) below:

- (1) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on Securities to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered at the close of business on a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest, which shall be fixed in the following manner: the Company shall notify the Trustee in writing of the amount of Defaulted Interest proposed to be paid on each such Security and the date of the proposed payment, and at the same time the Company shall deposit with the Trustee an amount of money equal to the aggregate amount proposed to be paid in respect of such Defaulted Interest or shall make arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for such deposit prior to the date of the proposed payment, such money when deposited to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such Defaulted Interest as in this clause provided. Thereupon the Trustee shall fix a special record date for the payment of such Defaulted Interest which shall not be more than 15 nor less than 10 days prior to the date of the proposed payment and not less than 10 days after the receipt by the Trustee of the notice of the proposed payment. The Trustee shall promptly notify the Company of such special record date and, in the name and at the expense of the Company, shall cause notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor to be mailed, first class postage prepaid, to each Securityholder at his or her address as it appears in the Security Register, not less than 10 days prior to such special record date. Notice of the proposed payment of such Defaulted Interest and the special record date therefor having been mailed as aforesaid, such Defaulted Interest shall be paid to the Persons in whose names such Securities (or their respective Predecessor Securities) are registered on such special record date.
- (2) The Company may make payment of any Defaulted Interest on any Securities in any other lawful manner not inconsistent with the requirements of any securities exchange on which such Securities may be listed, and upon such notice as may be required by such exchange, if, after notice given by the Company to the Trustee of the proposed payment pursuant to this clause, such manner of payment shall be deemed practicable by the Trustee.

Unless otherwise set forth in a Board Resolution of the Company or one or more indentures supplemental hereto establishing the terms of any series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof, the term “regular record date” as used in this Section with respect to a series of Securities with respect to any Interest Payment Date for such series shall mean either the fifteenth day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the first day of a month, or the last day of the month immediately preceding the month in which an Interest Payment Date established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof shall occur, if such Interest Payment Date is the fifteenth day of a month, whether or not such date is a Business Day.

Subject to the foregoing provisions of this Section, each Security of a series delivered under this Indenture upon transfer of or in exchange for or in lieu of any other Security of such series shall carry the rights to interest accrued and unpaid, and to accrue, that were carried by such other Security.

#### SECTION 2.04 Execution and Authentications.

The Securities shall be signed on behalf of the Company by its President, or one of its Vice Presidents, or its Treasurer, or one of its Assistant Treasurers, or its Secretary, or one of its Assistant Secretaries, under its corporate seal attested by its Secretary or one of its Assistant Secretaries. Signatures may be in the form of a manual or facsimile signature. The Company may use the facsimile signature of any Person who shall have been a President or Vice President thereof, or of any Person who shall have been a Treasurer or Assistant Treasurer thereof, or of any Person who shall have been a Secretary or Assistant Secretary thereof, notwithstanding the fact that at the time the Securities shall be authenticated and delivered or disposed of such Person shall have ceased to be the President or a Vice President, the Treasurer or an Assistant Treasurer or the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, of the Company. The seal of the Company may be in the form of a facsimile of such seal and may be impressed, affixed, imprinted or otherwise reproduced on the Securities. The Securities may contain such notations, legends or endorsements required by law, stock exchange rule or usage. Each Security shall be dated the date of its authentication.

A Security shall not be valid or obligatory for any purpose and shall not be entitled to any benefit under this Indenture, in each case, until authenticated with a certificate of authentication manually signed by an authorized signatory of the Trustee, or by an Authenticating Agent. Such certificate shall be conclusive evidence, and the only evidence, that the Security so authenticated has been duly authenticated and delivered hereunder and that the Security is entitled to the benefits of this Indenture. At any time and from time to time after the execution and delivery of this Indenture, the Company may deliver Securities of any series executed by the Company to the Trustee for authentication, together with a written order of the Company for the authentication and delivery of such Securities, signed by its President or any Vice President and its Secretary or any Assistant Secretary, and the Trustee in accordance with such written order shall authenticate and deliver such Securities.

In authenticating such Securities and accepting the additional responsibilities under this Indenture in relation to such Securities, the Trustee shall be entitled to receive, and (subject to Section 7.01) shall be fully protected in relying upon, an Opinion of Counsel stating that the form and terms thereof have been established in conformity with the provisions of this Indenture.

The Trustee shall not be required to authenticate such Securities if the issue of such Securities pursuant to this Indenture will affect the Trustee’s own rights, duties or immunities under the Securities and this Indenture or otherwise in a manner that is not reasonably acceptable to the Trustee.

#### SECTION 2.05 Registration of Transfer and Exchange.

- (a) Securities of any series may be exchanged upon presentation thereof at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose in the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York, for other Securities of such series of authorized denominations, and for a like aggregate principal amount, upon payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, all as provided in this Section. In respect of any Securities so surrendered for exchange, the Company shall execute, the Trustee, on receipt of a written order (in accordance with Section 2.04 above) shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange therefor the Security or Securities of the same series that the Securityholder making the exchange shall be entitled to receive, bearing numbers not contemporaneously outstanding.

- (b) The Company shall keep, or cause to be kept, at its office or agency designated for such purpose in the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York, or such other location designated by the Company a register or registers (herein referred to as the “Security Register”) in which, subject to such reasonable regulations as it may prescribe, the Company shall register the Securities and the transfers of Securities as in this Article provided and which at all reasonable times shall be open for inspection by the Trustee. The registrar for the purpose of registering Securities and transfer of Securities as herein provided shall be appointed as authorized by Board Resolution (the “Security Registrar”).

Upon surrender for transfer of any Security at the office or agency of the Company designated for such purpose, the Company shall execute, the Trustee shall authenticate and such office or agency shall deliver in the name of the transferee or transferees a new Security or Securities of the same series as the Security presented for a like aggregate principal amount.

All Securities presented or surrendered for exchange or registration of transfer, as provided in this Section, shall be accompanied (if so required by the Company or the Security Registrar) by a written instrument or instruments of transfer, in form satisfactory to the Company or the Security Registrar (including any signature guarantees, if required), duly executed by the registered holder or by such holder’s duly authorized attorney in writing.

- (c) No service charge shall be made for any exchange or registration of transfer of Securities, or issue of new Securities in case of partial redemption of any series, but the Company may require payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge in relation thereto, other than exchanges pursuant to Section 2.06, Section 3.03(b) and Section 9.04 not involving any transfer.
- (d) The Company shall not be required (i) to issue, exchange or register the transfer of any Securities during a period beginning at the opening of business 15 days before the day of the mailing of a notice of redemption of less than all the Outstanding Securities of the same series and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, nor (ii) to register the transfer of or exchange any Securities of any series or portions thereof called for redemption. The provisions of this Section 2.05 are, with respect to any Global Security, subject to Section 2.11 hereof.

#### SECTION 2.06 Temporary Securities.

Pending the preparation of definitive Securities of any series, the Company may execute, and the Trustee shall authenticate and deliver, temporary Securities (printed, lithographed or typewritten) of any authorized denomination. Such temporary Securities shall be substantially in the form of the definitive Securities in lieu of which they are issued, but with such omissions, insertions and variations as may be appropriate for temporary Securities, all as may be determined by the Company. Every temporary Security of any series shall be executed by the Company and be authenticated by the Trustee upon the same conditions and in substantially the same manner, and with like effect, as the definitive Securities of such series. Without unnecessary delay the Company will execute and will furnish definitive Securities of such series and thereupon any or all temporary Securities of such series may be surrendered in exchange therefor (without charge to the holders), at the office or agency of the Company designated for the purpose in the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York, and the Trustee shall authenticate, on receipt of a written order (in accordance with Section 2.04 above) and such office or agency shall deliver in exchange for such temporary Securities an equal aggregate principal amount of definitive Securities of such series, unless the Company advises the Trustee to the effect that definitive Securities need not be executed and furnished until further notice from the Company. Until so exchanged, the temporary Securities of such series shall be entitled to the same benefits under this Indenture as definitive Securities of such series authenticated and delivered hereunder.

SECTION 2.07 Mutilated, Destroyed, Lost or Stolen Securities.

In case any temporary or definitive Security shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company (subject to the next succeeding sentence) shall execute, and upon the Company's request the Trustee (subject as aforesaid and upon receipt of a written order (in accordance with Section 2.04 above)) shall authenticate and deliver, a new Security of the same series, bearing a number not contemporaneously outstanding, in exchange and substitution for the mutilated Security, or in lieu of and in substitution for the Security so destroyed, lost or stolen. In every case the applicant for a substituted Security shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as may be required by them to save each of them harmless, and, in every case of destruction, loss or theft, the applicant shall also furnish to the Company and the Trustee evidence to their satisfaction of the destruction, loss or theft of the applicant's Security and of the ownership thereof. The Trustee may authenticate any such substituted Security and deliver the same upon the written request or authorization of any officer of the Company. Upon the issuance of any substituted Security, the Company may require the payment of a sum sufficient to cover any tax or other governmental charge that may be imposed in relation thereto and any other expenses (including the fees and expenses of the Trustee) connected therewith. In case any Security that has matured or is about to mature shall become mutilated or be destroyed, lost or stolen, the Company may, instead of issuing a substitute Security, pay or authorize the payment of the same (without surrender thereof except in the case of a mutilated Security) if the applicant for such payment shall furnish to the Company and the Trustee such security or indemnity as they may require to save them harmless, and, in case of destruction, loss or theft, evidence to the satisfaction of the Company and the Trustee of the destruction, loss or theft of such Security and of the ownership thereof.

Every replacement Security issued pursuant to the provisions of this Section shall constitute an additional contractual obligation of the Company whether or not the mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Security shall be found at any time, or be enforceable by anyone, and shall be entitled to all the benefits of this Indenture equally and proportionately with any and all other Securities of the same series duly issued hereunder. All Securities shall be held and owned upon the express condition that the foregoing provisions are exclusive with respect to the replacement or payment of mutilated, destroyed, lost or stolen Securities, and shall preclude (to the extent lawful) any and all other rights or remedies, notwithstanding any law or statute existing or hereafter enacted to the contrary with respect to the replacement or payment of negotiable instruments or other securities without their surrender.

SECTION 2.08 Cancellation.

All Securities surrendered for the purpose of payment, redemption, exchange or registration of transfer shall, if surrendered to the Company or any paying agent, be delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, or, if surrendered to the Trustee, shall be cancelled by it, and no Securities shall be issued in lieu thereof except as expressly required or permitted by any of the provisions of this Indenture. On request of the Company at the time of such surrender, the Trustee shall deliver to the Company canceled Securities held by the Trustee. In the absence of such request the Trustee may dispose of canceled Securities in accordance with its standard procedures and deliver a certificate of disposition to the Company. If the Company shall otherwise acquire any of the Securities, however, such acquisition shall not operate as a redemption or satisfaction of the indebtedness represented by such Securities unless and until the same are delivered to the Trustee for cancellation.

SECTION 2.09 Benefits of Indenture.

Nothing in this Indenture or in the Securities, express or implied, shall give or be construed to give to any Person, other than the parties hereto and the holders of the Securities any legal or equitable right, remedy or claim under or in respect of this Indenture, or under any covenant, condition or provision herein contained; all such covenants, conditions and provisions being for the sole benefit of the parties hereto and of the holders of the Securities.

SECTION 2.10 Authenticating Agent.

So long as any of the Securities of any series remain Outstanding there may be an Authenticating Agent for any or all such series of Securities which the Trustee shall have the right to appoint. Said Authenticating Agent shall be authorized to act on behalf of the Trustee to authenticate Securities of such series issued upon exchange, transfer or partial redemption thereof, and Securities so authenticated shall be entitled to the benefits of this Indenture and shall be valid and obligatory for all purposes as if authenticated by the Trustee hereunder. All references in this Indenture to the authentication of Securities by the Trustee shall be deemed to include authentication by an Authenticating Agent for such series. Each Authenticating Agent shall be acceptable to the Company and shall be a Person that has a combined capital and surplus, as most recently reported or determined by it, sufficient under the laws of any jurisdiction under which it is organized or in which it is doing business to conduct a corporate trust business, and that is otherwise authorized under such laws to conduct such business and is subject to supervision or examination by Federal or State authorities. If at any time any Authenticating Agent shall cease to be eligible in accordance with these provisions, it shall resign immediately.

Any Authenticating Agent may at any time resign by giving written notice of resignation to the Trustee and to the Company. The Trustee may at any time (and upon request by the Company shall) terminate the agency of any Authenticating Agent by giving written notice of termination to such Authenticating Agent and to the Company. Upon resignation, termination or cessation of eligibility of any Authenticating Agent, the Trustee may appoint an eligible successor Authenticating Agent acceptable to the Company. Any successor Authenticating Agent, upon acceptance of its appointment hereunder, shall become vested with all the rights, powers and duties of its predecessor hereunder as if originally named as an Authenticating Agent pursuant hereto.

#### SECTION 2.11 Global Securities

- (a) If the Company shall establish pursuant to Section 2.01 that some or all of the Securities of a particular series are to be issued as a Global Security, then the Company shall execute and the Trustee shall, in accordance with Section 2.04, authenticate and deliver, a Global Security that (i) shall represent, and shall be denominated in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of, the Outstanding Securities of such series which are to be issued as a Global Security, (ii) shall be registered in the name of the Depositary or its nominee, (iii) shall be delivered by the Trustee to the Depositary or pursuant to the Depositary's instruction and (iv) shall bear a legend substantially to the following effect: "Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.11 of the Indenture, this Security may be transferred, in whole but not in part, only to another nominee of the Depositary or to a successor Depositary or to a nominee of such successor Depositary," as well as any other legend required by the Depositary.
- (b) Notwithstanding the provisions of Section 2.05, the Global Security of a series may be transferred, in whole but not in part and in the manner provided in Section 2.05, only to another nominee of the Depositary for such series, or to a successor Depositary for such series selected or approved by the Company or to a nominee of such successor Depositary.
- (c) If at any time the Depositary for a series of the Securities notifies the Company that it is unwilling or unable to continue as Depositary for such series or if at any time the Depositary for such series shall no longer be registered or in good standing under the Exchange Act, or other applicable statute or regulation, and a successor Depositary for such series is not appointed by the Company within 90 days after the Company receives such notice or becomes aware of such condition, as the case may be, this Section 2.11 shall no longer be applicable to the Securities of such series and the Company will execute, and subject to Section 2.05, the Trustee, upon receipt of a written order (in accordance with Section 2.04 above) will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. In addition, the Company may at any time determine that the Securities of any series shall no longer be represented by a Global Security and that the provisions of this Section 2.11 shall no longer apply to the Securities of such series. In such event the Company will execute and subject to Section 2.05, the Trustee, upon receipt of an Officers' Certificate evidencing such determination by the Company and the written order (in accordance with Section 2.04 above), will authenticate and deliver the Securities of such series in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, and in an aggregate principal amount equal to the principal amount of the Global Security of such series in exchange for such Global Security. Upon the exchange of the Global Security for such Securities in definitive registered form without coupons, in authorized denominations, the Global Security shall be canceled by the Trustee. Such Securities in definitive registered form issued in exchange for the Global Security pursuant to this Section 2.11(c) shall be registered in such names and in such authorized denominations as the Depositary, pursuant to instructions from its direct or indirect participants or otherwise, shall instruct the Trustee. The Trustee shall deliver such Securities to the Depositary for delivery to the Persons in whose names such Securities are so registered.

ARTICLE III

REDEMPTION OF SECURITIES AND SINKING  
FUND PROVISIONS

SECTION 3.01 Redemption.

The Company may redeem the Securities of any series issued hereunder on and after the dates and in accordance with the terms established for such series pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof.

SECTION 3.02 Notice of Redemption.

- (a) In case the Company shall desire to exercise such right to redeem all or, as the case may be, a portion of the Securities of any series in accordance with the right reserved so to do, the Company shall, or shall cause the Trustee (if given the form of notice) to, give notice of such redemption to holders of the Securities of such series to be redeemed by mailing, first class postage prepaid, a notice of such redemption not less than 30 days and not more than 90 days before the date fixed for redemption of that series to such holders at their last addresses as they shall appear upon the Security Register unless a shorter period is specified in the Securities to be redeemed. Any notice that is mailed in the manner herein provided shall be conclusively presumed to have been duly given, whether or not the registered holder receives the notice. In any case, failure duly to give such notice to the holder of any Security of any series designated for redemption in whole or in part, or any defect in the notice, shall not affect the validity of the proceedings for the redemption of any other Securities of such series or any other series. In the case of any redemption of Securities prior to the expiration of any restriction on such redemption provided in the terms of such Securities or elsewhere in this Indenture, the Company shall furnish the Trustee with an Officers' Certificate evidencing compliance with any such restriction.

Each such notice of redemption shall be prepared by the Company and shall specify the date fixed for redemption and the redemption price at which Securities of that series are to be redeemed, and shall state that payment of the redemption price of such Securities to be redeemed will be made at the office or agency of the Company in the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York, upon presentation and surrender of such Securities, that interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption will be paid as specified in said notice, that from and after said date interest will cease to accrue and that the redemption is for a sinking fund, if such is the case. If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the notice to the holders of Securities of that series to be redeemed in whole or in part shall specify the particular Securities to be so redeemed. In case any Security is to be redeemed in part only, the notice that relates to such Security shall state the portion of the principal amount thereof to be redeemed, and shall state that on and after the redemption date, upon surrender of such Security, a new Security or Securities of such series in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion thereof will be issued.

- (b) If less than all the Securities of a series are to be redeemed, the Company shall give the Trustee at least 30 days' notice in advance of the date fixed for redemption as to the aggregate principal amount of Securities of the series to be redeemed, and thereupon the Trustee shall select, by lot or in such other manner as it shall deem appropriate and fair in its discretion and that may provide for the selection of a portion or portions (equal to one thousand U.S. dollars (\$1,000) or any integral multiple thereof) of the principal amount of such Securities of a denomination larger than \$1,000, the Securities to be redeemed and shall thereafter promptly notify the Company in writing of the numbers of the Securities to be redeemed, in whole or in part. The Company may, if and whenever it shall so elect, by delivery of instructions signed on its behalf by its President or any Vice President, instruct the Trustee or any paying agent to call all or any part of the Securities of a particular series for redemption and to give notice of redemption in the manner set forth in this Section, such notice to be in the name of the Company or its own name as the Trustee or such paying agent may deem advisable. In any case in which notice of redemption is to be given by the

Trustee or any such paying agent, the Company shall deliver or cause to be delivered to, or permit to remain with, the Trustee or such paying agent, as the case may be, such Security Register, transfer books or other records, or suitable copies or extracts therefrom, sufficient to enable the Trustee or such paying agent to give any notice by mail that may be required under the provisions of this Section. Neither the Trustee nor any paying agent shall have any obligation to deliver any notice of redemption hereunder if they have not received from the Company the form of notice to be delivered.

#### SECTION 3.03 Payment Upon Redemption.

- (a) If the giving of notice of redemption shall have been completed as above provided, the Securities or portions of Securities of the series to be redeemed specified in such notice shall become due and payable on the date and at the place stated in such notice at the applicable redemption price, together with interest accrued to the date fixed for redemption and interest on such Securities or portions of Securities shall cease to accrue on and after the date fixed for redemption, unless the Company shall default in the payment of such redemption price and accrued interest with respect to any such Security or portion thereof. On presentation and surrender of such Securities on or after the date fixed for redemption at the place of payment specified in the notice, said Securities shall be paid and redeemed at the applicable redemption price for such series, together with interest accrued thereon to the date fixed for redemption (but if the date fixed for redemption is an interest payment date, the interest installment payable on such date shall be payable to the registered holder at the close of business on the applicable record date pursuant to Section 2.03).
- (b) Upon presentation of any Security of such series that is to be redeemed in part only, the Company shall execute and the Trustee on receipt of a written order (in accordance with Section 2.04 above) shall authenticate and the office or agency where the Security is presented shall deliver to the holder thereof, at the expense of the Company, a new Security of the same series of authorized denominations in principal amount equal to the unredeemed portion of the Security so presented.

#### SECTION 3.04 Sinking Fund.

The provisions of Sections 3.04, 3.05 and 3.06 shall be applicable to any sinking fund for the retirement of Securities of a series, except as otherwise specified as contemplated by Section 2.01 for Securities of such series.

The minimum amount of any sinking fund payment provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as a "mandatory sinking fund payment," and any payment in excess of such minimum amount provided for by the terms of Securities of any series is herein referred to as an "optional sinking fund payment." If provided for by the terms of Securities of any series, the cash amount of any sinking fund payment may be subject to reduction as provided in Section 3.05. Each sinking fund payment shall be applied to the redemption of Securities of any series as provided for by the terms of Securities of such series.

#### SECTION 3.05 Satisfaction of Sinking Fund Payments with Securities.

The Company (i) may deliver Outstanding Securities of a series (other than any Securities previously called for redemption) and (ii) may apply as a credit Securities of a series that have been redeemed either at the election of the Company pursuant to the terms of such Securities or through the application of permitted optional sinking fund payments pursuant to the terms of such Securities, in each case in satisfaction of all or any part of any sinking fund payment with respect to the Securities of such series required to be made pursuant to the terms of such Securities as provided for by the terms of such series, provided that such Securities have not been previously so credited. Such Securities shall be received and credited for such purpose by the Trustee at the redemption price specified in such Securities for redemption through operation of the sinking fund and the amount of such sinking fund payment shall be reduced accordingly.

#### SECTION 3.06 Redemption of Securities for Sinking Fund.

Not less than 45 days prior to each sinking fund payment date for any series of Securities, the Company will deliver to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate specifying the amount of the next ensuing sinking fund payment for that series pursuant to the terms of the series, the portion thereof, if any, that is to be satisfied by delivering and crediting Securities of that series pursuant to Section 3.05 and the basis for such credit and will, together with such Officers' Certificate, deliver to the Trustee any Securities to be so delivered. Not less than 30 days before each such sinking fund payment date the Trustee shall select the Securities to be redeemed upon such sinking fund payment date in the manner specified in Section 3.02 and cause notice of the redemption thereof to be given in the name of and at the expense of the Company in the manner provided in Section 3.02. Such notice having been duly given, the redemption of such Securities shall be made upon the terms and in the manner stated in Section 3.03.

ARTICLE IV

COVENANTS

SECTION 4.01 Payment of Principal, Premium and Interest.

The Company will duly and punctually pay or cause to be paid the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on the Securities of that series at the time and place and in the manner provided herein and established with respect to such Securities.

SECTION 4.02 Maintenance of Office or Agency.

So long as any series of the Securities remain Outstanding, the Company agrees to maintain an office or agency in the Borough of Manhattan, the City and State of New York, with respect to each such series and at such other location or locations as may be designated as provided in this Section 4.02, where (i) Securities of that series may be presented or surrendered for payment, (ii) Securities of that series may be presented as herein above authorized for registration of transfer and exchange, and (iii) notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Securities of that series and this Indenture may be given or served, such designation to continue with respect to such office or agency until the Company shall, by written notice signed by its President or a Vice President and delivered to the trustee, designate some other office or agency for such purposes or any of them. If at any time the Company shall fail to maintain any such required office or agency or shall fail to furnish the Trustee with the address thereof, such presentations, notices and demands may be made or served at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee, and the Company hereby appoints the Trustee as its agent to receive all such presentations, notices and demands.

SECTION 4.03 Paying Agents.

- (a) If the Company shall appoint one or more paying agents for all or any series of the Securities, other than the Trustee, the Company will cause each such paying agent to execute and deliver to the Trustee an instrument in which such agent shall agree with the Trustee, subject to the provisions of this Section:
- (1) that it will hold all sums held by it as such agent for the payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series (whether such sums have been paid to it by the Company or by any other obligor of such Securities) in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto;
  - (2) that it will give the Trustee notice of any failure by the Company (or by any other obligor of such Securities) to make any payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on the Securities of that series when the same shall be due and payable;
  - (3) that it will, at any time during the continuance of any failure referred to in the preceding paragraph (a)(2) above, upon the written request of the Trustee, forthwith pay to the Trustee all sums so held in trust by such paying agent; and
  - (4) that it will perform all other duties of paying agent as set forth in this Indenture.



- (b) If the Company shall act as its own paying agent with respect to any series of the Securities, it will on or before each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on Securities of that series, set aside, segregate and hold in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled thereto a sum sufficient with monies held by all other paying agents to pay such principal (and premium, if any) or interest so becoming due on Securities of that series until such sums shall be paid to such Persons or otherwise disposed of as herein provided and will promptly notify the Trustee of such action, or any failure (by it or any other obligor on such Securities) to take such action. Whenever the Company shall have one or more paying agents for any series of Securities, it will, prior to each due date of the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on any Securities of that series, deposit with the paying agent a sum sufficient to pay the principal (an premium, if any) or interest so becoming due, such sum to be held in trust for the benefit of the Persons entitled to such principal, premium or interest, and (unless such paying agent is the Trustee) the Company will promptly notify the Trustee of this action or failure so to act.
- (c) Notwithstanding anything in this Section to the contrary, (i) the agreement to hold sums in trust as provided in this Section is subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, and (ii) the Company may at any time, for the purpose of obtaining the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture or for any other purpose, pay, or direct any paying agent to pay, to the Trustee all sums held in trust by the Company or such paying agent, such sums to be held by the Trustee upon the same terms and conditions as those upon which such sums were held by the Company or such paying agent; and, upon such payment by any paying agent to the Trustee, such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such money.

**SECTION 4.04** Appointment to Fill Vacancy in Office of Trustee.

The Company, whenever necessary to avoid or fill a vacancy in the office of Trustee, will appoint, in the manner provided in Section 7.10, a Trustee, so that there shall at all times be a Trustee hereunder.

**SECTION 4.05** Compliance with Consolidation Provisions.

The Company will not, while any of the Securities remain Outstanding, consolidate with or merge into any other Person, in either case where the Company is not the survivor of such transaction, or sell or convey all or substantially all of its property to any other company unless the provisions of Article X hereof are complied with.

**ARTICLE V**

**SECURITYHOLDERS' LISTS AND REPORTS  
BY THE COMPANY AND THE TRUSTEE**

**SECTION 5.01** Company to Furnish Trustee Names and Addresses of Securityholders.

If the Company is not the Security Register, the Company will furnish or use reasonable efforts to cause to be furnished to the Trustee (a) on each regular record date (as defined in Section 2.03) a list, in such form as the Trustee may reasonably require, of the names and addresses of the holders of each series of Securities as of such regular record date, provided that the Company shall not be obligated to furnish or cause to furnish such list at any time that the list shall not differ in any respect from the most recent list furnished to the Trustee by the Company and (b) at such other times as the Trustee may request in writing within 30 days after the receipt by the Company of any such request, a list of similar form and content as of a date not more than 15 days prior to the time such list is furnished; provided, however, that, in either case, no such list need be furnished for any series for which the Trustee shall be the Security Registrar.

**SECTION 5.02** Preservation Of Information; Communications With Securityholders.

- (a) The Trustee shall preserve, in as current a form as is reasonably practicable, all information as to the names and addresses of the holders of Securities contained in the most recent list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 and as to the names and addresses of holders of Securities received by the Trustee in its capacity as Security Registrar (if acting in such capacity) and shall otherwise comply with Section 312(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.

- (b) The Trustee may destroy any list furnished to it as provided in Section 5.01 upon receipt of a new list so furnished.
- (c) Securityholders may communicate as provided in Section 312(b) of the Trust Indenture Act with other Securityholders with respect to their rights under this Indenture or under the Securities.

SECTION 5.03      Reports by the Company.

- (a) The Company covenants and agrees to file with the Trustee, within 15 days after the Company is required to file the same with the Commission, copies of the annual reports and of the information, documents and other reports (or copies of such portions of any of the foregoing as the Commission may from time to time by rules and regulations prescribe) that the Company may be required to file with the Commission pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Exchange Act; or, if the Company is not required to file information, documents or reports pursuant to either of such sections, then to file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such of the supplementary and periodic information, documents and reports that may be required pursuant to Section 13 of the Exchange Act, in respect of a security listed and registered on a national securities exchange as may be prescribed from time to time in such rules and regulations; provided, however, the Company shall not be required to deliver to the Trustee any materials for which the Company has sought and received confidential treatment by the Commission. The Company also shall comply with the other provisions of Section 314(a) of the Trust Indenture Act.
- (b) The Company covenants and agrees to file with the Trustee and the Commission, in accordance with the rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission, such additional information, documents and reports with respect to compliance by the Company with the conditions and covenants provided for in this Indenture as may be required from time to time by such rules and regulations.
- (c) The Company covenants and agrees to transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, or reputable over-night delivery service that provides for evidence of receipt, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register, within 30 days after the filing thereof with the Trustee, such summaries of any information, documents and reports required to be filed by the Company pursuant to subsections (a) and (b) of this Section as may be required by rules and regulations prescribed from time to time by the Commission.

SECTION 5.04      Reports by the Trustee.

- (a) The Trustee shall transmit to holders as provided in Section 313 of the Trust Indenture Act such reports concerning the Trustee and its actions under this Indenture as may be required by Section 313 of the Trust Indenture Act at the times and in the manner provided by the Trust Indenture Act.
- (b) A copy of each such report shall, at the time of such transmission to Securityholders, be filed by the Trustee with the Company, with each stock exchange upon which any Securities are listed (if so listed) and, if required by Section 313 of the Trust Indenture Act, also with the Commission. The Company agrees to notify the Trustee when any Securities become listed on any stock exchange.

ARTICLE VI

REMEDIES OF THE TRUSTEE AND SECURITYHOLDERS  
ON EVENT OF DEFAULT

SECTION 6.01 Events of Default.

- (a) Whenever used herein with respect to Securities of a particular series, "Event of Default" means any one or more of the following events that has occurred and is continuing:
- (1) the Company defaults in the payment of any installment of interest upon any of the Securities of that series, as and when the same shall become due and payable, and continuance of such default for a period of 90 days; provided, however, that a valid extension of an interest payment period by the Company in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of interest for this purpose;
  - (2) the Company defaults in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due and payable whether at maturity, upon redemption, by declaration or otherwise, or in any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series; provided, however, that a valid extension of the maturity of such Securities in accordance with the terms of any indenture supplemental hereto shall not constitute a default in the payment of principal or premium, if any;
  - (3) the Company fails to observe or perform any other of its covenants or agreements with respect to that series contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to that series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof (other than a covenant or agreement that has been expressly included in this Indenture solely for the benefit of one or more series of Securities other than such series) for a period of 90 days after the date on which written notice of such failure, requiring the same to be remedied and stating that such notice is a "Notice of Default" hereunder, shall have been given to the Company by the Trustee, by registered or certified mail, or to the Company and the Trustee by the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities of that series at the time Outstanding; (4) the Company pursuant to or within the meaning of any Bankruptcy Law (i) commences a voluntary case, (ii) consents to the entry of an order for relief against it in an involuntary case, (iii) consents to the appointment of a Custodian of it or for all or substantially all of its property or (iv) makes a general assignment for the benefit of its creditors; or (5) a court of competent jurisdiction enters an order under any Bankruptcy Law that (i) is for relief against the Company in an involuntary case, (ii) appoints a Custodian of the Company for all or substantially all of its property, or (iii) orders the liquidation of the Company, and the order or decree remains unstayed and in effect for 90 consecutive days.
- (b) In each and every such case, unless the principal of all the Securities of that series shall have already become due and payable, either the Trustee or the holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder, by notice in writing to the Company (and to the Trustee if given by such Securityholders), may declare the principal (or, if any Securities of that series are discount securities, that portion of the principal amount as may be specified in the terms of that series pursuant to Section 2.01(a)(16)) of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on all the Securities of that series to be due and payable immediately, and upon any such declaration the same shall become and shall be immediately due and payable.

- (c) At any time after the principal of the Securities of that series shall have been so declared due and payable, and before a judgment or decree for the payment of the moneys due shall have been obtained or entered as hereinafter provided, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of that series then Outstanding hereunder (or, by action at a meeting of holders of the Securities of such series in accordance with Section 8.09, the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding represented at such meeting), by written notice to the Company and the Trustee, may rescind and annul such declaration and its consequences if: (i) the Company has paid or deposited with the Trustee a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest upon all the Securities of that series and the principal of (and premium, if any, on) any and all Securities of that series that shall have become due otherwise than by acceleration and (ii) any and all Events of Default under this Indenture with respect to such series, other than the nonpayment of principal of (and premium, if any, on) and accrued and unpaid interest, if any, on Securities of that series that shall have become due solely because of such acceleration, shall have been remedied, cured or waived as provided in Section 6.06. No such rescission and annulment shall extend to or shall affect any subsequent default or impair any right consequent thereon.
- (d) In case the Trustee shall have proceeded to enforce any right with respect to Securities of that series under this Indenture and such proceedings shall have been discontinued or abandoned because of such rescission or annulment or for any other reason or shall have been determined adversely to the Trustee, then and in every such case, subject to any determination in such proceedings, the Company, and the Trustee shall be restored respectively to their former positions and rights hereunder, and all rights, remedies and powers of the Company and the Trustee shall continue as though no such proceedings had been taken.

SECTION 6.02            Collection of Indebtedness and Suits for Enforcement by Trustee.

- (a) The Company covenants that (1) in case it shall default in the payment of any installment of interest on any of the Securities of a series, or any payment required by any sinking or analogous fund established with respect to that series as and when the same shall have become due and payable, and such default shall have continued for a period of 90 Business Days, or (2) in case it shall default in the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any, on) any of the Securities of a series when the same shall have become due and payable, whether upon maturity of the Securities of a series or upon redemption or upon declaration or otherwise, then, upon demand of the Trustee, the Company will pay to the Trustee, for the benefit of the holders of the Securities of that series, the whole amount that then shall have become due and payable on all such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) or interest, or both, as the case may be, with interest upon the overdue principal (and premium, if any) and (to the extent that payment of such interest is enforceable under applicable law) upon overdue installments of interest at the rate per annum expressed in the Securities of that series; and, in addition thereto, such further amount as shall be sufficient to cover the costs and expenses of collection, and the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06.
- (b) If the Company shall fail to pay such amounts forthwith upon such demand, the Trustee, in its own name and as trustee of an express trust, shall be entitled and empowered to institute any action or proceedings at law or in equity for the collection of the sums so due and unpaid, and may prosecute any such action or proceeding to judgment or final decree, and may enforce any such judgment or final decree against the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series and collect the moneys adjudged or decreed to be payable in the manner provided by law out of the property of the Company or other obligor upon the Securities of that series, wherever situated.
- (c) In case of any receivership, insolvency, liquidation, bankruptcy, reorganization, readjustment, arrangement, composition or judicial proceedings affected the Company, or its creditors or property, the Trustee shall have power to intervene in such proceedings and take any action therein that may be permitted by the court and shall (except as may be otherwise provided by law) be entitled to file such proofs of claim and other papers and documents as may be necessary or advisable in order to have the claims of the Trustee and of the holders of Securities of such series allowed for the entire amount due and payable by the Company under this Indenture at the date of institution of such proceedings and for any additional amount that may become due and payable by the Company after such date, and to collect and receive any moneys or other property payable or deliverable on any such claim, and to distribute the same after the deduction of the amount payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06; and any receiver, assignee or trustee in bankruptcy or reorganization is hereby authorized by each of the holders of Securities of such series to make such payments to the Trustee, and, in the event that the Trustee shall consent to the making of such payments directly to such Securityholders, to pay to the Trustee any amount due it under Section 7.06.

- (d) All rights of action and of asserting claims under this Indenture, or under any of the terms established with respect to Securities of that series, may be enforced by the Trustee without the possession of any of such Securities, or the production thereof at any trial or other proceeding relative thereto, and any such suit or proceeding instituted by the Trustee shall be brought in its own name as trustee of an express trust, and any recovery of judgment shall, after provision for payment to the Trustee of any amounts due under Section 7.06, be for the ratable benefit of the holders of the Securities of such series.

In case of an Event of Default hereunder, the Trustee may in its discretion proceed to protect and enforce the rights vested in it by this Indenture by such appropriate judicial proceedings as the Trustee shall deem most effectual to protect and enforce any of such rights, either at law or in equity or in bankruptcy or otherwise, whether for the specific enforcement of any covenant or agreement contained in this Indenture or in aid of the exercise of any power granted in this Indenture, or to enforce any other legal or equitable right vested in the Trustee by this Indenture or by law.

Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to authorize the Trustee to authorize or consent to or accept or adopt on behalf of any Securityholder any plan of reorganization, arrangement, adjustment or composition affecting the Securities of that series or the rights of any holder thereof or to authorize the Trustee to vote in respect of the claim of any Securityholder in any such proceeding.

#### SECTION 6.03 Application of Moneys Collected.

Any moneys collected by the Trustee pursuant to this Article with respect to a particular series of Securities shall be applied in the following order, at the date or dates fixed by the Trustee and, in case of the distribution of such moneys on account of principal (or premium, if any) or interest, upon presentation of the Securities of that series, and notation thereon the payment, if only partially paid, and upon surrender thereof if fully paid:

FIRST: To the payment of costs and expenses of collection and of all amounts payable to the Trustee under Section 7.06; and

SECOND: To the payment of the amounts then due and unpaid upon Securities of such series for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, in respect of which or for the benefit of which such money has been collected, ratably, without preference or priority of any kind, according to the amounts due and payable on such Securities for principal (and premium, if any) and interest, respectively.

#### SECTION 6.04 Limitation on Suits.

No holder of any Security of any series shall have any right by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to institute any suit, action or proceeding in equity or at law upon or under or with respect to this Indenture or for the appointment of a receiver or trustee, or for any other remedy hereunder, unless (i) such holder previously shall have given to the Trustee written notice of an Event of Default and of the continuance thereof with respect to the Securities of such series specifying such Event of Default, as hereinbefore provided; (ii) the holders of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding shall have made written request upon the Trustee to institute such action, suit or proceeding in its own name as trustee hereunder; (iii) such holder or holders shall have offered to the Trustee such reasonable indemnity as it may require against the costs, expenses and liabilities to be incurred therein or thereby; and (iv) the Trustee for 60 days after its receipt of such notice, request and offer of indemnity, shall have failed to institute any such action, suit or proceeding and (v) during such 60 day period, the holders of a majority in principal amount of the Securities of that series (or such amount as shall have acted at a meeting of the holders of Securities of such series pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture) do not give the Trustee a direction inconsistent with the request; provided, however, that no one or more of such holders may use this Indenture to prejudice the rights of another holder or to obtain preference or priority over another holder.

Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary, any other provisions of this Indenture, the right of any holder of any Security to receive payment of the principal of (and premium, if any) and interest on such Security, as therein provided, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security (or in the case of redemption, on the redemption date), or to institute suit for the enforcement of any such payment on or after such respective dates or redemption date, shall not be impaired or affected without the consent of such holder and by accepting a Security hereunder it is expressly understood, intended and covenanted by the taker and holder of every Security of such series with every other such taker and holder and the Trustee, that no one or more holders of Securities of such series shall have any right in any manner whatsoever by virtue or by availing of any provision of this Indenture to affect, disturb or prejudice the rights of the holders of any other of such Securities, or to obtain or seek to obtain priority over or preference to any other such holder, or to enforce any right under this Indenture, except in the manner herein provided and for the equal, ratable and common benefit of all holders of Securities of such series. For the protection and enforcement of the provisions of this Section, each and every Securityholder and the Trustee shall be entitled to such relief as can be given either at law or in equity.

**SECTION 6.05** Rights and Remedies Cumulative; Delay or Omission Not Waiver.

- (a) Except as otherwise provided in Section 2.07, all powers and remedies given by this Article to the Trustee or to the Securityholders shall, to the extent permitted by law, be deemed cumulative and not exclusive of any other powers and remedies available to the Trustee or the holders of the Securities, by judicial proceedings or otherwise, to enforce the performance or observance of the covenants and agreements contained in this Indenture or otherwise established with respect to such Securities.
- (b) No delay or omission of the Trustee or of any holder of any of the Securities to exercise any right or power accruing upon any Event of Default occurring and continuing as aforesaid shall impair any such right or power, or shall be construed to be a waiver of any such default or on acquiescence therein; and, subject to the provisions of Section 6.04, every power and remedy given by this Article or by law to the Trustee or the Securityholders may be exercised from time to time, and as often as shall be deemed expedient, by the Trustee or by the Securityholders.

**SECTION 6.06** Control by Securityholders.

The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding, determined in accordance with Section 8.01, shall have the right to direct the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred on the Trustee with respect to such series; provided, however, that such direction shall not be in conflict with any rule of law or with this Indenture or be unduly prejudicial to the rights of holders of Securities of any other series at the time Outstanding determined in accordance with Section 8.01. Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, the Trustee shall have the right to decline to follow any such direction if the Trustee in good faith shall, by a Responsible Officer or Officers of the Trustee, determine that the proceeding so directed would involve the Trustee in personal liability. The Securityholders either (a) through the written consent of not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding or (b) by action at a meeting of holders of the Securities of such series in accordance with Section 8.09, by the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding represented at such meeting, may on behalf of the holders of all of the Securities of such series waive any past default in the performance of any of the covenants contained herein or established pursuant to Section 2.01 with respect to such series and its consequences, except a default in the payment of the principal of, or premium, if any, or interest on, any of the Securities of that series as and when the same shall become due by the terms of such Securities otherwise than by acceleration (unless such default has been cured and a sum sufficient to pay all matured installments of interest and principal and any premium has been deposited with the

Trustee (in accordance with Section 6.01(c)) and except in respect a provision hereof which, under Section 9.02, cannot be modified or amended without the consent of the holders of each Outstanding Security affected; provided however that this Section shall not limit the right of holders of Securities of a series to rescind and annul any acceleration as set forth in Section 6.01. Upon any such waiver, the default covered thereby shall be deemed to be cured for all purposes of this Indenture and the Company, the Trustee and the holders of the Securities of such series shall be restored to their former positions and rights hereunder, respectively; but no such waiver shall extend to any subsequent or other default or impair any right consequent thereon. The provisions which otherwise would be automatically deemed to be contained in this Indenture pursuant to Section (316)(a)(1) of the Trust Indenture Act are hereby expressly excluded from this Indenture, except to the extent such provisions are expressly included herein.

SECTION 6.07           Undertaking to Pay Costs.

All parties to this Indenture agree, and each holder of any Securities by such holder's acceptance thereof shall be deemed to have agreed, that any court may in its discretion require, in any suit for the enforcement of any right or remedy under this Indenture, or in any suit against the Trustee for any action taken or omitted by it as Trustee, the filing by any party litigant in such suit of an undertaking to pay the costs of such suit, and that such court may in its discretion assess reasonable costs, including reasonable attorneys' fees, against any party litigant in such suit, having due regard to the merits and good faith of the claims or defenses made by such party litigant; but the provisions of this Section shall not apply to any suit instituted by the Trustee, to any suit instituted by any Securityholder, or group of Securityholders, holding more than 10% in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series, or to any suit instituted by any Securityholder for the enforcement of the payment of the principal of (or premium, if any) or interest on any Security of such series, on or after the respective due dates expressed in such Security or established pursuant to this Indenture.

ARTICLE VII

CONCERNING THE TRUSTEE

SECTION 7.01           Certain Duties and Responsibilities of Trustee.

- (a) The Trustee, prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing of all Events of Default with respect to the Securities of that series that may have occurred, shall undertake to perform with respect to the Securities of such series such duties and only such duties as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee. In case an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series has occurred (that has not been cured or waived), the Trustee shall exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs.
- (b) No provision of this Indenture shall be construed to relieve the Trustee from liability for its own negligent action, its own negligent failure to act, or its own willful misconduct, except that:
  - (1) prior to the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to the Securities of a series and after the curing or waiving of all such Events of Default with respect to that series that may have occurred:
    - (i) the duties and obligations of the Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of such series be determined solely by the express provisions of this Indenture, and the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to the Securities of such series except for the performance of such duties and obligations as are specifically set forth in this Indenture, and no implied covenants or obligations shall be read into this Indenture against the Trustee; and

- (ii) in the absence of bad faith on the part of the Trustee, the Trustee may with respect to the Securities of such series conclusively rely, as to the truth of the statements and the correctness of the opinions expressed therein, upon any certificates or opinions furnished to the Trustee and conforming to the requirements of this Indenture; but in the case of any such certificates or opinions that by any provision hereof are specifically required to be furnished to the Trustee, the Trustee shall be under a duty to examine the same to determine whether or not they conform to the requirement of this Indenture;
- (2) the Trustee shall not be liable for any error of judgment made in good faith by a Responsible Officer or Responsible Officers of the Trustee, unless it shall be proved that the Trustee, was negligent in ascertaining the pertinent facts;
- (3) the Trustee shall not be liable with respect to any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith in accordance with the direction of the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding relating to the time, method and place of conducting any proceeding for any remedy available to the Trustee, or exercising any trust or power conferred upon the Trustee under this Indenture with respect to the Securities of that series; and
- (4) None of the provisions contained in this Indenture shall require the Trustee to expend or risk its own funds or otherwise incur personal financial liability in the performance of any of its duties or in the exercise of any of its rights or powers, if there is reasonable ground for believing that the repayment of such funds or liability is not reasonably assured to it under the terms of this Indenture or adequate indemnity against such risk is not reasonably assured to it.

SECTION 7.02 Certain Rights of Trustee.

Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01:

- (a) The Trustee may rely and shall be protected in acting or refraining from acting upon any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security or other paper or document believed by it to be genuine and to have been signed or presented by the proper party or parties;
- (b) Any request, direction, order or demand of the Company mentioned herein shall be sufficiently evidenced by a Board Resolution or an instrument signed in the name of the Company, by the President or any Vice President and by the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary or the Treasurer or an Assistant Treasurer thereof (unless other evidence in respect thereof is specifically prescribed herein);
- (c) The Trustee may consult with counsel and the written advice of such counsel or any Opinion of Counsel shall be full and complete authorization and protection in respect of any action taken or suffered or omitted hereunder in good faith and in reliance thereon;
- (d) The Trustee shall be under no obligation to exercise any of the rights or powers vested in it by this Indenture at the request, order or direction of any of the Securityholders, pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture, unless such Securityholders shall have offered to the Trustee reasonable security or indemnity against the costs, expenses and liabilities that may be incurred therein or thereby; nothing contained herein shall, however, relieve the Trustee of the obligation, upon the occurrence of an Event of Default with respect to a series of the Securities (that has not been cured or waived) to exercise with respect to Securities of that series such of the rights and powers vested in it by this Indenture, and to use the same degree of care and skill in their exercise, as a prudent man would exercise or use under the circumstances in the conduct of his own affairs;



- (e) The Trustee shall not be liable for any action taken or omitted to be taken by it in good faith and believed by it to be authorized or within the discretion or rights or powers conferred upon it by this Indenture;
- (f) The Trustee shall not be bound to make any investigation into the facts or matters stated in any resolution, certificate, statement, instrument, opinion, report, notice, request, consent, order, approval, bond, security, or other papers or documents, unless requested in writing so to do by the holders of not less than a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of the particular series affected thereby (determined as provided in Section 8.04); provided, however, that if the payment within a reasonable time to the Trustee of the costs, expenses or liabilities likely to be incurred by it in the making of such investigation is, in the opinion of the Trustee, not reasonably assured to the Trustee by the security afforded to it by the terms of this Indenture, the Trustee may require reasonable indemnity against such costs, expenses or liabilities as a condition to so proceeding. The reasonable expense of every such examination shall be paid by the Company or, if paid by the Trustee, shall be repaid by the Company upon demand; and
- (g) The Trustee may execute any of the trusts or powers hereunder or perform any duties hereunder either directly or by or through agents or attorneys and the Trustee shall not be responsible for any misconduct or negligence on the part of any agent or attorney appointed with due care by it hereunder.

SECTION 7.03 Trustee Not Responsible for Recitals or Issuance of Securities.

- (a) The recitals contained herein and in the Securities shall be taken as the statements of the Company, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for the correctness of the same.
- (b) The Trustee makes no representations as to the validity or sufficiency of this Indenture or of the Securities.
- (c) The Trustee shall not be accountable for the use or application by the Company of any of the Securities or of the proceeds of such Securities, or for the use or application of any moneys paid over by the Trustee in accordance with any provision of this Indenture or established pursuant to Section 2.01, or for the use or application of any moneys received by any paying agent other than the Trustee.

SECTION 7.04 May Hold Securities.

The Trustee or any paying agent or Security Registrar, in its individual or any other capacity, may become the owner or pledgee of Securities with the same rights it would have if it were not Trustee, paying agent or Security Registrar.

SECTION 7.05 Moneys Held in Trust.

Subject to the provisions of Section 11.05, all moneys received by the Trustee shall, until used or applied as herein provided, be held in trust for the purposes for which they were received, but need not be segregated from other funds except to the extent required by law. The Trustee shall be under no liability for interest on any moneys received by it hereunder except such as it may agree with the Company to pay thereon.

SECTION 7.06 Compensation and Reimbursement.

- (a) The Company covenants and agrees to pay to the Trustee, and the Trustee shall be entitled to, such reasonable compensation (which shall not be limited by any provision of law in regard to the compensation of a trustee of an express trust), as the Company, and the Trustee may from time to time agree in writing, for all services rendered by it in the execution of the trusts hereby created and in the exercise and performance of any of the powers and duties hereunder of the Trustee, and, except as otherwise expressly provided herein, the Company will pay or reimburse the Trustee upon its request for all reasonable expenses, disbursements and advances incurred or made by the Trustee in accordance with any of the provisions of this Indenture (including the reasonable compensation and the expenses and disbursements of its counsel and of all Persons not regularly in its employ) except any such expense, disbursement or advance as may arise from its negligence or bad faith. The Company also covenants to indemnify the Trustee (and its officers, agents, directors and employees) for, and to hold it harmless against, any loss, liability or expense incurred without negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee and arising out of or in connection with the acceptance or administration of this trust, including the costs and expenses of defending itself against any claim or liability in connection with the exercise or performance of any of its power or duties hereunder.

- (b) The obligations of the Company under this Section to compensate and indemnify the Trustee and to pay or reimburse the Trustee for expenses, disbursements and advances shall constitute additional indebtedness hereunder. Such additional indebtedness shall be secured by a lien prior to that of the Securities upon all property and funds held or collected by the Trustee as such, except funds held in trust for the benefit of the holders of particular Securities.

SECTION 7.07 Reliance on Officers' Certificate.

Except as otherwise provided in Section 7.01, whenever in the administration of the provisions of this Indenture the Trustee shall deem it necessary or desirable that a matter be proved or established prior to taking or suffering or omitting to take any action hereunder, such matter (unless other evidence in respect thereof be herein specifically prescribed) may, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, be deemed to be conclusively proved and established by an Officers' Certificate delivered to the Trustee and such certificate, in the absence of negligence or bad faith on the part of the Trustee, shall be full warrant to the Trustee for any action taken, suffered or omitted to be taken by it under the provisions of this Indenture upon the faith thereof.

SECTION 7.08 Disqualification; Conflicting Interests.

If the Trustee has or shall acquire any "conflicting interest" within the meaning of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act, the Trustee and the Company shall in all respects comply with the provisions of Section 310(b) of the Trust Indenture Act.

SECTION 7.09 Corporate Trustee Required; Eligibility.

There shall at all times be a Trustee with respect to the Securities issued hereunder which shall at all times be a Person organized and doing business under the laws of the United States of America or any State or Territory thereof or of the District of Columbia, or a corporation or other Person permitted to act as trustee by the Commission, authorized under such laws to exercise corporate trust powers, having (together with its affiliates) a combined capital and surplus of at least 50 million U.S. dollars (\$50,000,000), and subject to supervision or examination by Federal, State, Territorial, or District of Columbia authority. If such Person publishes reports of condition at least annually, pursuant to law or to the requirements of the aforesaid supervising or examining authority, then for the purposes of this Section, the combined capital and surplus of such corporation shall be deemed to be its combined capital and surplus as set forth in its most recent report of condition so published. The Company may not, nor may any Person directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with the Company, serve as Trustee. In case at any time the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of this Section, the Trustee shall resign immediately in the manner and with the effect specified in Section 7.10.

SECTION 7.10 Resignation and Removal; Appointment of Successor.

- (a) The Trustee or any successor hereafter appointed, may at any time resign with respect to the Securities of one or more series by giving written notice thereof to the Company and by transmitting notice of resignation by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders of such series, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Upon receiving such notice of resignation, the Company shall promptly appoint a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the resigning Trustee and one copy to the successor trustee. If no successor trustee shall have been so appointed and have accepted appointment within 30 days after the mailing of such notice of resignation, the resigning Trustee may petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the appointment of a successor trustee with respect to Securities of such series, or any Securityholder of that series who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may on behalf of himself and all others similarly situated, petition any such court for the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, appoint a successor trustee.

- (b) In case at any time any one of the following shall occur:
- (1) the Trustee shall fail to comply with the provisions of Section 7.08 after written request therefor by the Company or by any Securityholder who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months; or
  - (2) the Trustee shall cease to be eligible in accordance with the provisions of Section 7.09 and shall fail to resign after written request therefor by the Company or by any such Securityholder; or
  - (3) the Trustee shall become incapable of acting, or shall be adjudged a bankrupt or insolvent, or commence a voluntary bankruptcy proceeding, or a receiver of the Trustee or of its property shall be appointed or consented to, or any public officer shall take charge or control of the Trustee or of its property or affairs for the purpose of rehabilitation, conservation or liquidation, then, in any such case, the Company may remove the Trustee with respect to all Securities and appoint a successor trustee by written instrument, in duplicate, executed by order of the Board of Directors, one copy of which instrument shall be delivered to the Trustee so removed and one copy to the successor trustee, or, unless the Trustee's duty to resign is stayed as provided herein, any Securityholder who has been a bona fide holder of a Security or Securities for at least six months may, on behalf of that holder and all others similarly situated, petition any court of competent jurisdiction for the removal of the Trustee and the appointment of a successor trustee. Such court may thereupon after such notice, if any, as it may deem proper and prescribe, remove the Trustee and appoint a successor trustee.
- (c) The holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of any series at the time Outstanding may at any time remove the Trustee with respect to such series by so notifying the Trustee and the Company and may appoint a successor Trustee for such series with the consent of the Company.
- (d) Any resignation or removal of the Trustee and appointment of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of a series pursuant to any of the provisions of this Section shall become effective upon acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee as provided in Section 7.11.
- (e) Any successor trustee appointed pursuant to this Section may be appointed with respect to the Securities of one or more series or all of such series, and at any time there shall be only one Trustee with respect to the Securities of any particular series.

SECTION 7.11 Acceptance of Appointment By Successor.

- (a) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to all Securities, every such successor trustee so appointed shall execute, acknowledge and deliver to the Company and to the retiring Trustee an instrument accepting such appointment, and thereupon the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective and such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee; but, on the request of the Company or the successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall, upon payment of its charges, execute and deliver an instrument transferring to such successor trustee all the rights, powers, and trusts of the retiring Trustee and shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee all property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder.

- (b) In case of the appointment hereunder of a successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more (but not all) series, the Company, the retiring Trustee and each successor trustee with respect to the Securities of one or more series shall execute and deliver an indenture supplemental hereto wherein each successor trustee shall accept such appointment and which (1) shall contain such provisions as shall be necessary or desirable to transfer and confirm to, and to vest in, each successor trustee all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates, (2) shall contain such provisions as shall be deemed necessary or desirable to confirm that all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series as to which the retiring Trustee is not retiring shall continue to be vested in the retiring Trustee, and (3) shall add to or change any of the provisions of this Indenture as shall be necessary to provide for or facilitate the administration of the trusts hereunder by more than one Trustee, it being understood that nothing herein or in such supplemental indenture shall constitute such Trustees co-trustees of the same trust, that each such Trustee shall be trustee of a trust or trusts hereunder separate and apart from any trust or trusts hereunder administered by any other such Trustee and that no Trustee shall be responsible for any act or failure to act on the part of any other Trustee hereunder; and upon the execution and delivery of such supplemental indenture the resignation or removal of the retiring Trustee shall become effective to the extent provided therein, such retiring Trustee shall with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates have no further responsibility for the exercise of rights and powers or for the performance of the duties and obligations vested in the Trustee under this Indenture, and each such successor trustee, without any further act, deed or conveyance, shall become vested with all the rights, powers, trusts and duties of the retiring Trustee with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates; but, on request of the Company or any successor trustee, such retiring Trustee shall duly assign, transfer and deliver to such successor trustee, to the extent contemplated by such supplemental indenture, the property and money held by such retiring Trustee hereunder with respect to the Securities of that or those series to which the appointment of such successor trustee relates.
- (c) Upon request of any such successor trustee, the Company shall execute any and all instruments for more fully and certainly vesting in and confirming to such successor trustee all such rights, powers and trusts referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of this Section, as the case may be.
- (d) No successor trustee shall accept its appointment unless at the time of such acceptance such successor trustee shall be qualified and eligible under this Article.
- (e) Upon acceptance of appointment by a successor trustee as provided in this Section, the Company shall transmit notice of the succession of such trustee hereunder by mail, first class postage prepaid, to the Securityholders, as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. If the Company fails to transmit such notice within ten days after acceptance of appointment by the successor trustee, the successor trustee shall cause such notice to be transmitted at the expense of the Company.

SECTION 7.12 Merger, Conversion, Consolidation or Succession to Business.

Any Person into which the Trustee may be merged or converted or with which it may be consolidated, or any Person resulting from any merger, conversion or consolidation to which the Trustee shall be a party, or any Person succeeding to the corporate trust business of the Trustee, shall be the successor of the Trustee hereunder, provided that such Person shall be qualified under the provisions of Section 7.08 and eligible under the provisions of Section 7.09, without the execution or filing of any paper or any further act on the part of any of the parties hereto, anything herein to the contrary notwithstanding. In case any Securities shall have been authenticated, but not delivered, by the Trustee then in office, any successor by merger, conversion or consolidation to such authenticating Trustee may adopt such authentication and deliver the Securities so authenticated with the same effect as if such successor Trustee had itself authenticated such Securities.

SECTION 7.13 Preferential Collection of Claims Against the Company.

The Trustee shall comply with Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act, excluding any creditor relationship described in Section 311(b) of the Trust Indenture Act. A Trustee who has resigned or been removed shall be subject to Section 311(a) of the Trust Indenture Act to the extent included therein.

ARTICLE VIII

CONCERNING THE SECURITYHOLDERS

SECTION 8.01 Evidence of Action by Securityholders.

Whenever in this Indenture it is provided that the holders of a majority or specified percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series may take any action (including the making of any demand or request, the giving of any notice, consent or waiver or the taking of any other action), the fact that at the time of taking any such action the holders of such majority or specified percentage of that series have joined therein may be evidenced by any instrument or any number of instruments of similar tenor executed by such holders of Securities of that series in Person or by agent or proxy appointed in writing.

If the Company shall solicit from the Securityholders of any series any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, the Company may, at its option, as evidenced by an Officers' Certificate, fix in advance a record date for such series for the determination of Securityholders entitled to give such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, but the Company shall have no obligation to do so. If such a record date is fixed, such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action may be given before or after the record date, but only the Securityholders of record at the close of business on the record date shall be deemed to be Securityholders for the purposes of determining whether Securityholders of the requisite proportion of Outstanding Securities of that series have authorized or agreed or consented to such request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action, and for that purpose the Outstanding Securities of that series shall be computed as of the record date; provided, however, that no such authorization, agreement or consent by such Securityholders on the record date shall be deemed effective unless it shall become effective pursuant to the provisions of this Indenture not later than six months after the record date.

SECTION 8.02 Proof of Execution by Securityholders.

Subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, proof of the execution of any instrument by a Securityholder (such proof will not require notarization) or his agent or proxy and proof of the holding by any Person of any of the Securities shall be sufficient if made in the following manner:

- (a) The fact and date of the execution by any such Person of any instrument may be proved in any reasonable manner acceptable to the Trustee.
- (b) The ownership of Securities shall be proved by the Security Register of such Securities or by a certificate of the Security Registrar thereof.
- (c) The Trustee may require such additional proof of any matter referred to in this Section as it shall deem necessary.

SECTION 8.03 Who May be Deemed Owners.

Prior to the due presentment for registration of transfer of any Security, the Company, the Trustee, any paying agent and any Security Registrar may deem and treat the Person in whose name such Security shall be registered upon the books of the Company as the absolute owner of such Security (whether or not such Security shall be overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon made by anyone other than the Security Registrar) for the purpose of receiving payment of or on account of the principal of, premium, if any, and (subject to Section 2.03) interest on such Security and for all other purposes; and neither the Company nor the Trustee nor any paying agent nor any Security Registrar shall be affected by any notice to the contrary.

SECTION 8.04 Certain Securities Owned by Company Disregarded.

In determining whether the holders of the requisite aggregate principal amount of Securities of a particular series have concurred in any direction, consent or waiver under this Indenture, the Securities of that series that are owned by the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series or by any Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under common control with the Company or any other obligor on the Securities of that series shall be disregarded and deemed not to be Outstanding for the purpose of any such determination, except that for the purpose of determining whether the Trustee shall be protected in relying on any such direction, consent or waiver, only Securities of such series that the Trustee actually knows are so owned shall be so disregarded. The Securities so owned that have been pledged in good faith may be regarded as Outstanding for the purposes of this Section, if the pledgee shall establish to the satisfaction of the Trustee the pledgee's right so to act with respect to such Securities and that the pledgee is not a Person directly or indirectly controlling or controlled by or under direct or indirect common control with the Company or any such other obligor. In case of a dispute as to such right, any decision by the Trustee taken upon the advice of counsel shall be full protection to the Trustee.

SECTION 8.05 Actions Binding on Future Securityholders.

At any time prior to (but not after) the evidencing to the Trustee, as provided in Section 8.01, of the taking of any action by the holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action, any holder of a Security of that series that is shown by the evidence to be included in the Securities the holders of which have consented to such action may, by filing written notice with the Trustee, and upon proof of holding as provided in Section 8.02, revoke such action so far as concerns such Security. Except as aforesaid any such action taken by the holder of any Security shall be conclusive and binding upon such holder and upon all future holders and owners of such Security, and of any Security issued in exchange therefor, on registration of transfer thereof or in place thereof, irrespective of whether or not any notation in regard thereto is made upon such Security. Any action taken by the holders of the majority or percentage in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of a particular series specified in this Indenture in connection with such action shall be conclusively binding upon the Company, the Trustee and the holders of all the Securities of that series.

SECTION 8.06 Purposes for Which Meetings May Be Called.

A meeting of holders of any series of Securities may be called at any time and from time to time pursuant to this Article to make, give or take any request, demand, authorization, direction, notice, consent, waiver or other action provided by this Indenture to be made, given or taken by holders of such series of Securities.

Notwithstanding anything contained in this Article VIII, the Trustee may, during the pendency of a Default or an Event of Default, call a meeting of holders of any series of Securities in accordance with its standard practices.

SECTION 8.07 Call Notice and Place of Meetings.

- (a) The Trustee may at any time call a meeting of holders of any series of Securities for any purpose specified in Section 8.06 hereof, to be held at such time and at such place in The City of New York or Boston, Massachusetts. Notice of every meeting of holders of any series of Securities, setting forth the time and the place of such meeting, in general terms the action proposed to be taken at such meeting and the percentage of the principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series which shall constitute a quorum at such meeting, shall be given, in the manner provided in Section 13.04 hereof, not less than 21 nor more than 180 days prior to the date fixed for the meeting to holders of Outstanding Securities of such series.

- (b) In case at any time the Company, pursuant to a Board Resolution, or the holders of at least 10% in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series shall have requested the Trustee to call a meeting of the holders of Securities of such series for any purpose specified in Section 8.06 hereof, by written request setting forth in reasonable detail the action proposed to be taken at the meeting, and the Trustee shall not have made the first publication of the notice of such meeting within 21 days after receipt of such request or shall not thereafter proceed to cause the meeting to be held as provided herein, then the Company or the holders of Securities of such series in the amount specified, as the case may be, may determine the time and the place in The City of New York or Boston, Massachusetts for such meeting and may call such meeting for such purposes by giving notice thereof as provided in paragraph (a) of this Section.

SECTION 8.08 Persons Entitled To Vote at Meetings.

To be entitled to vote at any meeting of holders of Securities of a given series, a Person shall be (a) a holder of one or more Outstanding Securities of such series or (b) a Person appointed by an instrument in writing as proxy for a holder or holders of one or more Outstanding Securities of such series by such holder or holders. The only Persons who shall be entitled to be present or to speak at any meeting of holders shall be the Persons entitled to vote at such meeting and their counsel, any representatives of the Trustee and its counsel and any representatives of the Company and its counsel.

SECTION 8.09 Quorum; Action.

The Persons entitled to vote a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of a given series shall constitute a quorum with respect to a meeting of holders of Outstanding Securities of such series. In the absence of a quorum within 30 minutes after the time appointed for any such meeting, the meeting shall, if convened at the request of holders of Securities of such series, be dissolved. In any other case, the meeting may be adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such meeting. In the absence of a quorum at any such adjourned meeting, such adjourned meeting may be further adjourned for a period of not less than 10 days as determined by the chairman of the meeting prior to the adjournment of such adjourned meeting. Notice of the reconvening of any adjourned meeting shall be given as provided in Section 8.07(a) hereof, except that such notice need be given only once and not less than five days prior to the date on which the meeting is scheduled to be reconvened.

At a meeting or an adjourned meeting duly reconvened and at which a quorum is present as aforesaid, any resolution and all matters (except as limited by the proviso to the first paragraph of Section 9.02 hereof) shall be effectively passed and decided if passed or decided by the Persons entitled to vote not less than a majority in aggregate principal amount of Outstanding Securities of a series represented and voting at such meeting with respect to a meeting of holders of Outstanding Securities of such series.

Any resolution passed or decisions taken at any meeting of holders of Securities duly held in accordance with this Section shall be binding on all the holders of Securities of such series, whether or not present or represented at the meeting.

SECTION 8.10 Determination of Voting Rights; Conduct and Adjournment of Meetings.

- (a) Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Indenture, the Trustee may make such reasonable regulations as it may deem advisable for any meeting of holders of Securities in regard to proof of the holding of Securities and of the appointment of proxies and in regard to the appointment and duties of inspectors of votes, the submission and examination of proxies, certificates and other evidence of the right to vote, and such other matters concerning the conduct of the meeting as it shall deem appropriate.

- (b) The Trustee shall, by an instrument in writing, appoint a temporary chairman (which may be the Trustee) of the meeting, unless the meeting shall have been called by the Company or by holders of Securities of a given series as provided in Section 8.07(b) hereof, in which case the Company or the holders of Securities of such series calling the meeting, as the case may be, shall in like manner appoint a temporary chairman. A permanent chairman and a permanent secretary of the meeting shall be elected by vote of the Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of such series represented at the meeting.
- (c) At any meeting, each holder of a Security of the series in respect of which such meeting is being held or proxy shall be entitled to one vote for each \$1,000 principal amount of Securities of such series held or represented by him; provided, however, that no vote shall be cast or counted at any meeting in respect of any Security of such series challenged as not Outstanding and ruled by the chairman of the meeting to be not Outstanding. The chairman of the meeting shall have no right to vote, except as a holder of a Security of such series or proxy.
- (d) Any meeting of holders of Securities duly called pursuant to Section 8.07 hereof at which a quorum is present may be adjourned from time to time by Persons entitled to vote a majority in principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of the series in respect of which such meeting is being held represented at the meeting, and the meeting may be held as so adjourned without further notice.

SECTION 8.11 Counting Votes and Recording Action of Meetings.

The vote upon any resolution submitted to any meeting of holders of Securities of a given series shall be by written ballots on which shall be subscribed the signatures of the holders of Securities of such series or of their representatives by proxy and the principal amounts and serial numbers of the Outstanding Securities of such series held or represented by them. The permanent chairman of the meeting shall appoint two inspectors of votes who shall count all votes cast at the meeting for or against any resolution and who shall make and file with the secretary of the meeting their verified written reports in duplicate of all votes cast at the meeting. A record, at least in duplicate, of the proceedings of each meeting of holders of Securities of such series shall be prepared by the secretary of the meeting and there shall be attached to said record the original reports of the inspectors of votes on any vote by ballot taken thereat and affidavits by one or more Persons having knowledge of the facts setting forth a copy of the notice of the meeting and showing that said notice was given as provided in Section 8.07 hereof and, if applicable, Section 8.09 hereof. Each copy shall be signed and verified by the affidavits of the permanent chairman and secretary of the meeting and one such copy shall be delivered to the Company and another to the Trustee to be preserved by the Trustee, the latter to have attached thereto the ballots voted at the meeting. Any record so signed and verified shall be conclusive evidence of the matters therein stated.

ARTICLE IX

SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURES

SECTION 9.01 Supplemental Indentures Without the Consent of Securityholders.

In addition to any supplemental indenture otherwise authorized by this Indenture, the Company and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect), without the consent of the Securityholders, for one or more of the following purposes:

- (a) cure any ambiguity, correct or supplement any provision herein which may be inconsistent with any other provision herein or which is otherwise defective, or make any other provisions with respect to matters or questions arising under this Indenture which the Company and the Trustee may deem necessary or desirable and which shall not be inconsistent with the provisions of this Indenture;



- (b) to comply with Article X;
- (c) to provide for uncertificated Securities in addition to or in place of certificated Securities;
- (d) to add to the covenants of the Company for the benefit of the holders of all or any Series of Securities (and if such covenants are to be for the benefit of less than all series of Securities, stating that such covenants are expressly being included solely for the benefit of such series) or to surrender any right or power herein conferred upon the Company;
- (e) to add to, delete from, or revise the conditions, limitations, and restrictions on the authorized amount, terms, or purposes of issue, authentication, and delivery of Securities, as herein set forth;
- (f) to make any change that does not adversely affect the rights of any Securityholder in any material respect;
- (g) to provide for the issuance of and establish the form and terms and conditions of the Securities of any series as provided in Section 2.01, to establish the form of any certifications required to be furnished pursuant to the terms of this Indenture or any series of Securities, or to add to the rights of the holders of any series of Securities; or
- (h) comply with the requirements of the Commission in order to effect or maintain the qualification of this Indenture under the Trust Indenture Act.

The Trustee is hereby authorized to join with the Company in the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and to make any further appropriate agreements and stipulations that may be therein contained, but the Trustee shall not be obligated to enter into any such supplemental indenture that affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise.

Any supplemental indenture authorized by the provisions of this Section may be executed by the Company and the Trustee without the consent of the holders of any of the Securities at the time Outstanding, notwithstanding any of the provisions of Section 9.02.

#### SECTION 9.02 Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders.

With the written consent of the holders of at least a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Outstanding Securities of any series or by action at a meeting of holders of the Securities of such series in accordance with Section 8.09, by the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Securities of such series then Outstanding represented at such meeting, the Company, when authorized by Board Resolutions, and the Trustee may from time to time and at any time enter into an indenture or indentures supplemental hereto (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act as then in effect) for the purpose of adding any provisions to or changing in any manner or eliminating any of the provisions of this Indenture or of any supplemental indenture or of modifying in any manner not covered by Section 9.01 the rights of the holders of the Securities of such series under this Indenture; provided, however, that no such supplemental indenture shall, without the consent of the holders of each Security then Outstanding and affected thereby, (i) extend the fixed maturity of any Securities of any series, or reduce the principal amount thereof, or reduce the rate or extend the time of payment of interest thereon, or reduce any premium payable upon the redemption thereof, (ii) reduce the aforesaid percentage of Securities, the holders of which are required to consent to any such supplemental indenture, or any consent or waiver, (iii) reduce the principal amount of discount securities payable upon acceleration of the maturity of any Securities of any series or (iv) make the principal of or premium or interest on any Security of a series payable in currency or currency units other than that stated in the Securities of such series.

It shall not be necessary for the consent of the Securityholders of any series affected thereby under this Section to approve the particular form of any proposed supplemental indenture, but it shall be sufficient if such consent shall approve the substance thereof.

SECTION 9.03        Effect of Supplemental Indentures.

Upon the execution of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, this Indenture shall, with respect to such series, be and be deemed to be modified and amended in accordance therewith and the respective rights, limitations of rights, obligations, duties and immunities under this Indenture of the Trustee, the Company and the holders of Securities of the series affected thereby shall thereafter be determined, exercised and enforced hereunder subject in all respects to such modifications and amendments, and all the terms and conditions of any such supplemental indenture shall be and be deemed to be part of the terms and conditions of this Indenture for any and all purposes.

SECTION 9.04        Securities Affected by Supplemental Indentures.

Securities of any series affected by a supplemental indenture, authenticated and delivered after the execution of such supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Article or of Section 10.01, may bear a notation in form approved by the Company, provided such form meets the requirements of any exchange upon which such series may be listed, as to any matter provided for in such supplemental indenture. If the Company shall so determine, new Securities of that series so modified as to conform, in the opinion of the Board of Directors of the Company, to any modification of this Indenture contained in any such supplemental indenture may be prepared by the Company, authenticated by the Trustee and delivered in exchange for the Securities of that series then Outstanding.

SECTION 9.05        Execution of Supplemental Indentures.

Upon the request of the Company, accompanied by its Board Resolutions authorizing the execution of any such supplemental indenture, and upon the filing with the Trustee of evidence of the consent of Securityholders required to consent thereto as aforesaid, the Trustee shall join with the Company in the execution of such supplemental indenture unless such supplemental indenture affects the Trustee's own rights, duties or immunities under this Indenture or otherwise, in which case the Trustee may in its discretion but shall not be obligated to enter into such supplemental indenture. The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, may receive an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that any supplemental indenture executed pursuant to this Article is authorized or permitted by, and conforms to, the terms of this Article and that it is proper for the Trustee under the provisions of this Article to join in the execution thereof; provided, however, that such Opinion of Counsel need not be provided in connection with the execution of a supplemental indenture that establishes the terms of a series of Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 hereof.

Promptly after the execution by the Company and the Trustee of any supplemental indenture pursuant to the provisions of this Section, the Trustee shall transmit by mail, first class postage prepaid, a notice, setting forth in general terms the substance of such supplemental indenture, to the Securityholders of all series affected thereby as their names and addresses appear upon the Security Register. Any failure of the Trustee to mail such notice, or any defect therein, shall not, however, in any way impair or affect the validity of any such supplemental indenture.

ARTICLE X

SUCCESSOR ENTITY

SECTION 10.01        Company May Consolidate, Etc.

Nothing contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities shall prevent any consolidation or merger of the Company with or into any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company) or successive consolidations or mergers in which the Company or its successor or successors shall be a party or parties, or shall prevent any sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition of the property of the Company or its successor or successors as an entirety, or substantially as an entirety, to any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company or its successor or successors) authorized to acquire and operate the same; provided, however, the Company hereby covenants and agrees that, upon any such consolidation or merger (in each case, if the Company is not the survivor of such transaction), sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, the due and punctual payment of the principal of (premium, if any) and interest on all of the Securities of all series in accordance with the terms of each series, according to their tenor and the due and punctual performance and observance of all the covenants and conditions of this Indenture with respect to each series or established with respect to such series pursuant to Section 2.01 to be kept or performed by the Company shall be expressly assumed, by supplemental indenture (which shall conform to the provisions of the Trust Indenture Act, as then in effect) satisfactory in form to the Trustee executed and delivered to the Trustee by the entity formed by such consolidation, or into which the Company shall have been merged, or by the entity which shall have acquired such property.

SECTION 10.02 Successor Entity Substituted.

- (a) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition and upon the assumption by the successor entity by supplemental indenture, executed and delivered to the Trustee and satisfactory in form to the Trustee, of the due and punctual payment of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on all of the Securities of all series Outstanding and the due and punctual performance of all of the covenants and conditions of this Indenture or established with respect to each series of the Securities pursuant to Section 2.01 to be performed by the Company with respect to each series, such successor entity shall succeed to and be substituted for the Company with the same effect as if it had been named as the Company herein, and thereupon the predecessor corporation shall be relieved of all obligations and covenants under this Indenture and the Securities.
- (b) In case of any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition such changes in phraseology and form (but not in substance) may be made in the Securities thereafter to be issued as may be appropriate.
- (c) Nothing contained in this Article shall require any action by the Company in the case of a consolidation or merger of any Person into the Company where the Company is the survivor of such transaction, or the acquisition by the Company, by purchase or otherwise, of all or any part of the property of any other Person (whether or not affiliated with the Company).

SECTION 10.03 Evidence of Consolidation, Etc. to Trustee.

The Trustee, subject to the provisions of Section 7.01, may request and, in which shall receive, an Opinion of Counsel as conclusive evidence that any such consolidation, merger, sale, conveyance, transfer or other disposition, and any such assumption, comply with the provisions of this Article.

ARTICLE XI

SATISFACTION AND DISCHARGE

SECTION 11.01 Satisfaction and Discharge of Indenture.

If at any time: (a) the Company shall have delivered to the Trustee for cancellation all Securities of a series theretofore authenticated (other than any Securities that shall have been destroyed, lost or stolen and that shall have been replaced or paid as provided in Section 2.07) and Securities for whose payment money or Governmental Obligations have theretofore been deposited in trust or segregated and held in trust by the Company (and thereupon repaid to the Company or discharged from such trust, as provided in Section 11.05); or (b) all such Securities of a particular series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation shall have become due and payable, or are by their terms to become due and payable within one year or are to be called for redemption within one year under arrangements satisfactory to the Trustee for the giving of notice of redemption, and the Company shall deposit or cause to be deposited with the Trustee as trust funds the entire amount in moneys or Governmental Obligations sufficient or a combination thereof, sufficient (assuming that no tax liability will be imposed on the Trustee) in the opinion of a nationally recognized firm of independent public accountants expressed in a written certification thereof delivered to the Trustee, to pay (without reinvestment) at maturity or upon redemption all Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including principal (and premium, if any) and interest due or to become due to such date of maturity or date fixed for redemption, as the case may be, and if the Company shall also pay or cause to be paid all other sums payable hereunder with respect to such series by the Company then this Indenture shall thereupon cease to be of further effect with respect to such series except for the provisions of Sections 2.03, 2.05, 2.07, 4.01, 4.02, 4.03 and 7.10, that shall survive until the date of maturity or redemption date, as the case may be, and Sections 7.06 and 11.05, that shall survive to such date and thereafter, and the Trustee, on demand of the Company and at the cost and expense of the Company shall execute proper instruments acknowledging satisfaction of and discharging this Indenture with respect to such series.

SECTION 11.02 Discharge of Obligations.

If at any time all such Securities of a particular series not heretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation or that have not become due and payable as described in Section 11.01 shall have been paid by the Company by depositing irrevocably with the Trustee as trust funds moneys or an amount of Governmental Obligations sufficient to pay at maturity or upon redemption all such Securities of that series not theretofore delivered to the Trustee for cancellation, including principal (and premium, if any) and interest due or to become due to such date of maturity or date fixed for redemption, as the case may be, and if the Company shall also pay or cause to be paid all other sums payable hereunder by the Company with respect to such series, then after the date such moneys or Governmental Obligations, as the case may be, are deposited with the Trustee the obligations of the Company under this Indenture with respect to such series shall cease to be of further effect except for the provisions of Sections 2.03, 2.05, 2.07, 4.01, 4.02, 4.03, 7.06, 7.10 and 11.05 hereof that shall survive until such Securities shall mature and be paid thereafter, Sections 7.06 and 11.05 shall survive.

SECTION 11.03 Deposited Moneys to be Held in Trust.

Subject to Section 11.05, all moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with the Trustee pursuant to Sections 11.01 or 11.02 shall be held in trust and shall be available for payment as due, either directly or through any paying agent (including the Company acting as its own paying agent), to the holders of the particular series of Securities for the payment or redemption of which such moneys or Governmental Obligations have been deposited with the Trustee.

SECTION 11.04 Payment of Moneys Held by Paying Agents.

In connection with the satisfaction and discharge of this Indenture all moneys or Governmental Obligations then held by any paying agent under the provisions of this Indenture shall, upon demand of the Company, be paid to the Trustee and thereupon such paying agent shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations.

SECTION 11.05 Repayment to Company.

Any moneys or Governmental Obligations deposited with any paying agent or the Trustee, or then held by the Company, in trust for payment of principal of or premium or interest on the Securities of a particular series that are not applied but remain unclaimed by the holders of such Securities for two years after the date upon which the principal of (and premium, if any) or interest on such Securities shall have respectively become due and payable, shall be repaid to the Company or (if then held by the Company) shall be discharged from such trust in each case, promptly after the end of any such two-year period or, at the request of the Company, on a later date specified by the Company; and thereupon the paying agent and the Trustee shall be released from all further liability with respect to such moneys or Governmental Obligations, and the holder of any of the Securities entitled to receive such payment shall thereafter, as an unsecured general creditor, look only to the Company for the payment thereof.

## ARTICLE XII

### IMMUNITY OF INCORPORATORS, STOCKHOLDERS, OFFICERS AND DIRECTORS

#### SECTION 12.01 No Recourse.

No recourse under or upon any obligation, covenant or agreement of this Indenture, or of any Security, or for any claim based thereon or otherwise in respect thereof, shall be had against any incorporator, stockholder, officer or director, past, present or future as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, either directly or through the Company or any such predecessor or successor corporation, whether by virtue of any constitution, statute or rule of law, or by the enforcement of any assessment or penalty or otherwise; it being expressly understood that this Indenture and the obligations issued hereunder are solely corporate obligations, and that no such personal liability whatever shall attach to, or is or shall be incurred by, the incorporators, stockholders, officers or directors as such, of the Company or of any predecessor or successor corporation, or any of them, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom; and that any and all such personal liability of every name and nature, either at common law or in equity or by constitution or statute, of, and any and all such rights and claims against, every such incorporator, stockholder, officer or director as such, because of the creation of the indebtedness hereby authorized, or under or by reason of the obligations, covenants or agreements contained in this Indenture or in any of the Securities or implied therefrom, are hereby expressly waived and released as a condition of, and as a consideration for, the execution of this Indenture and the issuance of such Securities.

## ARTICLE XIII

### MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

#### SECTION 13.01 Effect on Successors and Assigns.

All the covenants, stipulations, promises and agreements in this Indenture contained by or on behalf of the Company shall bind its successors and assigns, whether so expressed or not.

#### SECTION 13.02 Actions by Successor.

Any act or proceeding by any provision of this Indenture authorized or required to be done or performed by any board, committee or officer of the Company shall and may be done and performed with like force and effect by the corresponding board, committee or officer of any corporation that shall at the time be the lawful successor of the Company.

#### SECTION 13.03 Surrender of Company Powers.

The Company by instrument in writing executed by authority of its Board of Directors and delivered to the Trustee may surrender any of the powers reserved to the Company, and thereupon such power so surrendered shall terminate both as to the Company and as to any successor corporation.

#### SECTION 13.04 Notices.

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein any notice or demand that by any provision of this Indenture is required or permitted to be given or served by the Trustee or by the holders of Securities to or on the Company may be given or served by being deposited first class postage prepaid in a post-office letterbox addressed (until another address is filed in writing by the Company with the Trustee), as follows: 708 Third Avenue, 12<sup>th</sup> Floor, New York, NY 10017. Any notice, election, request or demand by the Company or any Securityholder to or upon the Trustee shall be deemed to have been sufficiently given or made, for all purposes, if given or made in writing at the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee. Any notice or communication to a holder shall be mailed by first-class mail to his address shown on the Security Register kept by the Security Registrar. Failure to mail a notice or communication to a holder or any defect in such notice or communication shall not affect its sufficiency with respect to other holders. If a notice or communication is mailed or sent in the manner provided above within the time prescribed, it is duly given as of the date it is mailed, whether or not the addressee receives it, except that notice to the Trustee or the Company shall only be effective upon receipt thereof by the Trustee or the Company, respectively. If the Company mails a notice or communication to holders of Securities, it shall mail a copy to the Trustee at the same time.

SECTION 13.05      Governing Law.

This Indenture and each Security shall be deemed to be a contract made under the laws of the State of New York and shall be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of New York without regard to conflicts of law principles thereof.

SECTION 13.06      Treatment of Securities as Debt.

It is intended that the Securities will be treated as indebtedness and not as equity for federal income tax purposes. The provisions of this Indenture shall be interpreted to further this intention.

SECTION 13.07      Compliance Certificates and Opinions.

- (a) Upon any application or demand by the Company to the Trustee to take any action under any of the provisions of this Indenture, the Company, shall furnish to the Trustee an Officers' Certificate stating that all conditions precedent provided for in this Indenture relating to the proposed action have been complied with and an Opinion of Counsel stating that in the opinion of such counsel all such conditions precedent have been complied with, except that in the case of any such application or demand as to which the furnishing of such documents with respect to conditions precedents specifically required by any provision of this Indenture relating to such particular application or demand, no additional certificate or opinion need be furnished.
- (b) Each certificate or opinion provided for in this Indenture and delivered to the Trustee with respect to compliance with a condition or covenant in this Indenture shall include (1) a statement that the Person making such certificate or opinion has read such covenant or condition; (2) a brief statement as to the nature and scope of the examination or investigation upon which the statements or opinions contained in such certificate or opinion are based; (3) a statement that, in the opinion of such Person, he has made such examination or investigation as is necessary to enable him to express an informed opinion as to whether or not such covenant or condition has been complied with; and (4) a statement as to whether or not, in the opinion of such Person, such condition or covenant has been complied with.

SECTION 13.08      Payments on Business Days.

Except as provided pursuant to Section 2.01 pursuant to a Board Resolution, and as set forth in an Officers' Certificate, or established in one or more indentures supplemental to this Indenture, in any case where the date of maturity of interest or principal of any Security or the date of redemption of any Security shall not be a Business Day, then payment of interest or principal (and premium, if any) may be made on the next succeeding Business Day with the same force and effect as if made on the nominal date of maturity or redemption, and no interest shall accrue for the period after such nominal date.

SECTION 13.09      Conflict with Trust Indenture Act.

If and to the extent that any provision of this Indenture limits, qualifies or conflicts with the duties imposed by Sections 310 to 317, inclusive, of the Trust Indenture Act, such imposed duties shall control.

SECTION 13.10      Counterparts.

This Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

SECTION 13.11 Separability.

In case any one or more of the provisions contained in this Indenture or in the Securities of any series shall for any reason be held to be invalid, illegal or unenforceable in any respect, such invalidity, illegality or unenforceability shall not affect any other provisions of this Indenture or of such Securities, but this Indenture and such Securities shall be construed as if such invalid or illegal or unenforceable provision had never been contained herein or therein.

SECTION 13.12 Assignment.

The Company will have the right at all times to assign any of its rights or obligations under this Indenture to a direct or indirect wholly-owned Subsidiary of the Company, provided that, in the event of any such assignment, the Company, will remain liable for all such obligations. Subject to the foregoing, this Indenture is binding upon and inures to the benefit of the parties thereto and their respective successors and assigns. This Indenture may not otherwise be assigned by the parties thereto.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Indenture to be duly executed all as of the day and year first above written.

Vringo, Inc.

By:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

Computershare Trust Company, N.A.,  
As Trustee

By:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

VRINGO, INC.

TO

COMPUTERSHARE TRUST COMPANY, N.A., as Trustee

---

FIRST SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURE TO  
INDENTURE DATED [ ], 2015  
(SENIOR DEBT SECURITIES)

Dated as of [ ], 2015

---

Senior Secured Convertible Notes

ANNEX IV - 1

---



VRINGO, INC.

FIRST SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURE TO  
INDENTURE DATED [ ], 2015  
(SENIOR DEBT SECURITIES)

SENIOR SECURED CONVERTIBLE NOTES

FIRST SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURE, dated as of [ ], 2015 (this “**First Supplemental Indenture**”), between VRINGO, INC., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), and Computershare Trust Company, N.A., a national banking association, as Trustee (the “**Trustee**”).

RECITALS

- A. The Company has heretofore executed and delivered to the Trustee an Indenture, dated as of [ ], 2015, (the “**Indenture**”), providing for the issuance from time to time of Securities (as defined in the Indenture) by the Company.
- B. Section 2.01 of the Indenture provides for various matters with respect to any series of Securities issued under the Indenture to be established in an indenture supplemental to the Indenture.
- C. Section 9.01(g) of the Indenture provides for the Company and the Trustee to enter into an indenture supplemental to the Indenture without the consent of Holders of Securities in order to establish the form or terms of Securities of any series as provided by Sections 2.01 of the Indenture.
- D. In accordance with that certain Securities Purchase Agreement, dated ●, 2015 (the “**Securities Purchase Agreement**”), by and among the Company and the investors party thereto (the “**Investors**”), the Company has agreed to sell to the Investors, and the Investors have agreed to purchase, at the Closing (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) subject to the satisfaction of certain terms and conditions set forth therein, in accordance with the Indenture and this Supplemental Indenture (i) \$12,500,000 in aggregate principal amount of the Notes (as defined below) and (ii) Warrants (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) to purchase Common Stock (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) of the Company, to be issued pursuant to the Company’s Registration Statement on Form S-3 (File number 333-182823) (the “**Registration Statement**”) as filed by the Company with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “**SEC**”) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “**1933 Act**”).
- E. The Company hereby desires to supplement the Indenture pursuant to this First Supplemental Indenture to set forth the terms and conditions of the Notes to be issued in accordance herewith.

NOW, THEREFORE, THIS FIRST SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURE WITNESSETH, for and in consideration of the premises and the issuance of the series of Securities provided for herein, it is mutually agreed, for the equal and proportionate benefit of all Holders of the Securities of such series, as follows:

ARTICLE I

RELATION TO INDENTURE; DEFINITIONS

Section 1.1. RELATION TO INDENTURE; HOLDERS DEEMED TO BE BOUND. This First Supplemental Indenture constitutes an integral part of the Indenture. All references herein to the Indenture shall mean the Indenture, as amended and supplemented by this First Supplemental Indenture. The holders of the Notes, by acceptance of such Notes, are deemed to be bound by the terms and conditions of the Indenture as amended and supplemented by this First Supplemental Indenture.

Section 1.2. DEFINITIONS. For all purposes of this First Supplemental Indenture:

(a) Capitalized terms used herein without definition shall have the meanings specified in the Indenture or in the Securities, as applicable;

(b) All references herein to Articles and Sections, unless otherwise specified, refer to the corresponding Articles and Sections of this First Supplemental Indenture; and

(c) The terms “herein,” “hereof,” “hereunder” and other words of similar import refer to this First Supplemental Indenture.

## ARTICLE II

### THE SERIES OF SECURITIES

Section 2.1. TITLE. There shall be a series of Securities designated the “Senior Secured Convertible Note” (the “**Notes**”).

Section 2.2. LIMITATION ON AGGREGATE PRINCIPAL AMOUNT. The aggregate principal amount of the Notes shall be limited to \$12,500,000.

Section 2.3 RANK. The Notes shall rank senior to all Indebtedness (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) of the Company and shall be secured by the Collateral (as defined in the Security Documents) (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) as provided in the Security Documents.

Section 2.4. PRINCIPAL PAYMENT DATE. The principal amount of the Notes outstanding (together with any accrued and unpaid interest and other amounts) shall be payable in accordance with the terms and conditions set forth in the Notes on each Installment Date, Interest Date, Conversion Date, Redemption Date and on the Maturity Date, in each case as defined in the Notes.

Section 2.5. INTEREST AND INTEREST RATES. The rate of interest on the Notes shall be 8% per annum, subject to adjustment as provided in the Notes, accruing from [ ], 2015, and shall be payable at such times and in the manner set forth in the Notes. Any interest to be paid with respect to any Note will, as provided in the Indenture and the Notes, be paid to the record holder of such Note on the applicable Interest Date in Interest Shares, Cash Interest or a combination of Interest Shares and Cash Interest, as applicable, as set forth in the Notes.

Section 2.6. PLACE OF PAYMENT. Except as otherwise provided in the Notes, (i) the Place of Payment where the Notes may be presented or surrendered for payment or redemption, (ii) where the Notes may be surrendered for registration of transfer or exchange (to the extent required or permitted, as applicable, by the terms of the Notes), and (iii) where notices and demand to or upon the Trustee in respect of the Notes and the Indenture may be made, shall initially be the Corporate Trust Office of the Trustee located in Highlands Ranch, Colorado as specified in the Indenture.

Section 2.7. REDEMPTION. The Company may redeem the Notes, in whole or in part, at such times and in the manner set forth in the Notes.

Section 2.8. DENOMINATION. The Securities of this series shall be issuable only in registered form without coupons and in minimum denominations of \$1,000 and integral multiples of \$1.00 in excess thereof.

Section 2.9. CURRENCY. Principal and interest and any other amounts payable, from time to time, on the Notes shall be payable in United States Dollars (“**U.S. Dollars**”) in accordance with Section 24 of the Notes.

Section 2.10. FORM OF SECURITIES. The Notes shall be issued in the form attached to the Securities Purchase Agreement and hereto as Exhibit A. The Company has elected to issue only definitive Securities and shall not issue any Global Securities hereunder. The terms and provisions set forth in the Notes shall be deemed to be a part of this First Supplemental Indenture as if set forth herein at length.

Section 2.11. CONVERTIBLE SECURITIES. The Notes are convertible into the Common Stock of the Company upon the terms and conditions set forth in the Notes.

Section 2.12. SECURITIES REGISTRAR. The Trustee shall maintain the Register as provided in the Notes.

Section 2.13. SINKING FUND OBLIGATIONS. The Company has no obligation to redeem or purchase any Notes pursuant to any sinking fund or analogous requirement.

Section 2.14. EXCLUDED PROVISIONS. The Company has elected that none of the following provisions of the Indenture shall be applicable to the Notes and any analogous provisions (including definitions related thereto) of this First Supplemental Indenture and/or the Notes shall govern in lieu thereof:

The following definitions in Section 1.01:

“Business Day”;

“Commission”;

“Conversion Price”;

“Default”;

“Event of Default”;

“Exchange Act”;

“Interest Payment Date”;

“Person”;

“Security Register”;

“Security Registrar”;

“Securityholder”

“Subsidiary”;

“Voting Stock”;

Section 2.03 (Denominations; Provisions for Interest);

Section 2.05 (Registration of Transfer and Exchange);

Section 2.06 (Temporary Securities);

Section 2.11 (Global Securities);

Article III (Redemption of Securities and Sinking Fund Provisions);

Article IV (Covenants);

Article VI (Remedies of the Trustee and Securityholders on Event of Default);

Section 9.01 (Supplemental Indentures Without Consent of Securityholders);

Section 9.02 (Supplemental Indentures With Consent of Securityholders);

Article X (Successor Entity);

Article XI (Satisfaction and Discharge);

Section 12.01 (No Recourse);

Section 13.02 (Actions by Successor);

Section 13.04 (Notices);

Section 13.08 (Payments on Business Days);

Section 13.12 (Assignment);

Section 2.15. COVENANTS. In addition to the covenants set forth in the Indenture, the Company shall comply with the additional covenants set forth in the Notes and in the Securities Purchase Agreement.

Section 2.16. IMMEDIATELY AVAILABLE FUNDS. All cash payments of principal and interest shall be made in U.S. dollars and immediately available funds.

Section 2.17. TRUSTEE MATTERS. For purposes of the Notes, the Security Register shall be kept at the Corporate Trust Office located in Highlands Ranch, Colorado and any notices and demands to or upon the Company in respect of the Notes and the Indenture may be given or served at the Corporate Trust Office located in Highlands Ranch, Colorado.

### ARTICLE III

#### EXPENSES

Section 3.1. PAYMENT OF EXPENSES. In connection with the offering, sale and issuance of the Notes, the Company, in its capacity as borrower with respect to the Notes, shall pay all costs and expenses relating to the offering, sale and issuance of the Notes, and the compensation and expenses of the Trustee under the Indenture in accordance with the provisions of Section 7.06 of the Indenture.

Section 3.2. PAYMENT UPON RESIGNATION OR REMOVAL. Upon termination of this First Supplemental Indenture or the Indenture or the removal or resignation of the Trustee, unless otherwise stated, the Company shall pay to the Trustee all amounts accrued to the date of such termination, removal or resignation.

### ARTICLE IV

#### MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

Section 4.1. TRUSTEE NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR RECITALS. The recitals herein contained are made by the Company and not by the Trustee, and the Trustee assumes no responsibility for the correctness thereof. The Trustee makes no representation as to the validity or sufficiency of this First Supplemental Indenture.

Section 4.2. ADOPTION, RATIFICATION AND CONFIRMATION. The Indenture, as supplemented and amended by this First Supplemental Indenture, is in all respects hereby adopted, ratified and confirmed.

Section 4.3. CONFLICT WITH INDENTURE; TRUST INDENTURE ACT. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Indenture, if any conflict arises between the terms and conditions of this First Supplemental Indenture (including, without limitation, the terms and conditions of the Notes attached to the Securities Purchase Agreement and hereto as Exhibit A) and the Indenture, the terms and conditions of this First Supplemental Indenture (including the Notes) shall control; provided, however, that if any provision of this First Supplemental Indenture or the Notes limits, qualifies or conflicts with a provision of the Trust Indenture Act that is required under such Act to be a part of and govern this First Supplemental Indenture, the latter provisions shall control. If any provision of this First Supplemental Indenture modifies or excludes any provision of the Trust Indenture Act that may be so modified or excluded, the latter provisions shall be deemed to apply to the Indenture as so modified or excluded, as the case may be.

Section 4.4. AMENDMENTS; WAIVER. This First Supplemental Indenture may be amended by the written consent of the Company and each Holder of Notes. No provision hereof may be waived other than by an instrument in writing signed by the party against whom enforcement is sought.

Section 4.5. SUCCESSORS. This First Supplemental Indenture shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties and their respective successors and assigns, including any purchasers of the Notes.

Section 4.6. SEVERABILITY. If any provision of this First Supplemental Indenture shall be invalid or unenforceable in any jurisdiction, such invalidity or unenforceability shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of this First Supplemental Indenture in that jurisdiction or the validity or enforceability of any provision of this First Supplemental Indenture in any other jurisdiction.

Section 4.7. COUNTERPARTS. This First Supplemental Indenture may be executed in any number of counterparts, each of which shall be an original, but such counterparts shall together constitute but one and the same instrument.

Section 4.8. GOVERNING LAW. THIS FIRST SUPPLEMENTAL INDENTURE AND EACH SECURITY SHALL BE DEEMED TO BE A CONTRACT MADE UNDER THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK AND SHALL BE GOVERNED BY AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK WITHOUT REGARD TO CONFLICTS OF LAWS PRINCIPLES THEREOF.

[The remainder of the page is intentionally left blank]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this First Supplemental Indenture to be duly executed, and their respective corporate seals to be hereunto affixed and attested, on the date or dates indicated in the acknowledgments and as of the day and year first above written.

VRINGO, INC.

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

ATTEST:

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

●, as Trustee

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

(FORM OF SECURITY)

ANNEX IV - 9

---



## FORM OF MAY 2015 WARRANT

## VRINGO, INC.

## MAY 2015 WARRANT TO PURCHASE COMMON STOCK

May 2015 Warrant No.: ●

Date of Issuance: May 4, 2015 (“**Issuance Date**”)

Vringo, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), hereby certifies that, for good and valuable consideration, the receipt and sufficiency of which are hereby acknowledged, ●, the registered holder hereof or its permitted assigns (the “**Holder**”), is entitled, subject to the terms set forth below, to purchase from the Company, at the Exercise Price (as defined below) then in effect, upon exercise of this Warrant to Purchase Common Stock (including any Warrants to Purchase Common Stock issued in exchange, transfer or replacement hereof, the “**Warrant**”), at any time or times on or after the six (6) month and one (1) day first anniversary of the Issuance Date (the “**Initial Exercisability Date**”), but not after 11:59 p.m., New York time, on the Expiration Date (as defined below), ●<sup>1</sup> (subject to adjustment as provided herein) fully paid and nonassessable shares of Common Stock (as defined below) (the “**Warrant Shares**”). Except as otherwise defined herein, capitalized terms in this Warrant shall have the meanings set forth in Section 16. This Warrant is one of the Warrants to Purchase Common Stock (the “**SPA Warrants**”) issued pursuant to (i) Section 1 of that certain Securities Purchase Agreement, dated as of May 4, 2015 (the “**Subscription Date**”), by and among the Company and the investors (the “**Buyers**”) referred to therein, as amended from time to time (the “**Securities Purchase Agreement**”) and (ii) the Company’s Registration Statement on Form S-3 (File number 333-182823) (the “**Registration Statement**”).

---

<sup>1</sup> 43% warrant coverage.

1. EXERCISE OF WARRANT.

(a) Mechanics of Exercise. Subject to the terms and conditions hereof (including, without limitation, the limitations set forth in Section 1(f)), this Warrant may be exercised by the Holder on any day on or after the Initial Exercisability Date, in whole or in part, by delivery (whether via electronic mail or otherwise) of a written notice, in the form attached hereto as Exhibit A (the “**Exercise Notice**”), of the Holder’s election to exercise this Warrant. Within one (1) Trading Day following an exercise of this Warrant as aforesaid, the Holder shall deliver payment to the Company of an amount equal to the Exercise Price in effect on the date of such exercise multiplied by the number of Warrant Shares as to which this Warrant was so exercised (the “**Aggregate Exercise Price**”) in cash or via wire transfer of immediately available funds if the Holder did not notify the Company in such Exercise Notice that such exercise was made pursuant to a Cashless Exercise (as defined in Section 1(d)). The Holder shall not be required to deliver the original of this Warrant in order to effect an exercise hereunder. Execution and delivery of an Exercise Notice with respect to less than all of the Warrant Shares shall have the same effect as cancellation of the original of this Warrant and issuance of a new Warrant evidencing the right to purchase the remaining number of Warrant Shares. Execution and delivery of an Exercise Notice for all of the then-remaining Warrant Shares shall have the same effect as cancellation of the original of this Warrant after delivery of the Warrant Shares in accordance with the terms hereof. On or before the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Trading Day following the date on which the Company has received an Exercise Notice, the Company shall transmit by electronic mail an acknowledgment of confirmation of receipt of such Exercise Notice, in the form attached hereto as Exhibit B, to the Holder and the Company’s transfer agent (the “**Transfer Agent**”). On or before the third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Trading Day following the date on which the Company has received such Exercise Notice and received the Aggregate Exercise Price if the Holder did not notify the Company in such Exercise Notice that such exercise was made pursuant to a Cashless Exercise, the Company shall (X) provided the Transfer Agent is participating in The Depository Trust Company (“**DTC**”) Fast Automated Securities Transfer Program, upon the request of the Holder, credit such aggregate number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled pursuant to such exercise to the Holder’s or its designee’s balance account with DTC through its Deposit/ Withdrawal at Custodian system, or (Y) if the Transfer Agent is not participating in the DTC Fast Automated Securities Transfer Program, issue and deliver to the Holder or, at the Holder’s instruction pursuant to the Exercise Notice, the Holder’s agent or designee, in each case, sent by reputable overnight courier to the address as specified in the applicable Exercise Notice, a certificate, registered in the Company’s share register in the name of the Holder or its designee (as indicated in the applicable Exercise Notice), for the number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled pursuant to such exercise. Upon delivery of an Exercise Notice, the Holder shall be deemed for all corporate purposes to have become the holder of record of the Warrant Shares with respect to which this Warrant has been exercised, irrespective of the date such Warrant Shares are credited to the Holder’s DTC account or the date of delivery of the certificates evidencing such Warrant Shares (as the case may be). If this Warrant is submitted in connection with any exercise pursuant to this Section 1(a) and the number of Warrant Shares represented by this Warrant submitted for exercise is greater than the number of Warrant Shares being acquired upon an exercise, then, at the request of the Holder, the Company shall as soon as practicable and in no event later than three (3) Business Days after any exercise and at its own expense, issue and deliver to the Holder (or its designee) a new Warrant (in accordance with Section 7(d)) representing the right to purchase the number of Warrant Shares purchasable immediately prior to such exercise under this Warrant, less the number of Warrant Shares with respect to which this Warrant is exercised. No fractional shares of Common Stock are to be issued upon the exercise of this Warrant, but rather the number of shares of Common Stock to be issued shall be rounded up to the nearest whole number. The Company shall pay any and all taxes and fees which may be payable with respect to the issuance and delivery of Warrant Shares upon exercise of this Warrant. Notwithstanding the foregoing, except in the case where an exercise of this Warrant is validly made pursuant to a Cashless Exercise (as defined in Section 1(d)), the Company’s failure to deliver Warrant Shares to the Holder on or prior to the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Trading Day after the Company’s receipt of the Aggregate Exercise Price shall not be deemed to be a breach of this Warrant.

(b) Exercise Price. For purposes of this Warrant, “**Exercise Price**” means \$1.00, subject to adjustment as provided herein.

(c) Company's Failure to Timely Deliver Securities. . If the Company shall fail, for any reason or for no reason, to issue to the Holder within three (3) Trading Days after receipt of the applicable Exercise Notice and received the Aggregate Exercise Price if the Holder did not notify the Company in such Exercise Notice that such exercise was made pursuant to a Cashless Exercise, a certificate for the number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled and register such shares of Common Stock on the Company's share register or to credit the Holder's balance account with DTC for such number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled upon the Holder's exercise of this Warrant (as the case may be) (a "**Delivery Failure**"), then, in addition to all other remedies available to the Holder, the Company shall pay in cash to the Holder on each day after such third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Trading Day that the issuance of such shares of Common Stock is not timely effected an amount equal to 2% of the product of (A) the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock not issued to the Holder on a timely basis and to which the Holder is entitled and (B) the Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on the Trading Day immediately preceding the last possible date on which the Company could have issued such shares of Common Stock to the Holder without violating Section 1(a). In addition to the foregoing, if within three (3) Trading Days after the Company's receipt of the applicable Exercise Notice, the Company shall fail to issue and deliver a certificate to the Holder and register such shares of Common Stock on the Company's share register or credit the Holder's balance account with DTC for the number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled upon the Holder's exercise hereunder (as the case may be), and if on or after such third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Trading Day the Holder (or any other Person in respect, or on behalf, of the Holder) purchases (in an open market transaction or otherwise) shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by the Holder of all or any portion of the number of shares of Common Stock, or a sale of a number of shares of Common Stock equal to all or any portion of the number of shares of Common Stock, issuable upon such exercise that the Holder so anticipated receiving from the Company, then, in addition to all other remedies available to the Holder, the Company shall, within three (3) Business Days after the Holder's request and in the Holder's discretion, either (i) pay cash to the Holder in an amount equal to the Holder's total purchase price (including brokerage commissions and other out-of-pocket expenses, if any) for the shares of Common Stock so purchased (including, without limitation, by any other Person in respect, or on behalf, of the Holder) (the "**Buy-In Price**"), at which point the Company's obligation to so issue and deliver such certificate or credit the Holder's balance account with DTC for the number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled upon the Holder's exercise hereunder (as the case may be) (and to issue such shares of Common Stock) shall terminate, or (ii) promptly honor its obligation to so issue and deliver to the Holder a certificate or certificates representing such shares of Common Stock or credit the Holder's balance account with DTC for the number of shares of Common Stock to which the Holder is entitled upon the Holder's exercise hereunder (as the case may be) and pay cash to the Holder in an amount equal to the excess (if any) of the Buy-In Price over the product of (A) such number of shares of Common Stock multiplied by (B) the lowest Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on any Trading Day during the period commencing on the date of the applicable Exercise Notice and ending on the date of such issuance and payment under this clause (ii).

(d) Cashless Exercise. Notwithstanding anything contained herein to the contrary (other than Section 1(f) below), if at the time of exercise hereof a registration statement is not effective (or the prospectus contained therein is not available for use) for the issuance by the Company to the Holder of all of the Warrant Shares, then the Holder may, in its sole discretion, exercise this Warrant in whole or in part and, in lieu of making the cash payment otherwise contemplated to be made to the Company upon such exercise in payment of the Aggregate Exercise Price, elect instead to receive upon such exercise the "Net Number" of shares of Common Stock determined according to the following formula (a "**Cashless Exercise**"):

$$\text{Net Number} = \frac{(A \times B) - (A \times C)}{B}$$

For purposes of the foregoing formula:

A= the total number of shares with respect to which this Warrant is then being exercised.

B= as applicable: (i) the Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on the Trading Day immediately preceding the date of the applicable Exercise Notice if such Exercise Notice is (1) both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 1(a) hereof on a day that is not a Trading Day or (2) both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 1(a) hereof on a Trading Day prior to the opening of "regular trading hours" (as defined in Rule 600(b) (64) of Regulation NMS promulgated under the federal securities laws) on such Trading Day, (ii) the Bid Price of the Common Stock as of the time of the Holder's execution of the applicable Exercise Notice if such Exercise Notice is executed during "regular trading hours" on a Trading Day and is delivered within two (2) hours thereafter pursuant to Section 1(a) hereof or (iii) the Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on the date of the applicable Exercise Notice if the date of such Exercise Notice is a Trading Day and such Exercise Notice is both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 1(a) hereof after the close of "regular trading hours" on such Trading Day.

C= the Exercise Price then in effect for the applicable Warrant Shares at the time of such exercise.

(e) Disputes. In the case of a dispute as to the determination of the Exercise Price or the arithmetic calculation of the number of Warrant Shares to be issued pursuant to the terms hereof, the Company shall promptly issue to the Holder the number of Warrant Shares that are not disputed and resolve such dispute in accordance with Section 13.

(f) Limitations on Exercises.

(i) Beneficial Ownership. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Warrant, this Warrant shall not be exercisable by the Holder hereof to the extent (but only to the extent) that after giving effect to such exercise the Holder (together with any of its affiliates) would beneficially own in excess of 9.99% (the “**Maximum Percentage**”) of the Common Stock. To the extent the above limitation applies, the determination of whether this Warrant shall be exercisable (vis-à-vis other convertible, exercisable or exchangeable securities owned by the Holder or any of its affiliates) and of which such securities shall be convertible, exercisable or exchangeable (as the case may be, as among all such securities owned by the Holder) shall, subject to such Maximum Percentage limitation, be determined on the basis of the first submission to the Company for conversion, exercise or exchange (as the case may be). No prior inability to exercise this Warrant pursuant to this paragraph shall have any effect on the applicability of the provisions of this paragraph with respect to any subsequent determination of exercisability. For the purposes of this paragraph, beneficial ownership and all determinations and calculations (including, without limitation, with respect to calculations of percentage ownership) shall be determined in accordance with Section 13(d) of the 1934 Act (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. The provisions of this paragraph shall be implemented in a manner otherwise than in strict conformity with the terms of this paragraph to correct this paragraph (or any portion hereof) which may be defective or inconsistent with the intended Maximum Percentage beneficial ownership limitation herein contained or to make changes or supplements necessary or desirable to properly give effect to such Maximum Percentage limitation. The limitations contained in this paragraph shall apply to a successor Holder of this Warrant. The holders of Common Stock shall be third party beneficiaries of this paragraph and the Company may not waive this paragraph without the consent of holders of a majority of its Common Stock. For any reason at any time, upon the written or oral request of the Holder, the Company shall within one (1) Business Day confirm orally and in writing to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock then outstanding, including by virtue of any prior conversion or exercise of convertible or exercisable securities into Common Stock, including, without limitation, pursuant to this Warrant or securities issued pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement. By written notice to the Company, any Holder may increase or decrease the Maximum Percentage to any other percentage not in excess of 9.99% specified in such notice; provided that (i) any such increase will not be effective until the 61st day after such notice is delivered to the Company, and (ii) any such increase or decrease will apply only to the Holder sending such notice and not to any other holder of SPA Warrants.

(ii) Principal Market Regulation. The Company shall not issue any shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of this Warrant if the issuance of such shares of Common Stock (taken together with the issuance of such shares upon the exercise of the SPA Warrants and the conversion of the Notes or otherwise pursuant to the terms of the Notes) would exceed the aggregate number of shares of Common Stock which the Company may issue upon exercise or conversion (as the case may be) of the Warrants and the Notes without breaching the Company's obligations under the rules or regulations of the Principal Market (the number of shares which may be issued without violating such rules and regulations, the "**Exchange Cap**"), except that such limitation shall not apply in the event that the Company (A) obtains the approval of its stockholders as required by the applicable rules of the Principal Market for issuances of shares of Common Stock in excess of such amount or (B) obtains a written opinion from outside counsel to the Company that such approval is not required, which opinion shall be reasonably satisfactory to the Holder or (C) obtain a waiver from the Principal Market of the applicable rules of such Principal Market for the issuance of shares of Common Stock in excess of such amount. Until such approval or such written opinion is obtained, no Buyer shall be issued in the aggregate, upon conversion or exercise (as the case may be) of any Notes or any of the Warrants, shares of Common Stock in an amount greater than the product of (i) the Exchange Cap as of the Issuance Date multiplied by (ii) the quotient of (1) the original principal amount of Notes issued to such Buyer pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement on the Closing Date (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) divided by (2) the aggregate original principal amount of all Notes issued to the Buyers pursuant to the Securities Purchase Agreement on the Closing Date (with respect to each Buyer, the "**Exchange Cap Allocation**"). In the event that any Buyer shall sell or otherwise transfer any of such Buyer's Warrants, the transferee shall be allocated a pro rata portion of such Buyer's Exchange Cap Allocation with respect to such portion of such Warrants so transferred, and the restrictions of the prior sentence shall apply to such transferee with respect to the portion of the Exchange Cap Allocation so allocated to such transferee. Upon conversion and exercise in full of a holder's Notes and Warrants, the difference (if any) between such holder's Exchange Cap Allocation and the number of shares of Common Stock actually issued to such holder upon such holder's conversion in full of such Notes and such holder's exercise in full of such Warrants shall be allocated to the respective Exchange Cap Allocations of the remaining holders of Notes and Warrants on a pro rata basis in proportion to the shares of Common Stock underlying the Notes and Warrants then held by each such holder. In the event that the Company is prohibited from issuing any shares of Common Stock pursuant to this Section 1(f)(ii) (the "**Exchange Cap Shares**"), in lieu of issuing and delivering such Exchange Cap Shares to the Holder, the Company shall pay cash to the Holder in exchange for the cancellation of such portion of this Warrant exercisable into such Exchange Cap Shares at a price equal to the sum of (x) the product of (A) such number of Exchange Cap Shares and (B) the greatest Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on any Trading Day during the period commencing on the date the Holder delivers the applicable Exercise Notice with respect to such Exchange Cap Shares to the Company and ending on the date immediately preceding the date of such payment under this Section 1(f)(ii) and (y) to the extent the Holder purchases (in an open market transaction or otherwise) shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by the Holder of Exchange Cap Shares, any brokerage commissions and other out-of-pocket expenses, if any, of the Holder incurred in connection therewith.

(g) Insufficient Authorized Shares. From and after the Initial Exercisability Date, the Company shall at all times keep reserved for issuance under this Warrant a number of shares of Common Stock at least equal to 100% of the maximum number of shares of Common Stock as shall be necessary to satisfy the Company's obligation to issue shares of Common Stock hereunder (without regard to any limitation otherwise contained herein with respect to the number of shares of Common Stock that may be acquirable upon exercise of this Warrant). From and after the Initial Exercisability Date, if, notwithstanding the foregoing, and not in limitation thereof, at any time while any of the SPA Warrants remain outstanding the Company does not have a sufficient number of authorized and unreserved shares of Common Stock to satisfy its obligation to reserve for issuance upon exercise of the SPA Warrants at least a number of shares of Common Stock (the "**Required Reserve Amount**") equal to 100% of the number of shares of Common Stock as shall from time to time be necessary to effect the exercise of all of the SPA Warrants then outstanding (an "**Authorized Share Failure**"), then the Company shall immediately take all action necessary to increase the Company's authorized shares of Common Stock to an amount sufficient to allow the Company to reserve the Required Reserve Amount for all the SPA Warrants then outstanding. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing sentence, as soon as practicable after the date of the occurrence of an Authorized Share Failure, but in no event later than ninety (90) days after the occurrence of such Authorized Share Failure, the Company shall hold a meeting of its stockholders for the approval of an increase in the number of authorized shares of Common Stock. In connection with such meeting, the Company shall provide each stockholder with a proxy statement and shall use its best efforts to solicit its stockholders' approval of such increase in authorized shares of Common Stock and to cause its board of directors to recommend to the stockholders that they approve such proposal. In the event that the Company is prohibited from issuing shares of Common Stock upon an exercise of this Warrant due to the failure by the Company to have sufficient shares of Common Stock available out of the authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock (such unavailable number of shares of Common Stock, the "**Authorization Failure Shares**"), in lieu of delivering such Authorization Failure Shares to the Holder, the Company shall pay cash in exchange for the cancellation of such portion of this Warrant exercisable into such Authorization Failure Shares at a price equal to the sum of (i) the product of (x) such number of Authorization Failure Shares and (y) the greatest Closing Sale Price of the Common Stock on any Trading Day during the period commencing on the date the Holder delivers the applicable Exercise Notice with respect to such Authorization Failure Shares to the Company and ending on the date immediately preceding the date of such issuance and payment under this Section 1(g) and (ii) to the extent the Holder purchases (in an open market transaction or otherwise) shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by the Holder of Authorization Failure Shares, any brokerage commissions and other out-of-pocket expenses, if any, of the Holder incurred in connection therewith. Nothing contained in this Section 1(g) shall limit any obligations of the Company under any provision of the Securities Purchase Agreement.

2. ADJUSTMENT OF EXERCISE PRICE AND NUMBER OF WARRANT SHARES. The Exercise Price and number of Warrant Shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant are subject to adjustment from time to time as set forth in this Section 2.

(a) Stock Dividends and Splits. Without limiting any provision of Section 2(b) or Section 4, if the Company, at any time on or after the date of the Securities Purchase Agreement, (i) pays a stock dividend on one or more classes of its then outstanding shares of Common Stock or otherwise makes a distribution on any class of capital stock that is payable in shares of Common Stock, (ii) subdivides (by any stock split, stock dividend, recapitalization or otherwise) one or more classes of its then outstanding shares of Common Stock into a larger number of shares or (iii) combines (by combination, reverse stock split or otherwise) one or more classes of its then outstanding shares of Common Stock into a smaller number of shares, then in each such case the Exercise Price shall be multiplied by a fraction of which the numerator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately before such event and of which the denominator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after such event. Any adjustment made pursuant to clause (i) of this paragraph shall become effective immediately after the record date for the determination of stockholders entitled to receive such dividend or distribution, and any adjustment pursuant to clause (ii) or (iii) of this paragraph shall become effective immediately after the effective date of such subdivision or combination. If any event requiring an adjustment under this paragraph occurs during the period that an Exercise Price is calculated hereunder, then the calculation of such Exercise Price shall be adjusted appropriately to reflect such event.



(b) [Intentionally Omitted]

(c) Number of Warrant Shares. Simultaneously with any adjustment to the Exercise Price pursuant to paragraphs (a), (d) and (f) of this Section 2, the number of Warrant Shares that may be purchased upon exercise of this Warrant shall be increased or decreased proportionately, so that after such adjustment the aggregate Exercise Price payable hereunder for the adjusted number of Warrant Shares shall be the same as the aggregate Exercise Price in effect immediately prior to such adjustment (without regard to any limitations on exercise contained herein).

(d) Holder's Right of Alternative Exercise Price Following Issuance of Certain Options or Convertible Securities. In addition to and not in limitation of the other provisions of this Section 2, if the Company in any manner issues or sells any Options or Convertible Securities (other than the Notes) (any such securities, "**Variable Price Securities**") after the Subscription Date that are convertible into or exchangeable or exercisable for shares of Common Stock at a price which varies or may vary with the market price of the Common Shares, including by way of one or more reset(s) to a fixed price, but exclusive of such formulations reflecting customary anti-dilution provisions (such as share splits, share combinations, share dividends and similar transactions) (each of the formulations for such variable price being herein referred to as, the "**Variable Price**"), the Company shall provide written notice thereof via electronic mail and overnight courier to the Holder on the date of issuance of such Convertible Securities or Options. From and after the date the Company issues any such Convertible Securities or Options with a Variable Price, the Holder shall have the right, but not the obligation, in its sole discretion to substitute the Variable Price for the Exercise Price upon exercise of this Warrant by designating in the Exercise Notice delivered upon any exercise of this Warrant that solely for purposes of such exercise the Holder is relying on the Variable Price rather than the Exercise Price then in effect. The Holder's election to rely on a Variable Price for a particular exercise of this Warrant shall not obligate the Holder to rely on a Variable Price for any future exercises of this Warrant.

(e) Other Events. In the event that the Company (or any Subsidiary) shall take any action to which the provisions hereof are not strictly applicable, or, if applicable, would not operate to protect the Holder from dilution or if any event occurs of the type contemplated by the provisions of this Section 2 but not expressly provided for by such provisions (including, without limitation, the granting of stock appreciation rights, phantom stock rights or other rights with equity features), then the Company's board of directors shall in good faith determine and implement an appropriate adjustment in the Exercise Price and the number of Warrant Shares (if applicable) so as to protect the rights of the Holder, provided that no such adjustment pursuant to this Section 2(e) will increase the Exercise Price or decrease the number of Warrant Shares as otherwise determined pursuant to this Section 2, provided further that if the Holder does not accept such adjustments as appropriately protecting its interests hereunder against such dilution, then the Company's board of directors and the Holder shall agree, in good faith, upon an independent investment bank of nationally recognized standing to make such appropriate adjustments, whose determination shall be final and binding and whose fees and expenses shall be borne by the Company.

(f) Calculations. All calculations under this Section 2 shall be made by rounding to the nearest cent or the nearest 1/100<sup>th</sup> of a share, as applicable. The number of shares of Common Stock outstanding at any given time shall not include shares owned or held by or for the account of the Company, and the disposition of any such shares shall be considered an issue or sale of Common Stock.

3. RIGHTS UPON DISTRIBUTION OF ASSETS. In addition to any adjustments pursuant to Section 2 above, if the Company shall declare or make any dividend or other distribution of its assets (or rights to acquire its assets) to holders of shares of Common Stock, by way of return of capital or otherwise (including, without limitation, any distribution of cash, stock or other securities, property or options by way of a dividend, spin off, reclassification, corporate rearrangement, scheme of arrangement or other similar transaction) (a "**Distribution**"), at any time after the issuance of this Warrant, then, in each such case, the Holder shall be entitled to participate in such Distribution to the same extent that the Holder would have participated therein if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on exercise hereof, including without limitation, the Maximum Percentage) immediately before the date on which a record is taken for such Distribution, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of shares of Common Stock are to be determined for the participation in such Distribution (provided, however, to the extent that the Holder's right to participate in any such Distributions would result in the Holder exceeding the Maximum Percentage, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Distribution to such extent (or the beneficial ownership of any such shares of Common Stock as a result of such Distribution to such extent) and such Distribution to such extent shall be held in abeyance for the benefit of the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Maximum Percentage).

4. PURCHASE RIGHTS; FUNDAMENTAL TRANSACTIONS.

(a) Purchase Rights. In addition to any adjustments pursuant to Section 2 above, if at any time the Company grants, issues or sells any Options, Convertible Securities or rights to purchase stock, warrants, securities or other property pro rata to the record holders of any class of shares of Common Stock (the "**Purchase Rights**"), then the Holder will be entitled to acquire, upon the terms applicable to such Purchase Rights, the aggregate Purchase Rights which the Holder could have acquired if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on exercise hereof, including without limitation, the Maximum Percentage) immediately before the date on which a record is taken for the grant, issuance or sale of such Purchase Rights, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of shares of Common Stock are to be determined for the grant, issue or sale of such Purchase Rights (provided, however, to the extent that the Holder's right to participate in any such Purchase Right would result in the Holder exceeding the Maximum Percentage, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Purchase Right to such extent (or beneficial ownership of such shares of Common Stock as a result of such Purchase Right to such extent) and such Purchase Right to such extent shall be held in abeyance for the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Maximum Percentage).

(b) Fundamental Transactions. The Company shall not enter into or be party to a Fundamental Transaction unless the Successor Entity assumes in writing all of the obligations of the Company under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) in accordance with the provisions of this Section 4(b) pursuant to written agreements in form and substance satisfactory to the Holder and approved by the Holder prior to such Fundamental Transaction including agreements to deliver to the Holder in exchange for this Warrant a security of the Successor Entity evidenced by a written instrument substantially similar in form and substance to this Warrant, including, without limitation, which is exercisable for a corresponding number of shares of capital stock equivalent to the shares of Common Stock acquirable and receivable upon exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on the exercise of this Warrant) prior to such Fundamental Transaction, and with an exercise price which applies the exercise price hereunder to such shares of capital stock (but taking into account the relative value of the shares of Common Stock pursuant to such Fundamental Transaction and the value of such shares of capital stock, such adjustments to the number of shares of capital stock and such exercise price being for the purpose of protecting the economic value of this Warrant immediately prior to the consummation of such Fundamental Transaction). Upon the consummation of each Fundamental Transaction, the Successor Entity shall succeed to, and be substituted for (so that from and after the date of the applicable Fundamental Transaction, the provisions of this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents referring to the “Company” shall refer instead to the Successor Entity), and may exercise every right and power of the Company and shall assume all of the obligations of the Company under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents with the same effect as if such Successor Entity had been named as the Company herein. Upon consummation of each Fundamental Transaction, the Successor Entity shall deliver to the Holder confirmation that there shall be issued upon exercise of this Warrant at any time after the consummation of the applicable Fundamental Transaction, in lieu of the shares of Common Stock (or other securities, cash, assets or other property (except such items still issuable under Sections 3 and 4(a) above, which shall continue to be receivable thereafter)) issuable upon the exercise of this Warrant prior to the applicable Fundamental Transaction, such shares of publicly traded common stock (or its equivalent) of the Successor Entity (including its Parent Entity) which the Holder would have been entitled to receive upon the happening of the applicable Fundamental Transaction had this Warrant been exercised immediately prior to the applicable Fundamental Transaction (without regard to any limitations on the exercise of this Warrant), as adjusted in accordance with the provisions of this Warrant. In addition to and not in substitution for any other rights hereunder, prior to the consummation of each Fundamental Transaction pursuant to which holders of shares of Common Stock are entitled to receive securities or other assets with respect to or in exchange for shares of Common Stock (a “**Corporate Event**”), the Company shall make appropriate provision to insure that the Holder will thereafter have the right to receive upon an exercise of this Warrant at any time after the consummation of the applicable Fundamental Transaction but prior to the Expiration Date, in lieu of the shares of the Common Stock (or other securities, cash, assets or other property (except such items still issuable under Sections 3 and 4(a) above, which shall continue to be receivable thereafter)) issuable upon the exercise of the Warrant prior to such Fundamental Transaction, such shares of stock, securities, cash, assets or any other property whatsoever (including warrants or other purchase or subscription rights) which the Holder would have been entitled to receive upon the happening of the applicable Fundamental Transaction had this Warrant been exercised immediately prior to the applicable Fundamental Transaction (without regard to any limitations on the exercise of this Warrant). Provision made pursuant to the preceding sentence shall be in a form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Holder.

(c) Black Scholes Value. Notwithstanding the foregoing and the provisions of Section 4(b) above, at the request of the Holder delivered at any time commencing on the earliest to occur of (x) the public disclosure of any Change of Control, (y) the consummation of any Change of Control and (z) the Holder first becoming aware of any Change of Control (including, without limitation, a Change of Control that is publicly disclosed, consummated or of which the Holder first becomes aware (as the case may be) prior to the Initial Exercise Date) through the date that is (i) the Trading Day immediately prior to the date of consummation of a Change of Control (X) that is publicly disclosed at least thirty (30) Trading Days prior to the date of the consummation of such Change of Control, (Y) that is approved by a majority of the directors of the Company in office on the Issuance Date or whose election after the Issuance Date was approved by a majority of such directors, and (Z) the transaction documents for which require as a condition of closing the redemption or repurchase of this Warrant no later than the date of the consummation of such Change of Control, and (ii) ninety (90) days after the public disclosure of the consummation of such other Change of Control by the Company pursuant to a Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC, the Company or the Successor Entity (as the case may be) shall purchase this Warrant from the Holder on the date of such request by paying to the Holder cash in an amount equal to the Black Scholes Value.

(d) Application. The provisions of this Section 4 shall apply similarly and equally to successive Fundamental Transactions and Corporate Events and shall be applied as if this Warrant (and any such subsequent warrants) were fully exercisable and without regard to any limitations on the exercise of this Warrant (provided that the Holder shall continue to be entitled to the benefit of the Maximum Percentage, applied however with respect to shares of capital stock registered under the 1934 Act and thereafter receivable upon exercise of this Warrant (or any such other warrant)).

5. NONCIRCUMVENTION. The Company hereby covenants and agrees that the Company will not, by amendment of its Certificate of Incorporation (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement), Bylaws (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) or through any reorganization, transfer of assets, consolidation, merger, scheme of arrangement, dissolution, issue or sale of securities, or any other voluntary action, avoid or seek to avoid the observance or performance of any of the terms of this Warrant, and will at all times in good faith carry out all the provisions of this Warrant and take all action as may be required to protect the rights of the Holder. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Company (i) shall not increase the par value of any shares of Common Stock receivable upon the exercise of this Warrant above the Exercise Price then in effect, (ii) shall take all such actions as may be necessary or appropriate in order that the Company may validly and legally issue fully paid and non-assessable shares of Common Stock upon the exercise of this Warrant, and (iii) shall, so long as any of the SPA Warrants are outstanding, take all action necessary to reserve and keep available out of its authorized and unissued shares of Common Stock, solely for the purpose of effecting the exercise of the SPA Warrants, the maximum number of shares of Common Stock as shall from time to time be necessary to effect the exercise of the SPA Warrants then outstanding (without regard to any limitations on exercise).

6. WARRANT HOLDER NOT DEEMED A STOCKHOLDER. Except as otherwise specifically provided herein, the Holder, solely in its capacity as a holder of this Warrant, shall not be entitled to vote or receive dividends or be deemed the holder of share capital of the Company for any purpose, nor shall anything contained in this Warrant be construed to confer upon the Holder, solely in its capacity as the Holder of this Warrant, any of the rights of a stockholder of the Company or any right to vote, give or withhold consent to any corporate action (whether any reorganization, issue of stock, reclassification of stock, consolidation, merger, conveyance or otherwise), receive notice of meetings, receive dividends or subscription rights, or otherwise, prior to the issuance to the Holder of the Warrant Shares which it is then entitled to receive upon the due exercise of this Warrant. In addition, nothing contained in this Warrant shall be construed as imposing any liabilities on the Holder to purchase any securities (upon exercise of this Warrant or otherwise) or as a stockholder of the Company, whether such liabilities are asserted by the Company or by creditors of the Company. Notwithstanding this Section 6, the Company shall provide the Holder with copies of the same notices and other information given to the stockholders of the Company generally, contemporaneously with the giving thereof to the stockholders.

7. REISSUANCE OF WARRANTS.

(a) Transfer of Warrant. If this Warrant is to be transferred, the Holder shall surrender this Warrant to the Company, whereupon the Company will forthwith issue and deliver upon the order of the Holder a new Warrant (in accordance with Section 7(d)), registered as the Holder may request, representing the right to purchase the number of Warrant Shares being transferred by the Holder and, if less than the total number of Warrant Shares then underlying this Warrant is being transferred, a new Warrant (in accordance with Section 7(d)) to the Holder representing the right to purchase the number of Warrant Shares not being transferred.

(b) Lost, Stolen or Mutilated Warrant. Upon receipt by the Company of evidence reasonably satisfactory to the Company of the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of this Warrant (as to which a written certification and the indemnification contemplated below shall suffice as such evidence), and, in the case of loss, theft or destruction, of any indemnification undertaking by the Holder to the Company in customary and reasonable form and, in the case of mutilation, upon surrender and cancellation of this Warrant, the Company shall execute and deliver to the Holder a new Warrant (in accordance with Section 7(d)) representing the right to purchase the Warrant Shares then underlying this Warrant.

(c) Exchangeable for Multiple Warrants. This Warrant is exchangeable, upon the surrender hereof by the Holder at the principal office of the Company, for a new Warrant or Warrants (in accordance with Section 7(d)) representing in the aggregate the right to purchase the number of Warrant Shares then underlying this Warrant, and each such new Warrant will represent the right to purchase such portion of such Warrant Shares as is designated by the Holder at the time of such surrender; provided, however, no warrants for fractional shares of Common Stock shall be given.

(d) Issuance of New Warrants. Whenever the Company is required to issue a new Warrant pursuant to the terms of this Warrant, such new Warrant (i) shall be of like tenor with this Warrant, (ii) shall represent, as indicated on the face of such new Warrant, the right to purchase the Warrant Shares then underlying this Warrant (or in the case of a new Warrant being issued pursuant to Section 7(a) or Section 7(c), the Warrant Shares designated by the Holder which, when added to the number of shares of Common Stock underlying the other new Warrants issued in connection with such issuance, does not exceed the number of Warrant Shares then underlying this Warrant), (iii) shall have an issuance date, as indicated on the face of such new Warrant which is the same as the Issuance Date, and (iv) shall have the same rights and conditions as this Warrant.

8. NOTICES. Whenever notice is required to be given under this Warrant, unless otherwise provided herein, such notice shall be given in accordance with Section 9(f) of the Securities Purchase Agreement. The Company shall provide the Holder with prompt written notice of all actions taken pursuant to this Warrant, including in reasonable detail a description of such action and the reason therefor. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Company will give written notice to the Holder (i) immediately upon each adjustment of the Exercise Price and the number of Warrant Shares, setting forth in reasonable detail, and certifying, the calculation of such adjustment(s) and (ii) at least fifteen (15) days prior to the date on which the Company closes its books or takes a record (A) with respect to any dividend or distribution upon the shares of Common Stock, (B) with respect to any grants, issuances or sales of any Options, Convertible Securities or rights to purchase stock, warrants, securities or other property to holders of shares of Common Stock or (C) for determining rights to vote with respect to any Fundamental Transaction, dissolution or liquidation, provided in each case that such information shall be made known to the public prior to or in conjunction with such notice being provided to the Holder and (iii) at least ten (10) Trading Days prior to the consummation of any Fundamental Transaction. To the extent that any notice provided hereunder constitutes, or contains, material, non-public information regarding the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, the Company shall simultaneously file such notice with the SEC (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) pursuant to a Current Report on Form 8-K. It is expressly understood and agreed that the time of execution specified by the Holder in each Exercise Notice shall be definitive and may not be disputed or challenged by the Company.

9. AMENDMENT AND WAIVER. Except as otherwise provided herein, the provisions of this Warrant (other than Section 1(f)) may be amended and the Company may take any action herein prohibited, or omit to perform any act herein required to be performed by it, only if the Company has obtained the written consent of the Holder. No waiver shall be effective unless it is in writing and signed by an authorized representative of the waiving party.

10. **SEVERABILITY.** If any provision of this Warrant is prohibited by law or otherwise determined to be invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction, the provision that would otherwise be prohibited, invalid or unenforceable shall be deemed amended to apply to the broadest extent that it would be valid and enforceable, and the invalidity or unenforceability of such provision shall not affect the validity of the remaining provisions of this Warrant so long as this Warrant as so modified continues to express, without material change, the original intentions of the parties as to the subject matter hereof and the prohibited nature, invalidity or unenforceability of the provision(s) in question does not substantially impair the respective expectations or reciprocal obligations of the parties or the practical realization of the benefits that would otherwise be conferred upon the parties. The parties will endeavor in good faith negotiations to replace the prohibited, invalid or unenforceable provision(s) with a valid provision(s), the effect of which comes as close as possible to that of the prohibited, invalid or unenforceable provision(s).

11. **GOVERNING LAW.** This Warrant shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with, and all questions concerning the construction, validity, interpretation and performance of this Warrant shall be governed by, the internal laws of the State of New York, without giving effect to any choice of law or conflict of law provision or rule (whether of the State of New York or any other jurisdictions) that would cause the application of the laws of any jurisdictions other than the State of New York. The Company hereby irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the state and federal courts sitting in The City of New York, Borough of Manhattan, for the adjudication of any dispute hereunder or in connection herewith or with any transaction contemplated hereby or discussed herein, and hereby irrevocably waives, and agrees not to assert in any suit, action or proceeding, any claim that it is not personally subject to the jurisdiction of any such court, that such suit, action or proceeding is brought in an inconvenient forum or that the venue of such suit, action or proceeding is improper. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to limit in any way any right to serve process in any manner permitted by law. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed or operate to preclude the Holder from bringing suit or taking other legal action against the Company in any other jurisdiction to collect on the Company's obligations to the Holder or to enforce a judgment or other court ruling in favor of the Holder. **THE COMPANY HEREBY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES ANY RIGHT IT MAY HAVE TO, AND AGREES NOT TO REQUEST, A JURY TRIAL FOR THE ADJUDICATION OF ANY DISPUTE HEREUNDER OR IN CONNECTION WITH OR ARISING OUT OF THIS WARRANT OR ANY TRANSACTION CONTEMPLATED HEREBY.**

12. **CONSTRUCTION; HEADINGS.** This Warrant shall be deemed to be jointly drafted by the Company and the Holder and shall not be construed against any Person as the drafter hereof. The headings of this Warrant are for convenience of reference and shall not form part of, or affect the interpretation of, this Warrant. Terms used in this Warrant but defined in the other Transaction Documents shall have the meanings ascribed to such terms on the Closing Date (as defined in the Securities Purchase Agreement) in such other Transaction Documents unless otherwise consented to in writing by the Holder.

13. DISPUTE RESOLUTION. In the case of a dispute as to the determination of the Exercise Price, the Closing Bid Price, the Closing Sale Price or fair market value or the arithmetic calculation of the number of Warrant Shares (as the case may be), the Company or the Holder (as the case may be) shall submit the disputed determinations or arithmetic calculations (as the case may be) via electronic mail (i) within two (2) Business Days after receipt of the applicable notice giving rise to such dispute to the Company or the Holder (as the case may be) or (ii) if no notice gave rise to such dispute, at any time after the Holder learned of the circumstances giving rise to such dispute. If the Holder and the Company are unable to agree upon such determination or calculation (as the case may be) of the Exercise Price, the Closing Bid Price, the Closing Sale Price or fair market value or the number of Warrant Shares (as the case may be) within three (3) Business Days of such disputed determination or arithmetic calculation being submitted to the Company or the Holder (as the case may be), then the Company shall, within two (2) Business Days submit via electronic mail (a) the disputed determination of the Exercise Price, the Closing Bid Price, the Closing Sale Price or fair market value (as the case may be) to an independent, reputable investment bank selected by the Holder or (b) the disputed arithmetic calculation of the number of Warrant Shares to the Company's independent, outside accountant. The Company shall cause at its expense the investment bank or the accountant (as the case may be) to perform the determinations or calculations (as the case may be) and notify the Company and the Holder of the results no later than ten (10) Business Days from the time it receives such disputed determinations or calculations (as the case may be). Such investment bank's or accountant's determination or calculation (as the case may be) shall be binding upon all parties absent demonstrable error.

14. REMEDIES, CHARACTERIZATION, OTHER OBLIGATIONS, BREACHES AND INJUNCTIVE RELIEF. The remedies provided in this Warrant shall be cumulative and in addition to all other remedies available under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents, at law or in equity (including a decree of specific performance and/or other injunctive relief), and nothing herein shall limit the right of the Holder to pursue actual damages for any failure by the Company to comply with the terms of this Warrant. The Company covenants to the Holder that there shall be no characterization concerning this instrument other than as expressly provided herein. Amounts set forth or provided for herein with respect to payments, exercises and the like (and the computation thereof) shall be the amounts to be received by the Holder and shall not, except as expressly provided herein, be subject to any other obligation of the Company (or the performance thereof). The Company acknowledges that a breach by it of its obligations hereunder will cause irreparable harm to the Holder and that the remedy at law for any such breach may be inadequate. The Company therefore agrees that, in the event of any such breach or threatened breach, the holder of this Warrant shall be entitled, in addition to all other available remedies, to an injunction restraining any breach, without the necessity of showing economic loss and without any bond or other security being required. The Company shall provide all information and documentation to the Holder that is requested by the Holder to enable the Holder to confirm the Company's compliance with the terms and conditions of this Warrant (including, without limitation, compliance with Section 2 hereof). The issuance of shares and certificates for shares as contemplated hereby upon the exercise of this Warrant shall be made without charge to the Holder or such shares for any issuance tax or other costs in respect thereof, provided that the Company shall not be required to pay any tax which may be payable in respect of any transfer involved in the issuance and delivery of any certificate in a name other than the Holder or its agent on its behalf.



15. TRANSFER. This Warrant may be offered for sale, sold, transferred or assigned without the consent of the Company.

16. CERTAIN DEFINITIONS. For purposes of this Warrant, the following terms shall have the following meanings:

(a) **“Bid Price”** means, for any security as of the particular time of determination, the bid price for such security on the Principal Market as reported by Bloomberg as of such time of determination, or, if the Principal Market is not the principal securities exchange or trading market for such security, the bid price of such security on the principal securities exchange or trading market where such security is listed or traded as reported by Bloomberg as of such time of determination, or if the foregoing does not apply, the bid price of such security in the over-the-counter market on the electronic bulletin board for such security as reported by Bloomberg as of such time of determination, or, if no bid price is reported for such security by Bloomberg as of such time of determination, the average of the bid prices of any market makers for such security as reported in the “pink sheets” by OTC Markets Group Inc. (formerly Pink Sheets LLC) as of such time of determination. If the Bid Price cannot be calculated for a security as of the particular time of determination on any of the foregoing bases, the Bid Price of such security as of such time of determination shall be the fair market value as mutually determined by the Company and the Holder. If the Company and the Holder are unable to agree upon the fair market value of such security, then such dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures in Section 13. All such determinations shall be appropriately adjusted for any stock dividend, stock split, stock combination or other similar transaction during such period.

(b) **“Black Scholes Value”** means the value of the unexercised portion of this Warrant remaining on the date of the Holder’s request pursuant to Section 4(c), which value is calculated using the Black Scholes Option Pricing Model obtained from the “OV” function on Bloomberg utilizing (i) an underlying price per share equal to the sum of the price per share being offered in cash in the applicable Change of Control (if any) plus the value of the non-cash consideration being offered in the applicable Change of Control (if any), (ii) a strike price equal to the Exercise Price in effect on the date of the Holder’s request pursuant to Section 4(c), (iii) a risk-free interest rate corresponding to the U.S. Treasury rate for a period equal to the greater of (1) the remaining term of this Warrant as of the date of the Holder’s request pursuant to Section 4(c) and (2) the remaining term of this Warrant as of the date of consummation of the applicable Change of Control or as of the date of the Holder’s request pursuant to Section 4(c) if such request is prior to the date of the consummation of the applicable Change of Control, (iv) a zero cost of borrow, and (v) an expected volatility equal to the greater of 75% and the 100 day volatility obtained from the HVT function on Bloomberg (determined utilizing a 365 day annualization factor) as of the Trading Day immediately following the earliest to occur of (x) the public disclosure of the applicable Change of Control, (y) the consummation of the applicable Change of Control and (z) the date on which the Holder first became aware of the applicable Change of Control.

(c) **“Bloomberg”** means Bloomberg, L.P.

(d) **“Business Day”** means any day other than Saturday, Sunday or other day on which commercial banks in The City of New York are authorized or required by law to remain closed.

(e) **“Change of Control”** means any Fundamental Transaction other than (i) any merger of the Company or any of its, direct or indirect, wholly-owned Subsidiaries with or into any of the foregoing Persons, (ii) any reorganization, recapitalization or reclassification of the shares of Common Stock in which holders of a majority of the Company’s voting power immediately prior to such reorganization, recapitalization or reclassification continue after such reorganization, recapitalization or reclassification to hold publicly traded securities and, directly or indirectly, are, in all material respects, the holders of a majority of the voting power of the surviving entity (or entities with the authority or voting power to elect the members of the board of directors (or their equivalent if other than a corporation) of such entity or entities) after such reorganization, recapitalization or reclassification, or (iii) pursuant to a migratory merger effected solely for the purpose of changing the jurisdiction of incorporation of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries.

(f) **“Closing Bid Price”** and **“Closing Sale Price”** means, for any security as of any date, the last closing bid price and last closing trade price, respectively, for such security on the Principal Market, as reported by Bloomberg, or, if the Principal Market begins to operate on an extended hours basis and does not designate the closing bid price or the closing trade price (as the case may be) then the last bid price or last trade price, respectively, of such security prior to 4:00:00 p.m., New York City time, as reported by Bloomberg, or, if the Principal Market is not the principal securities exchange or trading market for such security, the last closing bid price or last trade price, respectively, of such security on the principal securities exchange or trading market where such security is listed or traded as reported by Bloomberg, or if the foregoing do not apply, the last closing bid price or last trade price, respectively, of such security in the over-the-counter market on the electronic bulletin board for such security as reported by Bloomberg, or, if no closing bid price or last trade price, respectively, is reported for such security by Bloomberg, the average of the bid prices, or the ask prices, respectively, of any market makers for such security as reported in the “pink sheets” by OTC Markets Group Inc. (formerly Pink Sheets LLC). If the Closing Bid Price or the Closing Sale Price cannot be calculated for a security on a particular date on any of the foregoing bases, the Closing Bid Price or the Closing Sale Price (as the case may be) of such security on such date shall be the fair market value as mutually determined by the Company and the Holder. If the Company and the Holder are unable to agree upon the fair market value of such security, then such dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures in Section 13. All such determinations shall be appropriately adjusted for any stock dividend, stock split, stock combination or other similar transaction during such period.

(g) **“Common Stock”** means (i) the Company’s shares of common stock, \$0.01 par value per share, and (ii) any capital stock into which such common stock shall have been changed or any share capital resulting from a reclassification of such common stock.

(h) **“Convertible Securities”** means any stock or other security (other than Options) that is at any time and under any circumstances, directly or indirectly, convertible into, exercisable or exchangeable for, or which otherwise entitles the holder thereof to acquire, any shares of Common Stock.

(i) **“Eligible Market”** means The New York Stock Exchange, the NASDAQ Global Select Market, the NASDAQ Global Market, the NYSE MKT, the OTCQB or the Principal Market.

(j) **“Expiration Date”** means the date that is the fifth anniversary of the Initial Exercisability Date or, if such date falls on a day other than a Business Day or on which trading does not take place on the Principal Market (a **“Holiday”**), the next date that is not a Holiday.

(k) **“Fundamental Transaction”** means that (i) (1) the Company shall, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions, consolidate or merge with or into (whether or not the Company is the surviving corporation) any other Person, or (2) the Company shall, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions, sell, lease, license, assign, transfer, convey or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its respective properties or assets to any other Person, or (3) the Company shall, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions, allow any other Person to make a purchase, tender or exchange offer that is accepted by the holders of more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Voting Stock of the Company (not including any shares of Voting Stock of the Company held by the Person or Persons making or party to, or associated or affiliated with the Persons making or party to, such purchase, tender or exchange offer), or (4) the Company shall, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions, consummate a stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination (including, without limitation, a reorganization, recapitalization, spin-off or scheme of arrangement) with any other Person whereby such other Person acquires more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Voting Stock of the Company (not including any shares of Voting Stock of the Company held by the other Person or other Persons making or party to, or associated or affiliated with the other Persons making or party to, such stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination), or (5) the Company shall, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions, reorganize, recapitalize or reclassify the Common Stock (which shall not include a reverse stock split), or (ii) any “person” or “group” (as these terms are used for purposes of Sections 13(d) and 14(d) of the 1934 Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder) is or shall become the “beneficial owner” (as defined in Rule 13d-3 under the 1934 Act), directly or indirectly, of 50% of the aggregate ordinary voting power represented by issued and outstanding Voting Stock of the Company.

(l) **“Notes”** has the meaning ascribed to such term in the Securities Purchase Agreement, and shall include all notes issued in exchange therefor or replacement thereof.

(m) **“Options”** means any rights, warrants or options to subscribe for or purchase shares of Common Stock or Convertible Securities.

(n) **“Parent Entity”** of a Person means an entity that, directly or indirectly, controls the applicable Person and whose common stock or equivalent equity security is quoted or listed on an Eligible Market, or, if there is more than one such Person or Parent Entity, the Person or Parent Entity with the largest public market capitalization as of the date of consummation of the Fundamental Transaction.

(o) **“Person”** means an individual, a limited liability company, a partnership, a joint venture, a corporation, a trust, an unincorporated organization, any other entity or a government or any department or agency thereof.

(p) **“Principal Market”** means the NASDAQ Capital Market.

(q) **“Subsidiary”** means any Person in which the Company, directly or indirectly, (i) owns any of the outstanding capital stock or holds any equity or similar interest of such Person or (ii) controls or operates all or any part of the business, operations or administration of such Person, and all of the foregoing.

(r) **“Successor Entity”** means the Person (or, if so elected by the Holder, the Parent Entity) formed by, resulting from or surviving any Fundamental Transaction or the Person (or, if so elected by the Holder, the Parent Entity) with which such Fundamental Transaction shall have been entered into.

(s) **“Trading Day”** means any day on which the Common Stock is traded on the Principal Market, or, if the Principal Market is not the principal trading market for the Common Stock, then on the principal securities exchange or securities market on which the Common Stock is then traded, provided that “Trading Day” shall not include any day on which the Common Stock is scheduled to trade on such exchange or market for less than 4.5 hours or any day that the Common Stock is suspended from trading during the final hour of trading on such exchange or market (or if such exchange or market does not designate in advance the closing time of trading on such exchange or market, then during the hour ending at 4:00:00 p.m., New York time) unless such day is otherwise designated as a Trading Day in writing by the Holder.

(t) **“Voting Stock”** of a Person means capital stock of such Person of the class or classes pursuant to which the holders thereof have the general voting power to elect, or the general power to appoint, at least a majority of the board of directors, managers or trustees of such Person (irrespective of whether or not at the time capital stock of any other class or classes shall have or might have voting power by reason of the happening of any contingency).

(u) **“VWAP”** means, for any security as of any date, the dollar volume-weighted average price for such security on the Principal Market (or, if the Principal Market is not the principal trading market for such security, then on the principal securities exchange or securities market on which such security is then traded) during the period beginning at 9:30:01 a.m., New York time, and ending at 4:00:00 p.m., New York time, as reported by Bloomberg through its “Volume at Price” function or, if the foregoing does not apply, the dollar volume-weighted average price of such security in the over-the-counter market on the electronic bulletin board for such security during the period beginning at 9:30:01 a.m., New York time, and ending at 4:00:00 p.m., New York time, as reported by Bloomberg, or, if no dollar volume-weighted average price is reported for such security by Bloomberg for such hours, the average of the highest closing bid price and the lowest closing ask price of any of the market makers for such security as reported in the “pink sheets” by OTC Markets Group Inc. (formerly Pink Sheets LLC). If VWAP cannot be calculated for such security on such date on any of the foregoing bases, the VWAP of such security on such date shall be the fair market value as mutually determined by the Company and the Holder. If the Company and the Holder are unable to agree upon the fair market value of such security, then such dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures in Section 13. All such determinations shall be appropriately adjusted for any stock dividend, stock split, stock combination or other similar transaction during such period.

*[signature page follows]*

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the Company has caused this Warrant to Purchase Common Stock to be duly executed as of the Issuance Date set out above.

**VRINGO, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

EXERCISE NOTICE

TO BE EXECUTED BY THE REGISTERED HOLDER TO EXERCISE THIS  
WARRANT TO PURCHASE COMMON STOCK

VRINGO, INC.

The undersigned holder hereby exercises the right to purchase \_\_\_\_\_ of the shares of Common Stock (“**Warrant Shares**”) of Vringo, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “**Company**”), evidenced by Warrant to Purchase Common Stock No. \_\_\_\_\_ (the “**Warrant**”). Capitalized terms used herein and not otherwise defined shall have the respective meanings set forth in the Warrant.

1. Form of Exercise Price. The Holder intends that payment of the Exercise Price shall be made as:

- \_\_\_\_\_ a “Cash Exercise” with respect to \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares; and/or
- \_\_\_\_\_ a “Cashless Exercise” with respect to \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares.

In the event that the Holder has elected a Cashless Exercise with respect to some or all of the Warrant Shares to be issued pursuant hereto, the Holder hereby represents and warrants that (i) this Exercise Notice was executed by the Holder at \_\_\_\_\_ [a.m.][p.m.] on the date set forth below and (ii) if applicable, the Bid Price as of such time of execution of this Exercise Notice was \$\_\_\_\_\_.

2. Payment of Exercise Price. In the event that the Holder has elected a Cash Exercise with respect to some or all of the Warrant Shares to be issued pursuant hereto, the Holder shall pay the Aggregate Exercise Price in the sum of \$\_\_\_\_\_ to the Company in accordance with the terms of the Warrant.

3. Delivery of Warrant Shares. The Company shall deliver to Holder, or its designee or agent as specified below, \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares in accordance with the terms of the Warrant. Delivery shall be made to Holder, or for its benefit, to the following address:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_,

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Registered Holder

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name:  
Title:

**ACKNOWLEDGMENT**

The Company hereby acknowledges this Exercise Notice and hereby directs American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC to issue the above indicated number of shares of Common Stock in accordance with the Transfer Agent Instructions dated May 4, 2015, from the Company and acknowledged and agreed to by American Stock Transfer & Trust Company, LLC.

**VRINGO, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_